FIRST LATIN

FRANÇOIS

MINERVA PROTECTING THE ARTS FROM TIME

From the painting by Sargent in the Boston Museum of Fine Arts

ALLYN AND BACON'S JUNIOR LATIN SERIES
FOLLOWING THE RECOMMENDATIONS OF
THE CLASSICAL INVESTIGATION

The François-Scudder Latin Course

BOOK ONE

FIRST LATIN

WITH COLLATERAL READING

BY
VICTOR E. FRANÇOIS, PH.D.
COLLEGE OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK

ALLYN AND BACON
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO DALLAS

COPYRIGHT, 1926
BY VICTOR E. FRANÇOIS

FAP

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

TO

MY BELOVED LATIN TEACHER

MICHEL BROSIUS, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN

"ATHÉNÉE" OF VIRTON (BELGIUM)

1882–1889

"ATHÉNÉE" OF ARLON (BELGIUM)

1889–1925

PREFACE

HAVING occasion some years ago to teach one of my young cousins Latin and finding no suitable book, I prepared a series of lessons meant primarily for the immature beginner. The results were so good that I showed them to a junior high school specialist who said they were just the thing for his particular field. Next we consulted a publisher, who was struck by the close parallel between my lessons and the *Report of the Classical Investigation*, which had just appeared. Only a few changes in rules and the addition of more reading were needed to make these lessons conform to the *Classical Report*.

Attention is invited to the size of the book. It has been made large on purpose to carry out certain aims which will appeal to practically all teachers of very young pupils. The first aim is to supply an unusual amount of simple Latin reading. The second is to offer collateral reading in English. The third is to illustrate both words and principles by pictures and drawings. The fourth is to treat one topic at a time, fully applying it.

(1) The first feature responsible for the size of the book is the inclusion of the full amount (forty pages) of reading matter in Latin called for by the *Classical Report*. As it was pedagogically impossible to incorporate all of this in the lessons of the book without retarding the momentum of the pupil, nearly half the material will be found at the end of the lessons, where it can be taken up according to the desires of individual teachers.

(2) Of the teachers consulted in the Classical Investigation, 96 % requested that there be some collateral reading in English in the first year work. Practical school men know that they have not enough reference books to enable all pupils of the class to accomplish this end. The only way to effect it is by the somewhat radical departure of including this reading in the book. While various sources have been drawn upon for this material, it was found that the best treatments of the subjects required in the *Classical Report* were often found in West's *Early Progress*, and from that book the bulk of the readings have been taken with the author's courteous permission.

(3) The illustrations are not only unusually complete, but bear more directly upon the subject matter than is usual in a beginner's book. Many of them were made to order by such well-known artists as Carlo Romagnoli and Duilio Cambellotti of Rome. Some of these pictures were submitted to Professor Grant Showerman, of the American Classical School at Rome for approval. Contributions were also levied from the various movies, Ben Hur, Messalina, Julius Caesar, and so on. In this visual age it seemed wise to illustrate the book copiously, even though such illustration increased its bulk.

(4) This book is built on the pedagogical principle of giving one simple rule at a time and driving it home by many easy exercises. It is felt that the immature learner will progress more rapidly in this way than if several topics are treated at once and are followed by few sentences for translation. The division of the exercises is more or less arbitrary and it is not expected that each class will need to do them all.

A special feature is the insistence upon simplicity and lucidity in contrast with pedantic accuracy. Exceptions with which the pupil will seldom come in contact have been left out. In the matter of pronunciation it has seemed wise not to dampen the beginner's ardor by insistence upon an

accuracy which even college professors sometimes fail to attain. Similarly, all through the book care has been taken to maintain the pupil's enthusiasm rather than to parade the author's scholarship.

For more mature pupils and teachers desiring a shorter course an edition of the lessons is printed with the exercises somewhat condensed and with the collateral reading omitted.

Thanks are due to Mr. Jacob Greenberg, Supervisor of Languages in the New York City Junior High Schools, who helped in the general preparation of the book, and to my colleagues Professor Charles A. Downer, Emory B. Lease, and George V. Edwards, who were kind enough to read the proofs and to make many valuable suggestions. The galley proofs were read by Mr. George Hinman of Phillips Academy at Andover, and Mr. Bernard Allen of the Roxbury School at Cheshire, Connecticut. Professor Charles Knapp of Barnard College read both page and foundry proofs with his well-known incisiveness. To all these gentlemen I wish to express my gratitude, and at the same time, as not all their suggestions were adopted, to absolve them from responsibility for any of the book's shortcomings.

V. E. F.

C. C. N. Y.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

		PAGE
	INTRODUCTION	xiii
LESSON		
I.	FIRST DECLENSION	1
	Reading: Latin Sentences. Roman Children's Garments	5
II.	FIRST DECLENSION	7
	Reading: **Octavia et Augusta.** Roman Slavery	9
III.	SUBJECT, PREDICATE, AND OBJECT	11
	Reading: **Amicitia et Diligentia.** Roman Education	15
IV.	FIRST CONJUGATION	16
	Reading: **Poeta et Nauta.** Early Roman Money	20
V.	FIRST DECLENSION	22
	Reading: **Octavia Laborat.** Roman Agriculture, 367–200 B.C.	26
VI.	REVIEW LESSON	28
	Reading: **I. Roma et Italia. II. Patria.** The Via Appia	32
VII.	FIRST DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION	36
	Reading: **Amicae Carae Octaviae.** Roman Roads	40
VIII.	FIRST DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION	42
	Reading: **Viae Romanae.** Roman Houses (Early Period to 200 B.C.)	47
IX.	FIRST DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION	49
	Reading: **Muscae et Lucerna.** Roman Houses after the Punic Wars (146–49 B.C.)	54
X.	FIRST DECLENSION	56
	Reading: **Italia Antiqua.** Land and Peoples of Italy	59
XI.	REVIEW LESSON	63
XII.	Reading: **Italia.** Roman Literature	68

LESSON		PAGE
XIII.	Second Declension. Past of **Esse**	71
	Reading: **Galba et Marcus.** The Roman Navy	75
XIV.	Second Declension. First Conjugation	77
	Reading: **Plautus, Servus Bonus.** Rome the World Mistress	81
XV.	Second Declension. Second Conjugation	83
	Reading: **Lupus et Capra.** Early Rome	86
XVI.	Second Declension	89
	Reading: **Puer et Agnus.** The Roman Army	92
XVII.	Review Lesson	95
XVIII.	Reading: **Vergilius.** Publius Vergilius Maro	100
XIX.	Second Declension. Future of **Esse**	103
	Reading: **Nunc et Cras.** Quintus Horatius Flaccus	106
XX.	Second Declension. First Conjugation	109
	Reading: **Roma Prospera.** Rome's Prosperity	113
XXI.	Second Declension. Second Conjugation	115
	Reading: **In Ludo.** Italian Allies	118
XXII.	Second Declension	120
	Reading: **Vae Victis!** Rome Sacked by the Gauls and Saved by the Geese	123
XXIII.	Vocative. Imperative	125
	Reading: **Mi Fili!** The Roman Gods	128
XXIV.	Review Lesson	131
XXV.	Reading: **De Gallia.** Gaul	136
XXVI.	Second Declension. Verb **Esse**	139
	Reading: **Romani Oppidum Delent.** Carthage "Blotted Out"	144
XXVII.	Second Declension. First Conjugation	146
	Reading: **Romani et Galli.** The Early Latins	150
XXVIII.	Second Declension. Second Conjugation	152
	Reading: I. **Iocus Romanus.** II. **Marcus et Poma.** The Roman Camp	157
XXIX.	Second Declension. First and Second Conjugations	159
	Reading: **De Periculis Belli.** Rome Unites Italy	163

LESSON		PAGE
XXX.	Agreement of Adjectives. Adverbs	165
	Reading: **Agricola Miser.** Roman Slavery	169
XXXI.	Review Lesson	172
	Word Formation	178
XXXII.	Reading: List of Latin Words, Phrases, and Proverbs. The Roman Character	180
XXXIII.	First and Second Conjugations (Passive)	185
	Reading: **Puer Malus et Asinus.** The Provinces	190
XXXIV.	First and Second Conjugations (Passive)	193
	Reading: **Galli Romanorum Iniurias Vindicabunt.** Caesar in Gaul	197
XXXV.	First and Second Conjugations (Passive)	200
	Reading: **Debentne Discipuli Mali a Bonis Iuvari?** Rural Estates	204
XXXVI.	First and Second Conjugations (Passive)	207
	Reading: **Periculum Discordiae.** A Roman "Triumph"	211
XXXVII.	Review Lesson	214
	Reading: **In Ludo.** Education and Learning under the Roman Empire, to 192 A.D.	219
XXXVIII.	Third Declension. Third Conjugation	221
	Reading: I. **Silentio.** II. **Pavo et Ciconia.** III. **Diogenes.** IV. **Lupus et Capra.** The Consuls	225
XXXIX.	Third Declension. Third Conjugation	229
	Reading: I. **Virtus Leonidae.** II. **Formica et Cicada.** Caesar (100–44 B.C.)	232
XL.	Third Declension. Third Conjugation	236
	Reading: **Id Satis Erit.** Hannibal	240
XLI.	Third Declension. Third Conjugation	243
	Reading: **Ranae et Iuppiter.** Writing Material	248
XLII.	Third Declension. Third Conjugation	252
	Reading: I. **Quam Pulchrum Caput!** II. **Mors Epaminondae.** The Roman Calendar	255
XLIII.	Third Declension. Third Conjugation	260
	Reading: I. **Quid Deinde?** II. **Nomina Romanorum.** Roman Names	264

LESSON		PAGE
XLIV.	Review Lesson	267
	Reading: Travel under the Early Empire	273
XLV.	Reading: **Familia.** A Roman Father's Power	276
XLVI.	Third Declension (**-i** Stems). Fourth Conjugation	278
	Reading: I. **Taurus et Musca.** II. **Servus Piger.** III. **Magister Scelestus.** The Roman Citizen	283
XLVII.	Third Declension. Fourth Conjugation	286
	Reading: I. **Corvus et Vulpes.** II. **Sic Vos Non Vobis.** Augustus	290
XLVIII.	Third Declension. Fourth Conjugation	294
	Reading: I. **Lupus et Grus.** II. **Naufragium Simonidis.** Pompeian Rooms	298
XLIX.	Third Declension. Fourth Conjugation	300
	Reading: I. **Leo Aeger.** II. **Diluvium.** Shipping — Trade — "The Good Roman Peace"	304
L.	Review Lesson	308
LI.	Reading: **Urbis Romae Origo. Proditio Tarpeiae.** The Seven Kings of Rome	314
LII.	Third Declension. Imperative	319
	Reading: **Horatii et Curatii. Camilla.** Rivalry of Rome and Alba Longa	323
LIII.	Third Declension	328
	Reading: I. **De Amicitia.** II. **En Ea Ornamenta Mea!** III. **Agricola et Anguis.** IV. **Asinus Leonis Pelle Indutus.** The Gracchi (133–121 B.C.)	332
LIV.	Comparison of Adjectives	336
	Reading: I. **Responsum Laconicum.** II. **Rex Esuriens.** III. **Vacca, Capella, Ovis, Leo.** IV. **Anseres et Grues.** V. **Ego Me Ipse Curo.** Roman Censors	340
LV.	The Superlative	343
	Reading: I. **Origo Obscurissima Euripidis et Demosthenis.** II. **Gorgias Leontinus, Vir Doctissimus.** III. **Vipera et Lima.** IV. **Helvetia.** Greek Oracles and Roman Augurs	346

LESSON PAGE

LVI. Adverbs 350
Reading: I. Somnium Verum Evasit. II. Fortitudo Arriae. Women's Condition under the Empire 353

LVII. Review Lesson 356

LVIII. Reading: I. L. Iunius Brutus, Romanorum Consul Primus. II. C. Mucius Scaevola. III. Cloelia Virgo. I. The Tiber. II. The Sacra Via . 361

LIX. Demonstratives. Indirect Discourse . . 365
Reading: I. Decepta Aviditas. II. Fabia Gens. The "Fabian Policy" 369

LX. Demonstratives 371
Reading: Menenius Agrippa. Patricians and Plebeians 375

LXI. Relative Pronoun — Interrogative Adjective . 378
Reading: Ciceronis Iocus. Responsum Laconicum. Leonidae Aliud Responsum. Enni Poetae Imago. A Roman Funeral 382

LXII. Fourth Declension 384
Reading: I. Horatius Cocles. II. T. Manlius Torquatus. The Senate 389

LXIII. Fifth Declension 393
Reading: Proelium Acre cum Ariovisto, Rege Germanorum. Roman Daily Life 397

LXIV. Review Lesson 401

LXV. Reading: I. Cn. Martius Coriolanus. II. L. Quinctius Cincinnatus. III. Virginia. IV. M. Atilius Regulus. V. Common Words, Phrases, and Proverbs 406

Additional Reading Lessons: Historia Romana 415

Appendix 437

List of Illustrations 451

Latin-English Vocabulary 3

English-Latin Vocabulary 51

Index 63

GALBA PUZZLING OVER HIS ENGLISH.

INTRODUCTION

I. **Simplicity of Latin.** — Suppose Galba, a Roman boy, should take up the study of English and should come upon the words

fate	fat	far	fall
thou	though	thought	through
head	hear	heard	heart

Four different sounds of *a*, of *ou*, and of *ea*! And suppose he then runs across

cat	cent	go	gem

with two different sounds for *c* and for *g*.

What a contrast with his native Latin where a vowel has only two similar sounds — short and long, and the pronunciation of a consonant seldom varies. When he finds that English letters are often silent, or have varying sounds, he is likely to get discouraged.

II. **The Latin Alphabet.** — Now see how much easier Latin pronunciation is for an American boy. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *j* or *w*. Each consonant has usually only one sound and each vowel only two — short and long.

1. *Consonants.* All the consonants which have only one sound in English have the same sound in Latin except the letter *v*, which is pronounced like our *w*.

All the consonants which have more than one sound in English have only *one* of these sounds in Latin.

Here are the Latin sounds of the consonants which have more than one sound in English:

This Latin letter	*Learn this* always has the English sound in	*Avoid this* never has the English sound in
c	cat	city
ch	chorus	charade
g	go	gem
s	sun	rose
t	time	motion
th	thyme	though, through
x	box	exact
i (consonant)	union	
u (consonant)	persuade	
v	like *w* in *wood*	very

2. *Latin vowels* also are like their English equivalents. Each has really only one quality of sound, that is, a short Latin vowel is like a long one, except that it is spoken in half the time. Here are the sounds of Latin vowels:

This Latin vowel	*Learn this* always has the English sound in	*Avoid this* never has the English sound in
long **ā** **ā, fās, vās, hāc, pāx**	art	fate
short **a** **ab, ac, ad, at, ars, arma, amat, casa, castra**	artistic	fat

This Latin vowel	*Learn this* always has the English sound in	*Avoid this* never has the English sound in
long **ē** **ē, dē, nē, rēs, rēx, dēns, lātē**	they	he
short **e** **ex, et, nec, sed, vel, bene**	net	butter
long **ī** **sī, sīc, quī, hī, dīc, vīdī**	police	fine
short **i** **in, quis, si′milis, diffi′cilis**	pin	
long **ō** **dō, mōs, vōx, prō, nōn, ōrō**	old	move
short **o** **ob, mox, quot, tot, quod**	obey	stop
long **ū** **tū, plūs, dūc, rūs, ūsū**	rule	futile
short **u** **sub, ut, dum, tuus, tumul′tus**	full	mud

3. *Latin diphthongs* are pronounced like the separate vowels run together. They are always long, that is, they take as much time to pronounce as a long vowel does.

ae: as *ai* in *aisle*
prae, vae, laetae, aegrae, aequae, aetās

au: as *ou* in *out*
aut, aurum, laudō, paulō, gaudium

oe: as *oi* in *oil*
poe'na, proe'lium, foe'dus, moe'nia

eu: as *eu* in *feud*
ceu, heu, Eurō'pa, Teu'tonī

ei: as *ei* in *eight*
hei

ARĒNA.

This is the Colosseum at Rome, the greatest arena in the world. Here about 50,000 people could watch the fights of gladiators and other so-called games.

EXERCISE

Pronounce the following words after the teacher:

arēna	cēnsus	Caesar	Cicerō
campus	pulchra	schola	iūs
chorus	silva	rosa	summās
iam	patientia	toga	Themis
terra	via	rēx	vōx
Athēnae	Galba	gēns	gesta

III. **Accent.** — Suppose the Roman boy Galba keeps on with his English and runs across the following words :

accent object present

all of which occur early in grammar.

At *present* he *objects* to the lesson, whose *object* is to *present accent* so that he can *accent* English words correctly. He takes his problem to his teacher, who tells him that you cannot tell the accent of these words until they are used in a sentence.

Once more Galba is struck with the greater simplicity of his native Latin, where accent, like pronunciation, is uniform. There are only two simple rules for Latin accent.

(1) In words of two syllables always accent the first syllable.

(2) In words of more than two syllables accent the next to the last syllable when it is long ; otherwise the preceding one.

IV. **Syllable Length.** — It is easy to tell long syllables in Latin, for they are long when they contain a long vowel, a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by two consonants. Otherwise they are usually short. In this book long vowels have a straight line over them, so that you can recognize them more readily.

EXERCISE

1. Turn back to section II and pronounce all the Latin words on pages xiv, xv, and xvi, paying special attention to accent.

2. Pronounce again the words at the bottom of page xvi, this time without the teacher's help.

V. **Syllabication.** — Now imagine Galba going on with his English and trying to learn syllabication. He runs across such divisions of words as the following:

Rom-any	Ro-man
log-i-cal	lo-gi-cian
rat-i-fy	ra-tiŏn-al

Poor Galba will begin to get discouraged, for his native Latin syllabication is simple and uniform.

VILLA.

This shows the ruins of part of the villa of the Emperor Hadrian. The ruins cover 170 acres.

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. The following rules will help us divide words correctly.

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second: **a-mī-cus**, **au-di-ō**, **dī-xit**.

2. Two like consonants, next to each other, are separated: **vīl-la, ter-ra.**

3. The last of two or more different consonants goes with the following vowel: **rēg-num, ar-ma, temp-tō.**

Exceptions: (*a*) If the last consonant of the group is **h, l,** or **r,** the *last two* consonants go with the following vowel: **tri-um-phō, a-grum, pū-bli-cus.**

(*b*) In compound words, the division comes between the original parts: **dē-scen-dō, cōn-sti-tu-ō, prō-scrī-bō, pēn-īn-su-la.**

EXERCISE

Divide the following words into syllables:

1. Apply rule 1: **dominus, ager, animus, fāma, fuga, homō, nātūra, caput, liber, casa, dēsīderō.**

2. Apply rule 2: **annus, bellum, oppidum, puella, difficilis, dissimilis.**

3. Apply rule 3: **cōnsilium, victōria, silva, prīnceps, fortūna, dīligentia, signum, magnus.**

4. Apply Exception (*a*): **templō, frātribus, agricola.**

VI. **Identical Words.** — 1. When Galba takes up the study of English words, he is surprised and delighted to find how like the Latin many of them are. Not only are more than half our English words derived from Latin, but many words are identical in both languages.

Study the following Latin words, pronouncing them according to the rules you have just learned. They are all accented as in English.

animal	cōnsul	horror	pēnīnsula
arēna	dictātor	inventor	status
cēnsor	furor	labor	terror
cēnsus	genus	minor	toga
clāmor	honor	ōmen	tūtor

ulterior victor vīlla

2. Some Latin words are not translated by the same English form, but their meaning is usually so near the English that it is easily understood. After each Latin word in the following list is given its literal English

VILLA.

This shows the swimming pool in Hadrian's Villa. Besides this it had libraries, halls, courts, squares, baths, a basilica, and a stadium.

translation. Pronounce the words carefully. Then see if you can explain the meaning of each translation.

arbor, *tree*
impetus, *attack*
integer, *entire*
interim, *meanwhile*
locus, *a place*
miser, *wretched*
neuter, *neither*
pāstor, *shepherd*
plūs, *more*
sinis'ter, *left-hand*
speculā'tor, *a spy*
vesper, *evening*
vetō, *I forbid*

VII. **Similar Words.** — Besides identical words there is an enormous number of Latin words so like their English equivalents that their meaning is clear.

EXERCISE

Pronounce the following words in 1, 2, and 3, and translate them.

1. *Nouns.* Nouns have various endings, as you can see from this list.

calamitās	fortūna	necessitās	prūdentia
captīvus	glōria	officium	regiō
causa	herba	opīniō	religiō
columna	mātrimōnium	ōrnāmentum	respōnsum
difficultās	memoria	palma	rosa
disciplīna	multitūdō	pictūra	ruīna
experientia	nātiō	poēta	scientia
figūra	nātūra	prōvincia	senātus

2. *Adjectives.* The first form of a Latin adjective usually ends in **s**.

dīvīnus	longus
dubius	mortālis
extrēmus	prīvātus
firmus	sānus
horribilis	sēcūrus

3. *Verbs.* The first form of a Latin verb regularly ends in **ō**.

compellō	convertō	exclāmō	persuādeō
cōnfīdō	dēfendō	exclūdō	perturbō
cōnfirmō	dēscendō	impediō	resistō
cōnsīderō	errō	indūcō	respondeō
contendō	ēvādō	intrōdūcō	salūtō

COLUMNA.

Here are the remains of columns about the court of a Roman house in Pompeii.

VIII. **Advantages of Latin.** — One day Galba picked up an American newspaper and saw the headlines

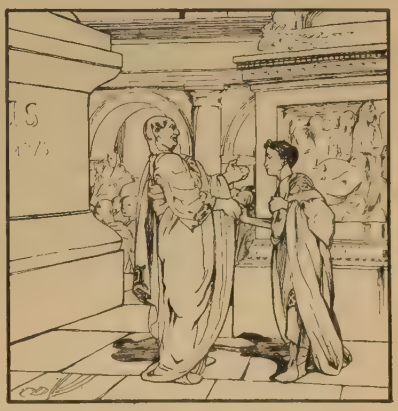
HIDES BURN DRIVES CLOSE

He wondered why any one should conceal a burn and who drove close to what. On reading the articles, however, he found that the first was about a fire in a tannery, while the second told of the finish of the Red Cross drives.

Once more Galba was struck with the advantages of Latin where such confusion could not possibly occur. This is because Latin has special endings which distinguish nouns, verbs, and other parts of speech. It also

has endings to show gender, number, and case of nouns, and person, mode, and tense of verbs.

IX. **Inflection.** — The change of form by means of these endings is called *inflection*. For nouns it is called *declension*, for verbs, *conjugation*. Inflection helps us see just what a Latin sentence means. It also lets us shift the emphasis more easily.



GALBA SENECAM SALUTAT.

For instance, here is Galba saluting Seneca. English says *Galba salutes Seneca*. Latin says **Galba Senecam salūtat**. If we wished to emphasize that it is Seneca, not Caesar, that Galba is saluting, English has to say *It is Seneca that Galba is saluting*. But Latin merely puts Seneca in the emphatic place in the sentence: **Senecam Galba salūtat**. It can do this without changing the meaning because the letter **m**, not the position of the word, shows which noun is the object.

English can get this emphasis with pronouns, as in the sentence *Himself he cannot save*, but Latin has the advantage of inflection also for nouns.

EXERCISE

Pronounce the following sentences carefully and tell in each case who is saluting and who is saluted. Point out also which words are emphatic.

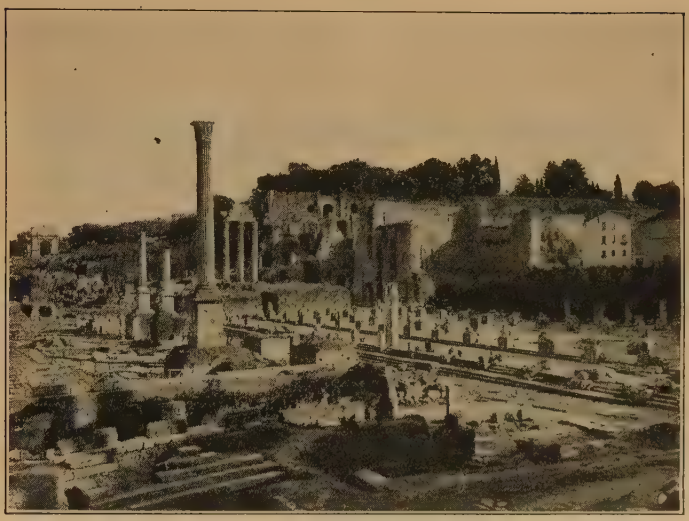
1. Galba Senecam salūtat.
2. Galbam Seneca salūtat.
3. Senecam Galba salūtat.
4. Seneca Galbam salūtat.

X. **Cases.** — From these examples you can see the importance of Latin endings. Each case has its own ending and when learned these make translation easy. English has three cases: nominative, possessive, and objective, but in nouns we cannot tell nominative and objective apart. To correspond to these Latin has the *nominative*, the *genitive*, and the *accusative*. It has also the *dative*, by which the English indirect object is expressed, and the *ablative*, which has various uses, especially with prepositions. These cases will be taken up gradually in the following lessons.

EXERCISE

Pronounce carefully the following sentences, and see if you can translate them. They are all in the present tense. Remember that the object ends in **m** and that the regular Latin order is (1) subject, (2) object, (3) verb. Latin has no articles, so you may supply these as you wish.

Tūtor errat.
Toga Senecam impedit.
Cōnsul victōriam cōnfirmat.
Cōnsul prōvinciam occupat.
Victor vīllam dēfendit.
Terror Senecam convertit.
"Victōria!" exclāmat dictātor.
Columna forum dīvidit.



COLUMNA FORUM DĪVIDIT.

This is one view of the Roman Forum, one of the most interesting places in the world. Many more pictures of it occur later in this book.

We must now take leave of Galba, letting him go on with his English as best he can, while we take up a systematic study of his native Latin. We can cheer ourselves at parting by the knowledge that our task is much easier than his.

TOGA LONGA EST.

This was the street dress of a Roman boy. In the first picture in the Introduction Galba has laid aside his toga.

FIRST LATIN

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION

1. Nominative Singular (*–a*). — The *first declension* which we shall study has the nominative singular ending in **–a**. The part of a noun to which the ending is added is called the *base:* **toga** has for its base **tog–**, for its ending, **–a.**

Note the use of the nominative in the following sentences:

Toga	**longa**	**est.**		*The toga is long.*
subject	predicate adjective			
Ītalia	**pēnīnsula**	**longa**	**est.**	*Italy is a long peninsula.*
subject	predicate noun	descriptive adjective		

2. Word Order. — Generally a Latin sentence begins with the subject and ends with the verb. An unemphatic adjective follows its noun.

3. Definite and Indefinite Articles. — There is no word in Latin for *a, an,* or *the.* **Toga** may be translated *toga, a toga, the toga,* according to the sense.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
Īta'lia	*Italy*	Italian
pēnīn'sula	*peninsula*	peninsular
pictū'ra	*picture*	picturesque
to'ga	*toga* (a Roman garment)	togaed
vi'a	*road, way*	viaduct
bo'na (feminine)	*good*	bonus
lon'ga (fem.)	*long*	longitude
mag'na (fem.)	*great, large*	magnify
pul'chra (fem.)	*beautiful*	pulchritude
est	*is* (*he is, she is, it is*)	
et	*and*	etc.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) The base of the noun **pictūra** is **pictūr–**; of **via**, **vi–**; of the adjective **bona**, **bon–**; of **longa**, **long–**. Remembering how to get the base of a noun, give the base of every other noun and adjective in the vocabulary.

(*b*) The noun **pictūra** is divided into syllables as follows: **pic-tū-ra**; **pēnīnsula** is **pēn-īn-su-la** (see section V, exception (*b*)); **bona**, **bo-na**; **longa**, **lon-ga**. Recalling the rules in section V, divide into syllables the other nouns and adjectives of the vocabulary.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully the following words. Remembering the rules in sections III and IV, indicate which syllable must be accented in each word, and give the reason why.

pēnīnsula, **toga**, **via**, **pictūra**, **via longa**, **pictūra pulchra**, **toga longa**, **pēnīnsula magna**, **toga bona et pulchra**.

(*d*) Translate into English the nouns and phrases of (*c*), using (1) the definite article *the;* (2) the indefinite article *a* or *an*.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Pronounce carefully and translate into English:

1. Pēnīnsula magna est.
2. Via longa est.
3. Toga magna est.
4. Pictūra pulchra est.
5. Via magna est.
6. Ītalia pulchra est.
7. Pictūra magna pulchra est.
8. Via longa et pulchra est.
9. Toga bona et longa est.
10. Ītalia pēnīnsula longa est.

Via Longa et Pulchra Est.

(*b*) Point out in II (*a*) (1) all the subjects; (2) the predicate nouns; (3) the predicate adjectives; (4) the descriptive adjectives.

(*c*) Replace the dashes by appropriate nouns:

1. —— bona est. 2. —— magna est. 3. —— longa est. 4. —— pulchra est.

(*d*) Complete each sentence with an adjective:

1. Ītalia —— est. 2. Toga —— est. 3. Via —— est. 4. Pictūra —— est. 5. Pēnīnsula —— est.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) 1. A road; the road. 2. The peninsula; a peninsula. 3. A picture; the picture. 4. A long toga. 5. The large peninsula. 6. Beautiful Italy. 7. A good picture.

(*b*) 1. The picture is good.
2. The peninsula is large.
3. The road is long.
4. The good road is long.
5. The picture is large.
6. The toga is long and beautiful.
7. A long toga is good.
8. Italy is a large and long peninsula.

A Roman Boy.

Galba belongs to the upper classes. This is a peasant lad.

READING LESSON[1]

The following sentences contain Latin words of the first declension which are very like their English equivalents. Pronounce them carefully and see if you can translate them without any help:

1. Ītalia pēnīnsula est.
2. Pēnīnsula longa est.
3. Rōma antīqua est.
4. Prōvincia vāsta est.
5. Victōria incerta est.
6. Fortūna timida est.
7. Causa iūsta est.
8. Glōria aeterna est.
9. Nātūra fēcunda est.
10. Colōnia Rōmāna est.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Children's Garments

From his birth until he was seven years old, a young Roman was called *īnfāns* (that is, unable to talk), then *puer* till he became of age, *adulēscēns*, at seventeen. Children of free birth wore at home the *tunica*, a short-sleeved woolen garment falling to the knees, and outdoors the *toga praetexta* (see page xxvi), a white woolen blanket (*toga*) bordered with a purplish band (*praetexta*) and worn in graceful folds about the body over the tunica.

At seventeen, boys would discard the *toga praetexta* for the common *toga*, without any band.

Till boys were of age, and girls were married, they wore the *bulla*, a round or heart-shaped locket (see page xxvi) suspended from a necklace and holding amulets as a charm against the evil eye.

[1] The Reading Lessons and Collateral Readings may be omitted by teachers who wish a briefer course. See Preface.

CASA AGRICOLAE PARVA EST.

LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION

4. Genitive Singular (**–ae**). — The genitive singular of the first declension is formed by replacing final **–a** of the nominative by **–ae.**

Note the use of the genitive (possessive) case in the following sentences:

Casa agricolae parva est. genitive case	*The farmer's cottage is small.*
Dīligentia puellae parvae magna est. genitive descriptive adjective	*The diligence of the little girl is great.*

5. Gender. — Nouns of the first declension are feminine except a few which are obviously masculine from their meaning; as **agricola**, *farmer;* **poēta**, *poet.*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
agri'cola, –ae [1]	*farmer*	agriculture
ca'sa, –ae	*cottage*	
dīligen'tia, –ae	*diligence, industry, care*	diligent
fā'ma, –ae	*fame, reputation*	famous

[1] In the vocabularies the genitive singular ending is placed after the nominative to indicate the declension. It must always be learned with the nominative singular.

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
Gal'ba, –ae	*Galba* (a boy's proper name)	
Octā'via, –ae	*Octavia* (a girl's proper name)	
poē'ta, –ae	*poet*	poetical
puel'la, –ae	*girl*	
vī'ta, –ae	*life*	vital
par'va, –ae (fem.)	*small, little*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the base of every word in the vocabulary and divide each one into syllables, indicating which syllable must be accented.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate into good English:

1. Toga Galbae pulchra est.
2. Toga poētae longa est.
3. Casa Octāviae pulchra est.
4. Fāma Ītaliae magna est.
5. Vīta agricolae longa est.
6. Dīligentia puellae parvae magna est.
7. Pictūra Octāviae pulchra est.
8. Fāma poētae parva est.

(*c*) Explain each case in the first four sentences of (*b*) and point out the examples of genitive cases in the other sentences.

(*d*) Give the genitive singular of:

agricola, toga, pictūra, fāma, puella, poēta, vīta longa, pictūra pulchra, fāma bona, via parva, toga magna, puella bona, Ītalia pulchra, pēnīnsula longa.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Replace the dash by a noun in the genitive and translate:

1. Casa ——.
2. Pictūra ——.
3. Vīta ——.
4. Toga ——.
5. Fāma ——.
6. Dīligentia ——.

(*b*) Review. Add the proper endings: 1. Cas— (subject) Galb— (possessive case) magn— (predicate) est. 2. Pictūr— (subject) puell— (possessive case) pulchr— (predicate) est. 3. Dīligenti— (subject) agricol— (possessive case) magn— (predicate) est. 4. Tog— (subject) poēt— (possessive case) long— (predicate) est.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. Italy's fame is great.
2. A farmer's life is long.
3. Octavia's diligence is great.
4. Galba's picture is good.
5. The little girl's picture is beautiful.
6. The poet's toga is long.
7. Galba's cottage is large.

READING LESSON

Octāvia et Augusta

Octāvia puella est. Puella Rōmāna (*Roman*) est. Octāvia parva est. Puella parva bona est. Octāvia puella pulchra est. Augusta quoque (*also, too*) puella bona et pulchra est. Augusta amīca (*friend*, f.) Octāviae est.

Domina (*lady of the house*) bona est. Serva (*slave*, f.) quoque bona est. Octāvia fīlia (*daughter*) dominae est. Augusta fīlia servae est. Octāvia amīca bona Augustae parvae est. Fīlia servae amīca fīliae dominae est.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Slavery

In ancient times slaves were commonly not of a different color or race from their masters. . . . Roman slaves came in large part from the cultured East; and some of them became teachers, secretaries, and stewards. But others came

from wild barbarian tribes; and the most unfortunate of these were made savage herdsmen or branded and shackled workers, clothed in rags and herded at night into underground dungeons on the master's estate. . . .

. . . Slaves rarely left families. If they had children, the master "exposed" the infants, since it was easier and more convenient to buy a new slave than to rear one . . . for slaves were made cheap by wars of conquest.

ROMAN SLAVES.

This shows the three tiers of galley slaves, chained to their oars and rowing the boat shown on page 37.

In the closing period of the Roman Republic, there grew up a slavery beyond all parallel in extent and in horror. . . .

Under the Empire, slavery grew milder. Emancipation became so common that faithful household slaves were freed commonly after six years' service.

LESSON III

SUBJECT, PREDICATE, AND OBJECT

6. Agreement of Subject and Verb. — A Latin verb always shows by its ending the person and number of its subject. The verbal ending **ō**, for example, indicates that the subject is in the first person, singular (the pronoun, *I*).

Laudō.	*I praise, I do praise, I am praising.*
Nōn laudō.	*I do not praise, I am not praising.*

PICTŪRAM LAUDŌ.

This is a Roman festival in which boys and girls are taking part.

Note (*a*) that the English auxiliary *do* (I do praise, do I praise? I do not praise) has no equivalent in Latin;

(*b*) that the Latin adverb **nōn** is placed before the word it modifies.

7. Accusative Singular (–am). — The accusative singular of the first declension is formed by replacing the ending **–ae** of the genitive singular by **–am.**

Note the use of the accusative (objective) in the following sentences:

Pictūram laudō. direct object	*I praise, I do praise, I am praising the picture.*
Pictūram parvam nōn laudō. direct object / descriptive adjective	*I do not praise, I am not praising the small picture.*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
disci'pula, –ae	*pupil* (fem.)	disciple
sil'va, –ae	*forest*	silvan
lā'ta, –ae (fem.)	*wide, broad*	latitude
nōn	*not*	nonsense
quo'que	*also, too*	
sed	*but*	
a'mō	*I like* or *I love, I do like, I am liking*	amiable
lau'dō	*I praise, I do praise, I am praising*	laudable
mōn'strō	*I show, I do show, I am showing*	demonstrate
vo'cō	*I call, I do call, I am calling*	vocal

EXERCISES

I. **Oral.**

(*a*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Vītam agricolae amō.
2. Dīligentiam agricolae laudō.

3. Dīligentiam discipulae quoque laudō.
4. Poētam, nōn agricolam, vocō.
5. Silvam magnam amō.
6. Octāviam vocō; parvam[1] discipulam nōn vocō.
7. Vītam amō sed vīta nōn longa est; longam vītam amō.
8. Viam mōnstrō; longam viam nōn mōnstrō; lātam viam mōnstrō; via lāta sed nōn longa est.

(*b*) Explain each case in sentences 1 and 8, and point out the direct objects (accusatives) in the other sentences.

(*c*) Give the genitive and accusative singular of

silva, vīta, puella, discipula, via lāta, vīta longa, puella pulchra, discipula bona.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Make the following sentences negative and translate:

1. Via lāta est. 2. Puellam parvam amō. 3. Silva magna est. 4. Discipulam bonam laudō.

(*b*) Supply a suitable verb and translate:

1. Silva parva ——. 2. Silvam ——. 3. Viam nōn ——. 4. Octāvia pulchra ——. 5. Discipulam bonam ——. 6. Vīta nōn longa ——.

(*c*) Review. Add the proper endings:

1. Tog— pulchr— est. 2. Puell— bon— vocō. 3. Pictūr— laudō. 4. Vīt— amō. 5. Vīt— nōn long— est. 6. Vi— lāt— nōn mōnstrō. 7. Octāvi— puell— parv— est.

---

[1] The adjectives precede the nouns in sentences 6, 7, and 8 because they are used emphatically (see § 2).

OCTĀVIA ET AUGUSTA.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I love, I am loving, I do love, I praise, I am calling, I do show, I do not praise, I am not calling, I do not like, I am not showing.

(*b*) 1. I like the forest.
2. I do not like a large forest; I like a small forest.
3. The forest is small.
4. I am calling Octavia.
5. I praise the good pupil (fem.).

6. I also praise Octavia's diligence.
7. Life is long; I like life.
8. I show the long road.
9. I do not like a long road.
10. The road is not long but wide.
11. I am praising Galba's cottage.
12. I am also showing the poet's beautiful cottage.

READING LESSON

Amīcitia (*friendship*) et Dīligentia

Octāvia amīca Augustae est. Augusta amīca cāra (*dear*) Octāviae est. Octāvia Augustam amat (*likes*). Augusta quoque Octāviam amat. Octāvia discipula bona est. Augusta quoque discipula bona est. Quis (*who*) dīligentiam discipulae bonae nōn laudat (*does not praise*)? Quis amīcitiam et dīligentiam nōn laudat?

Serva dominam bonam amat (*likes*). Domina servam bonam laudat. Dīligentiam magnam servae bonae laudat.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Education

Education was elementary. Until seven, the children were in the mothers' care. After that age, boys of the upper classes went to a private school, taught usually by some Greek slave. As in Greece, the pupil was attended by a trusted servant of his own family called a "pedagogue." He learned merely to read, write, and, in a limited degree, to compute with Roman numerals.

The only textbook was the Laws of the Twelve Tables (so called because they were engraved on twelve stone tables) which were learned by heart.

Physical training was found in athletic games in the Campus Martius (Field of Mars) where the young Romans contended in running, wrestling, and in the use of the spear, sword, and javelin.

LESSON IV

FIRST CONJUGATION

8. Dative Singular (**–ae**). — The dative singular of the first declension ends in **–ae**, like the genitive singular. Note the use of the dative (indirect object) in the following sentences:

Puellae viam mōnstrō. indirect object	*I show the girl the way.*
Puellae parvae viam mōnstrō. indirect object · descriptive adjective	*I show the way to the little girl.*

Note the word order: the indirect object (dative) usually precedes the direct object (accusative). This sometimes helps us tell genitive and dative apart, since a genitive usually follows the noun it modifies.

Puellae pictūram mōnstrō.	*I show the girl the picture.*
Pictūram puellae mōnstrō.	*I show (somebody) the girl's picture.*

9. The Third Person Singular of the Present Indicative of the First Conjugation ends in **–at.**

First Person Singular	Third Person Singular
Laudō, *I praise*	**Laudat**, *he* or *she praises*
Mōnstrō, *I show*	**Mōnstrat**, *he* or *she shows*

Note (*a*) that the letter **t** is the characteristic ending of the third person singular of *every* tense in the active voice; (*b*) that every person of a Latin tense has a special ending. Therefore personal pronoun subjects are rarely used except for emphasis or contrast.

PUELLAE PARVAE VIAM MŌNSTRŌ.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
amī′ca, –ae	*friend* (fem.)	amicable
do′mina, –ae	*lady of the house, mistress*	dominate
fā′bula, –ae	*story, tale*	fable
fī′lia, –ae	*daughter*	filial
nau′ta, –ae (masc.)	*sailor*	nautical
pecū′nia, –ae	*money*	pecuniary

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
ro'sa, –ae	*rose*	roseate
ser'va, –ae	*slave* (fem.)	servile
cā'ra, –ae (fem.)	*dear*	caress
me'a, –ae (fem.)	*my*	
dō	*I give, I do give, I am giving*	
dat	*he gives, he does give, he is giving*	dative
nār'rō	*I tell, I do tell, I am telling*	narrate
nār'rat	*he tells, he does tell, he is telling*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) (1) Give the base of each of the following words:

vita, rosa, pecunia, fabula, serva, agricola, fama, nauta, cara, magna, lata.

(2) Mark the long vowel, if there is any, in each of these words and divide them into syllables, indicating the syllable which must be accented.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Puellae rosam dō.
2. Serva puellae parvae rosam pulchram dat.
3. Octāvia fīliae poētae rosam dat.
4. Agricola nautae viam mōnstrat.
5. Nauta agricolae pecūniam nōn dat.
6. Fīliae cārae meae pecūniam dō.
7. Poēta Octāviae fābulam nārrat.
8. Discipulae bonae fābulam nārrō.
9. Servae parvae viam mōnstrō.
10. Puella parva amīcae cārae fābulam longam nārrat.

(*c*) Explain each case in the first three sentences of (*b*) and point out all the indirect objects (datives) in the other sentences.

(*d*) Give the genitive, dative, and accusative singular of :

fābula, amīca, rosa, puella, serva, domina, nauta, via lāta, fīlia cāra mea, serva parva, domina bona, pēnīnsula magna.

PECŪNIA.

These are Roman coins of the time of Caesar. Early Roman money is described at the end of this lesson.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) With **mōnstrō**, *I show*, and **mōnstrat**, *he* or *she shows*, as a model, give the third person singular of the present indicative of the following verb forms, and translate : **amō, laudō, nārrō, vocō, dō** ; give also the negative form of the first and third persons of the same, and translate.

(*b*) Review. Add the proper endings :

1. Serv— (indirect object) cas— (direct object) mōnstrō. 2. Naut— (subject) poēt— (indirect object) fābul— (direct object) nārrat. 3. Octāvi— (subject) puell— (indirect object) vi— (direct object) mōnstrat. 4. Domin— (subject)

fīli— (indirect object) agricol— (possessive case) pecūni— (direct object) dat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels.

(*a*) I call, he calls, I do not call, he does not call, she praises, I praise, she is not praising, I am not praising, I give, I do not give, he is giving, he does not give, she is not giving.

(*b*) 1. I show my cottage to the poet.

2. The little girl shows the cottage to a friend (fem.).

3. I tell a story to the farmer.

4. The poet's daughter gives (to) Octavia a rose.

5. I show the way to the little girl.

6. The lady of the house is telling the story to a dear friend.

7. I am giving money to the sailor.

8. I am not telling a story to the pupil.

9. The lady of the house gives money to the good slave.

10. The farmer does not give the beautiful rose to my dear daughter.

READING LESSON

Poēta et Nauta

Poēta puellae parvae fābulam nārrat. Fābula puellam dēlectat (*delights, pleases*). Puella poētae rosam dat. Rosa poētam dēlectat. Poēta rosam laudat.

Stella (*star*) quoque poētam dēlectat. Poēta stellam quoque laudat. Rosam et stellam amat.

Nauta quoque stellam amat. Stella nautae viam rēctam (*right*) mōnstrat. Nauta stellam laudat. Stella poētam et nautam dēlectat.

COLLATERAL READING

Early Roman Money

The oldest Roman word for money (**pecūnia**, from which comes our word *pecuniary*) came from the word for herd (**pecus**). This points to a time when payments were made chiefly in cattle. About 400 B.C., rude blocks of copper were stamped with the figure of an ox; and before 300 B.C., under the influence of Greece, Rome adopted true copper coins in form of circular discs. Even earlier, the Romans had "estimated" in copper (**aes**), counting by the pound weight; and now they made their copper coins each one twelfth of a pound. Such a coin was an "uncia," — one ounce (Troy weight). Silver was not used either for money or for household purposes until after the union of Italy.

LESSON V

FIRST DECLENSION

10. The Ablative Case. — We have seen that the Latin nominative, genitive, accusative, and dative

CUM DĪLIGENTIĀ LABŌRŌ.

correspond to the English nominative, possessive, objective, and indirect object.

The ablative has no single corresponding case in English. It is used with or without prepositions where

English would use *with*, *from*, *by*, or *in*. Thus it usually contains an idea of accompaniment (with), separation (from), means (by), or place where (in).

11. Formation of Ablative (**–ā**). — The ablative singular of the first declension is formed by replacing the ending **–ae** of the genitive singular by **–ā**.

Note the uses of the ablative in the following sentences:

Cum dīligentiā labōrō.	*I work with diligence.*
Cum agricolā labōrō.	*I work with the farmer.*
Nauta ab īnsulā parvā nāvigat.	*The sailor sails from the small island.*
Rōma in Ītaliā est.	*Rome is in Italy.*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
īn′sula, –ae	*island*	insular
Rō′ma, –ae	*Rome*	Roman
ā, ab [1]	*from*	absent
cum	*with*	vade mecum
in	*in, on*	inlay, inscribe
labō′rō	*I work*	labor
labō′rat	*he, she, it works*	
nā′vigō	*I sail*	navigate
nā′vigat	*he, she, it sails*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and give all the possible meanings of:

rosa, pecūniam, nautae, casā, Ītaliae, puellam, servā.

[1] The preposition **ā** is used before consonants; **ab** must be used before vowels and *h*; it may be used before most consonants.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Rōma in Ītaliā est.
2. Casa agricolae nōn in silvā est.
3. Nauta ab īnsulā magnā nāvigat.
4. Cum nautā ab Ītaliā nāvigō.
5. Agricola nōn nāvigat; vītam nautae nōn amat.

RŌMA IN ĪTĀLIĀ EST.

This is a view of Rome taken from the Vatican Palace, adjoining St. Peter's.

6. Octāvia in casā meā est, sed fīlia mea in casā Octāviae est.
7. Domina cum servā bonā in casā labōrat.
8. Agricola cum dīligentiā labōrat, sed (cum [1]) magnā dīligentiā nōn labōrō.
9. Puella parva nōn in casā est; in viā est.

[1] The preposition **cum** is generally omitted when its object, expressing manner, is modified by an adjective.

(*c*) Explain each case in the first four sentences of (*b*), and point out all the ablatives in the other sentences.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular of:

īnsula, nauta, vīta, silva magna, serva parva.

(*b*) Supply the proper verb in the present indicative:

1. Puella cum dīligentiā ——. 2. Octāvia nōn in casā agricolae ——. 3. Nauta ab Ītaliā ——. 4. Domina servam ——. 5. Fīliam cāram meam ——.

(*c*) Review. Add the proper endings:

1. In silv—. 2. Ā cas—. 3. Cum domin—. 4. In īnsul—. 5. Naut— (subject) in Ītali— est. 6. Serv— (subject) cum dīligenti— labōrat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I work, I show, I give, I am sailing, I do call, I praise, she likes, I do not call, he is not sailing, I am not working, she works.

(*b*) 1. I like a small rose.
2. A small rose is beautiful.
3. I praise Rome's fame.
4. The little girl is in the forest.
5. I am working with diligence.
6. The lady of the house is on (in) the road.
7. The sailor does not work with a farmer's diligence.
8. Octavia is sailing from Italy.
9. I do not sail from the small island.
10. The slave is working with the good mistress.

READING LESSON

Octāvia Labōrat

Octāvia fīlia agricolae est. Casa agricolae in īnsulā parvā est. Schola (*school*) prope (*near*, with accusative) casam puellae est. Via ā casā ad (*to*, with accusative) scholam nōn longa est. Octāvia nōn in casā est; nōn in viā est. In scholā cum amīcā est. Scholam amat. In scholā laeta (*joyful*) est. Est discipula bona. Octāvia cum agricolā saepe (*often*) labōrat. Cum dīligentiā labōrat. Agricola dīligentiam magnam Octāviae laudat.

Octāvia in Scholā cum Amīcā Est.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Agriculture, 367–200 B.C.

From 367 to about 200 B.C. is the period of greatest Roman vigor. . . . The Roman citizens, in the main, patrician or plebeian by descent, were still yeomen farmers, who worked hard and lived plainly. . . . Each farmer tilled his few acres with his own hands and the help of his own sons. Every eighth day he came to the city with a load of produce for the "market," — wheat, barley, garden vegetables, fruit, horses, cattle, sheep, or hogs. . . .

There was little wealth and little extreme poverty. . . . Manius Curio, the conqueror of the Samnites, and of Pyrrhus, was a peasant. Though he had "triumphed" thrice, he continued to live in a cottage on a little three-acre plot which

he tilled with his own hands. Here the Samnite ambassadors found him dressing turnips in the chimney corner, when they came to offer him a large present of gold. Curio refused the gift: "A man," said he, "who can be content with this supper hath no need of gold; and I count it as a glory, not to possess wealth, but to rule those who do."

LESSON VI

REVIEW LESSON

12. The First Declension. — Below is given the model for the singular of the first declension. When we give the forms of a noun or an adjective in this order, we are said to *decline* it.

	Silva Magna Base: silv- magn-	Endings
Nominative:	**silva magna**, *the great forest*	**-a**
Genitive:	**silvae magnae**, *of the great forest*	**-ae**
Dative:	**silvae magnae**, *to the great forest*	**-ae**
Accusative:	**silvam magnam**, *the great forest*	**-am**
Ablative:	**silvā magnā**, *with, by, from, in,* etc. *the great forest*	**-ā**

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Translate into English the following words:

1. *Nouns*

agricola	**fābula**	**pecūnia**	**rosa**
amīca	**fāma**	**pēnīnsula**	**serva**
casa	**fīlia**	**pictūra**	**silva**
dīligentia	**īnsula**	**poēta**	**toga**
discipula	**Ītalia**	**puella**	**via**
domina	**nauta**	**Rōma**	**vīta**

2. *Adjectives* (*feminine form*)

bona	**lāta**	**magna**	**parva**
cāra	**longa**	**mea**	**pulchra**

3. *Verbs*

amō	est	laudō	nārrō
dō	labōrō	mōnstrō	nāvigō
		vocō	

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

ā, ab	cum	et	in
	quoque	sed	

SILVA MAGNA.

This is the pine forest near Ravenna, the most famous wood in Italy.

(*b*) Indicate which syllable must be accented in each of the words in (*a*), and tell why. See page xvii.

(*c*) Indicate all the masculine nouns in (*a*) 1.

(*d*) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

1. What is the characteristic vowel of the first declension?
2. What is the final letter of the accusative singular?

3. What cases does the ending **-ae** indicate?

4. How is possession expressed (*a*) in English; (*b*) in Latin?

5. In what case do you put the indirect object?

6. What case does the ending **-ā** indicate?

7. What case does the preposition **cum** require?

8. Name two other prepositions used with the ablative.

9. How are the articles *the* and *a* (or *an*) rendered into Latin?

10. What is the characteristic ending (*a*) of the first person singular of the present indicative of *any* Latin active verb; (*b*) of the third person singular?

11. What Latin words are suggested by the following English words: fame, demonstration, filial, labor, latitude, longitude, magnify, navigation, vocal, silvan, poetic?

12. What do these English words mean? (Consult an English dictionary if you do not know their meanings.)

II. Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular: (1) two of the nouns in I (*a*) 1;

(2) **vīta mea**; **Ītalia pulchra**.

(*b*) Give the third person singular of the verb forms in I (*a*) 3.

(*c*) Translate into Latin the following words, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns*

cottage	girl	money	rose
daughter	industry	peninsula	sailor
diligence	island	picture	slave (fem.)
fame	Italy	poet	story
farmer	lady of the house	pupil (fem.)	toga
forest	life	road	way
friend (fem.)	mistress	Rome	

THE ROMAN FORUM.

Here are two more views of the Forum to compare with the one toward the end of the Introduction. The upper view shows the Forum in 1858 before excavations were begun. Below is the same general view as it appears to day. In the foreground is some of the original pavement of the Via Sacra.

2. *Adjectives* (*feminine form*)

beautiful	great	small	large	long
dear	good	wide	little	my

3. *Verbs*

I call	I like	I sail	I show
I give	I praise	he (she, it) is	I tell
		I work	

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

also	in	with
and	on	too
but	from	not

READING LESSON

I

Rōma et Ītalia

Rōma in Ītaliā est. Rōma magna et nōta (*famous*) est. Rōma domina Ītaliae est. Via Appia[1] via Rōmāna est. Via Sacra[2] quoque via nōta est. Via Appia longa est sed Via Sacra nōn longa est.

Ītalia pēnīnsula est. Ītalia longa sed nōn lāta terra (*country*) est. Ītalia domina Eurōpae et Asiae et Āfricae est. Glōria (*glory*) Ītaliae aeterna (*eternal*) est. Poēta glōriam Ītaliae laudat.

II

Patria (The Native Land)

Rōma patria poētae est. Poēta patriam amat. Glōria patriae poētam dēlectat. Poēta Ītaliam cantat (*sings of*). Glōriam Ītaliae laudat. Poēta patriae glōriam magnam dat.

[1] The Appian Way. See Collateral Reading, next page.

[2] The Sacred Way led from the Palatine Hill through the Forum (originally a market place) to the Capitol.

Poēta fāmam amat. Patria poētae glōriam magnam dat. Glōria poētae aeterna est. Poēta fāmam aeternam dēsīderat (*longs for*). Fāmam poētae laudō.

Patriam amō. Glōriam patriae dēsīderō (*I long for*) et laudō. Patriae vītam meam dō. Agricola patriam amat. Agricola pecūniam et terram (*land*) quoque amat. Agricola parsimōniā (*thrift*) et dīligentiā [1] pecūniam parat (*prepares, makes*).

VIA APPIA.

The Appian Way runs between the houses in the foreground past the Tomb of Caecilia Metella, the finest of the old sepulchral monuments that used to line this road.

COLLATERAL READING

THE VIA APPIA

The Via Appia, built by Appius Claudius about 300 years B.C., starts from Porta San Sebastiano, the southern gate of

[1] **parsimōniā et dīligentiā**, expressing the means by which something is done, are in the ablative case without any preposition.

THE ALBAN HILLS.

The Appian Way passes over the shoulder of these hills on its way to Naples.

Rome, and leads toward Naples. For the first 65 miles it runs as straight as a taut string, until it reaches the town of Terracina, where it passes under the cliff of Monte Sant' Angelo that overhangs the sea.

The Romans had to chisel off part of the rock to make space for the roadbed. After passing this point, it makes its first bend and then goes to Naples.

BLIND OLD APPIUS CLAUDIUS ENTERING THE SENATE.

When you leave the eternal city on this classic road, you pass at first along a wonderful array of old sepulchral monuments; then you climb up the Alban Hills, extinct volcanoes of prehistoric times, and from there you gradually descend upon a great plain, some 30 miles from Rome, known to history as the Pontine Marshes. . ." (*The Story and the Legends of the Pontine Marshes*, by Don Gelasio Caetani. The National Geographic Magazine, April 1924.)

LESSON VII

FIRST DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION. ESSE

13. The Nominative Plural of the first declension ends in **–ae.** It is formed like the genitive singular.

Note the use of the nominative plural in the second example below:

Toga alba pulchra est.		*A white toga is beautiful.*
subject	descriptive adjective	predicate adjective
Togae albae pulchrae sunt.		*White togas are beautiful.*
subject	descriptive adjective	predicate adjective

14. The Third Person Plural of the present indicative of the first conjugation ends in **–ant.**

Nauta nāvigat.	*The sailor sails.*
Nautae nāvigant.	*The sailors sail.*

Note that **–nt** is the characteristic ending of the third person plural of *all* the tenses of *any* Latin active verb.

15. Present Indicative of the irregular verb **esse**, *to be.*

(Ego)	**sum** in Ītaliā	*I am* in Italy.
(Tū)	**es** in Ītaliā	*You are* in Italy.
(Is, *m.*)	**est** in Ītaliā	*He is* in Italy.
(Nōs)	**sumus** in Ītaliā	*We are* in Italy.
(Vōs)	**estis** in Ītaliā	*You are* in Italy.
(Eī, *m.*)	**sunt** in Ītaliā	*They are* in Italy.

Note (*a*) that the personal pronoun subjects are generally omitted in Latin. They are required only to express emphasis or contrast.

(*b*) In Latin the form **tū** is always used when addressing a single individual, whoever he may be.

NAUTAE NĀVIGANT.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
in′cola, –ae (masc.)	*inhabitant*	colony
rēgī′na, –ae	*queen*	
al′ba, –ae (fem.)	*white*	albino
lae′ta, –ae (fem.)	*joyful*	
tu′a, –ae (fem.)	*your* (thy)	
sem′per	*always*	sempiternal
es′se	*to be*	essence
abes′se	*to be away, to be absent*	absent
ab′sum, etc.	*I am away, I am absent*	
ades′se	*to be present, to be here*	
ad′sum, etc.	*I am present, I am here*	
labō′rant	*they work*	labor
mōn′strant	*they show*	demonstrate
nā′vigant	*they sail*	navigate

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate the following verb forms: **est**, **sunt**, **sumus**, **es**, **adsum**, **abestis**, **ades**, **absunt**. (Model: **est** is the third person singular of the present indicative of the verb **esse**; it is translated by *he, she,* or *it is.*)

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Toga alba et longa est; togae albae et longae sunt.

NAUTA AB ĪNSULĀ MAGNĀ NĀVIGAT.

2. Rēgīna laeta est; rēgīnae laetae sunt.
3. Agricola labōrat; agricolae labōrant.
4. Nauta ab īnsulā magnā nāvigat; nautae ab Ītaliā nāvigant.
5. Nōn in Ītaliā sumus.
6. Nōn incola Ītaliae sum.
7. Laeta puella semper es; laetae puellae semper estis.
8. Incolae Ītaliae cum dīligentiā labōrant.
9. Semper nautae absunt et agricolae adsunt.
10. Fīliae tuae viam nautae mōnstrant.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*) the nouns in **–ae** which are (1) in the nominative plural; (2) in the genitive singular; (3) in the dative singular.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give all the singular cases and the nominative plural of:

rēgīna, **incola**, **silva**, **toga alba**, **puella laeta**, **fīlia cāra tua**.

(*b*) Give the third persons singular and plural of:

amō, laudō, vocō, dō, labōrō, nāvigō, nārrō, mōnstrō.

(*c*) Give the complete present indicative of:

1. Ego in casā sum. 2. Semper absum. 3. Semper adsum.

(*d*) Put in the plural and translate:

1. Silva magna est. 2. Via nōn longa sed lāta est. 3. Agricola nōn nāvigat. 4. Serva labōrat. 5. Domina bona nōn adest.

(*e*) Put the italicized words in the singular and translate:

1. *Rosae pulchrae sunt.* 2. *Rēgīnae* nōn semper *laetae sunt.* 3. *Nautae* vītam agricolae *laudant.* 4. *Puellae parvae* rēgīnam *amant.* 5. *Fīliae meae* semper *adsunt.*

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, omitting subject pronouns and marking all long vowels:

(*a*) We are; I am; he is; they are; you are (thou art); you are; I am present; they are absent.

(*b*) 1. I am not a sailor.
2. I do not like a sailor's life.
3. A sailor is always away.
4. I like your (thy) white toga; white togas are always beautiful.
5. We are not on (in) an island.
6. The inhabitants are present; they are always working.
7. You are (Thou art) a good girl; you are good girls.
8. Queens are not always joyful.
9. The girls of the island are beautiful.

10. The poets are praising the queen of Italy.

11. Farmers always work with diligence.

12. The sailors do not sail from Italy; they sail from a small island.

READING LESSON

Amīcae Cārae Octāviae

SCHOLA RŌMĀNA.

— Quis (*who*) es?

— Octāvia sum.

— Quae (*who*) amīcae tuae sunt?

— Amīcae meae Augusta et Iūlia sunt.

— Estisne[1] discipulae scholae parvae prope (*near*) silvam?

— Sumus.[2]

— Suntne[1] multae (*many*) puellae in scholā?

— Nōn multae sunt; paucae (*few*) sumus.

— Suntne discipulae bonae et laetae?

— Sunt; scholam amant et dīligentiam laudant.

— Adsuntne[1] amīcae cārae tuae in scholā?

— Nōn adsunt; nunc (*now*) in silvā sunt; saltant (*they dance*) et cantant (*they sing*).

— Estne[1] casa tua prope scholam?

— Casa mea ā scholā longē (*a long way*) abest; via ā casā ad (*to*) scholam longa est; viam longam nōn amō.

---

[1] **suntne**? . . . When a question does not begin with an interrogative word, the enclitic **ne** is added to the first word, which is usually the verb (**sum** + **ne** = **sumne**? **est** + **ne** = **estne**? **estisne**? etc.). The accent is always on the syllable before **-ne**.

[2] There are no exact Latin equivalents for *yes* or *no;* the verb is commonly repeated affirmatively or negatively.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Roads

The Roman roads were a real part of the Roman system of government. They were bonds of union. Rome began that system of magnificent roads . . . by building the Via Appia to the new possessions in Campania. This was the work of the censor Appius Claudius — the man who, old and blind, afterward held Rome firm against Pyrrhus, the chivalrous king of Epirus, and haughtily claimed for Rome the dominion of all Italy.

A Scene on the Appian Way.

Later, all Italy, and then the growing empire outside of Italy, was traversed by a network of such roads. Mountains were tunneled; rivers were bridged; marshes were spanned for miles by viaducts of masonry. . . . These roads made the best means of communication the world was to see until the time of railroads. They were so carefully constructed, too, that their remains, in good condition to-day, still "mark the lands where Rome has ruled." They were designed for military purposes; but they also held Italy together socially.

LESSON VIII

FIRST DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION

16. Genitive Plural (-ārum). — The genitive plural of the first declension is formed by replacing the ending **-ae** of the genitive singular by **-ārum**.

Dīligentiam puellae parvae laudō. (genitive case; descriptive adjective)	*I praise the diligence of the little girl.*
Dīligentiam puellārum pulchrārum laudō. (genitive case; descriptive adjective)	*I praise the diligence of the beautiful girls.*

17. Present Infinitive of the First Conjugation (-āre). — Any Latin verb of which the present infinitive ends in **-āre** belongs to the first conjugation. This conjugation has **-ā** for its distinguishing vowel. Its present stem ends in **-ā**. The present stem of any verb is obtained by dropping the final syllable **-re** of the present infinitive.

laudāre, *to praise*	**vocāre**, *to call*
present stem: **laudā-**	present stem: **vocā-**

18. Personal Endings. — The regular personal endings of the active voice are

Singular	Plural
-ō or **-m**	**-mus**
-s	**-tis**
-t	**-nt**

19. The Present Indicative of the first conjugation is formed by adding to the present stem the personal endings given above, **–ō**, not **–m**, being used in the first person singular.

DĪLIGENTIAM PUELLĀRUM PULCHRĀRUM LAUDŌ.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **laudāre**, *to praise*

Poētam lau'dō	*I praise the poet*
Poētam lau'dās	*You praise the poet*
Poētam lau'dat	*He* or *she praises the poet*

Poētam laudā'mus	*We praise the poet*
Poētam laudā'tis	*You praise the poet*
Poētam lau'dant	*They praise the poet*

Note (*a*) that the characteristic vowel **ā** is contracted with the personal ending **ō** in the first person singular (**laudā-ō** contracted into **laudō**).

(*b*) The same vowel **ā** becomes short before the personal endings **–t** (third person singular) and **–nt** (third person plural).

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
glō'ria, –ae	*glory*	glorious
ī'ra, –ae	*anger*	ire, irascible
lin'gua, –ae	*language*	linguist
um'bra, –ae	*shade*	umbrella
fī'da, –ae (fem.)	*faithful*	fidelity
grā'ta, –ae (fem.)	*pleasant*	grace, gratitude
num'quam	*never*	
lau'dō, –ā're	*praise*	laud, laudable
pā'cō, –ā're	*calm, subdue*	pacify, pacific

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the present infinitive and the present stem of each of the following verb forms: **laudat, vocāmus, mōnstrās, datis,**[1] **labōrāmus, nāvigō, pācās**; identify and translate them; make every form negative (1) with **nōn**; (2) with **numquam**, and translate.

[1] The verb **dare**, *to give*, has short **a** in the present stem, except in the form **dās**, the imperative **dā**, and the participle **dāns**.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Glōria poētae magna est; glōria poētārum magna est.
2. Vīta servae nōn grāta est; vīta servārum nōn grāta est.
3. Octāvia dīligentiam fīliae tuae laudat; Octāvia dīligentiam fīliārum tuārum laudat.
4. Īram nautae pācāmus; īram nautārum pācāmus.

PORTA SAN SEBASTIANO.
This is the gate by which the Appian Way enters Rome.

5. Fīliae rēgīnārum nōn semper lactae sunt.
6. Umbra silvārum magnārum grāta est.
7. Linguam incolārum nōn amō.
8. Dīligentiam agricolārum laudātis.
9. Semper abes; numquam labōrās.
10. Dīligentia servārum fīdārum meārum magna est.

(*c*) Reread (*b*) and point out all the genitives singular and plural, explaining each case.

(*d*) Give (1) the nominative plural; (2) the genitives singular and plural of:

rosa, pictūra pulchra, via longa, amīca fīda, toga alba.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give the present indicative of:

1. Casam mōnstrāre. 2. Numquam labōrāre. 3. Semper nāvigāre.

(*b*) Review. Of the italicized words below make the plural ones singular, and vice versa:

1. Glōriam *poētae laudāmus.* 2. Īram *nautārum pācās.* 3. Incolae *īnsulae* absunt. 4. Umbram *silvae amō.* 5. *Fīliae rēgīnārum* numquam *labōrant.*

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I call, we are giving, she likes, they do praise, you calm, we love, he does not sail, I never work, you (singular) show, I tell, they do not tell.

(*b*) 1. Your (thy) daughter is praising the glory and the fame of the poets.

2. I quiet the anger of the inhabitants.

3. You do not praise the diligence of the good pupils.

4. The anger of your (thy) slaves is great.

5. You (singular) love my daughter; she is small but faithful.

6. The cottages of my friends are large but not beautiful.

7. The faithful slave shows the good mistress the way.

8. We like the pleasant shade of the forests.

9. They call your (thy) friend but she is away.

10. The language of the sailors is not pleasant.

READING LESSON

Viae Rōmānae

Viae Rōmānae nōtae sunt; lātae sunt. Fāma viārum lātārum magna est. Via Appia in Ītaliā est. Longa et pulchra est, sed in Viā Appiā nūlla (*no*) umbra est.[1] Umbra silvārum magnārum grāta est. Umbram grātam amāmus. Agricolae umbram silvārum amant. Fāma Viae Appiae magna est.

Rōma domina Ītaliae est. Rōma Ītaliam pācat. Glōria Rōmae magna est. Rōmam et Ītaliam laudāmus. Laudō quoque Viam Appiam.

Domina Rōmāna.

This shows the interior of a Roman house of a later period than that described in the following text.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Houses (Early Period to 200 B.C.)

The houses of the early Romans were like those of the primitive people all about the Mediterranean, — small huts,

[1] *est* and *sunt* also mean *there is* and *there are*.

often only one room, with no chimney or window. The open door and an opening in the peaked roof let out the smoke from the hearth fire, and let in the light; and a slight cavity directly below the roof-opening received the rain.

During the period from 367 to 200 B.C., the Roman house added rooms on sides and rear, and openings for windows; but it was still exceedingly simple, like the life within. A plain table, wooden couches, a few stools, and simple cooking utensils comprised the furniture. Artificial warmth and light was secured by " braziers " and lamps like those of the Greeks.

LESSON IX

FIRST DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

20. Accusative Plural of the First Declension (**–ās**). — It is formed by replacing the ending **–ae** of the genitive singular by **–ās**.

PUELLĀS PULCHRĀS VIDEŌ.

This picture shows Roman girls taking part in a spring festival.

Note the difference of endings in the accusative singular and the accusative plural:

Puellam pulchram videō. — *I see a beautiful girl.*

direct object — descriptive adjective

Puellās pulchrās videō. — *I see (some) beautiful girls.*

direct object — descriptive adjective

21. Present Infinitive of the Second Conjugation (**–ēre**). — Any verb of which the present infinitive ends in **–ēre** belongs to the second conjugation. The present stem ends in **–ē**.

vidēre, *to see*	**monēre**, *to warn*
present stem: **vidē–**	present stem: **monē–**

22. The Present Indicative of the Second Conjugation is formed, like the present of the first conjugation, by adding to the present stem the regular personal endings given in § 18.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **monēre**, *to warn*

Nautās mo′neō	*I warn the sailors*
Nautās mo′nēs	*You warn the sailors*
Nautās mo′net	*He, she,* or *it warns the sailors*
Nautās monē′mus	*We warn the sailors*
Nautās monē′tis	*You warn the sailors*
Nautās mo′nent	*They warn the sailors*

Note (*a*) that the distinguishing vowel of the second conjugation is **–ē**;

(*b*) The **ē** of the stem is not contracted with the personal ending **ō** of the first person singular;

(*c*) The quantity of this vowel **e** corresponds to that of **a** in the first conjugation, see § 19, Note (*b*).

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
pa′tria, –ae	*native land*	patriot
stel′la, –ae	*star*	stellar, constellation
victō′ria, –ae	*victory*	victorious
rēc′ta, –ae (fem.)	*straight, right*	rectify, direct

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
dē′beō, –ē′re	*owe; must, ought*	debt, debit
dē′leō, –ē′re	*destroy*	delete
ha′beō, –ē′re	*have*	habit
mo′neō, –ē′re	*warn*	admonish, monitor
ti′meō, –ē′re	*fear*	timid
vi′deō, –ē′re	*see*	provide, divide, vision
sae′pe	*often*	

Note that **dēbeō**, meaning *ought, must,* is followed by the infinitive.

Dēbētis patriam amāre. *You ought to love (your) native land.*

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the present stem of the verbs in the vocabulary; divide all the words in the vocabulary into syllables, indicating the accented one.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

sum, habēmus, vocat, vident, timēs, moneō, laudāre dēbet, pecūniam dēbent, timētis, vidēmus, dēlet.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Rēgīna fīliam pulchram habet; rēgīna fīliās pulchrās habet.
2. Glōriam patriae tuae laudās; victōriās patriae tuae laudās.
3. Domina puellam parvam pācat; domina puellās parvās pācat.
4. Nautae stellam saepe vident; nautae stellās saepe vident.

STELLAE NAUTĀS MONENT.

5. Incolās īnsulārum nōn vidēmus.
6. Nautae casās incolārum īnsulae dēlent.
7. Discipulās bonās saepe laudāre dēbētis.
8. Stellae nautās monent; viās rēctās mōnstrant.
9. Servae fīdae dominās nōn timent.

(*d*) Explain every case in sentences 1, 2, 3, and 4 of (*c*), and point out the accusatives in the other sentences.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give (1) the nominative plural; (2) the genitives singular and plural; (3) the accusatives singular and plural of:

stella, silva parva, rēgīna bona, victōria magna, toga longa.

(*b*) Give the present indicative of:

1. Nautās vocāre. 2. Īnsulās parvās vidēre.

(*c*) Review. Replace the singular by the plural and vice versa:

1. Puellae rosās amant. 2. Fīlias meās moneō. 3. Stellam nōn mōnstrō. 4. Serva fīda dominam nōn timet. 5. Nautae īnsulās parvās nōn vident. 6. Fābulam nārrō. 7. Dominās timēre nōn dēbēmus.

(*d*) Review. Add the proper endings to the verbs:

1. Puellae īram meam tim—. 2. Nautae stellās vid—. 3. Rēgīna fīliās tuās voc— et mōnstr—. 4. Ego vītam agricolārum am— et laud—. 5. Tū togās pulchrās hab—. 6. Nōs umbram silvae am—.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I warn, you have, he does not fear, they owe money, I ought not to sail, we do not have, she does not warn, you (singular) do fear, he sees.

(*b*) 1. I often praise good pupils.

2. You (singular) do not warn the inhabitants.

3. I owe my [1] life to my [1] native country.

4. We show the beautiful roses to the little girl.

5. You see the small cottages of the island.

[1] The possessive adjective is omitted when the ownership is not doubtful.

6. The queen often tells long stories.
7. We ought to destroy Rome.
8. Sailors often see the beautiful stars.
9. I fear the inhabitants of the forests.
10. You have small but beautiful cottages.
11. Octavia loves my dear friends.
12. Poets always praise the great victories of Rome.

READING LESSON

Muscae et Lucerna (The Flies and the Lamp)

Casam agricolae intrō (intrāre, *to enter*) et multās (*many*) muscās videō. Muscās nōn amō; cōpia (*abundance*) muscārum in casā nōn grāta est. Muscae ālās (*wing*) habent; ālās parvās habent. Lucernam in mēnsā (*table*) videō. Muscās stultās (*foolish*) videō; flammās (*flame*) lucernae circumvolant (*fly around*). Flammās nōn timent. Flammae lucernae ālās muscārum dēlent. Muscae praeda (*prey*) flammārum et victimae (*victim*) stultitiae (*foolishness*) sunt. Dēbēmusne[1] miseriam (*misery*) muscārum stultārum dolēre (*deplore, be sorry for*)? Meretne (merēre, *to deserve*) stultitia misericordiam (*pity*)?

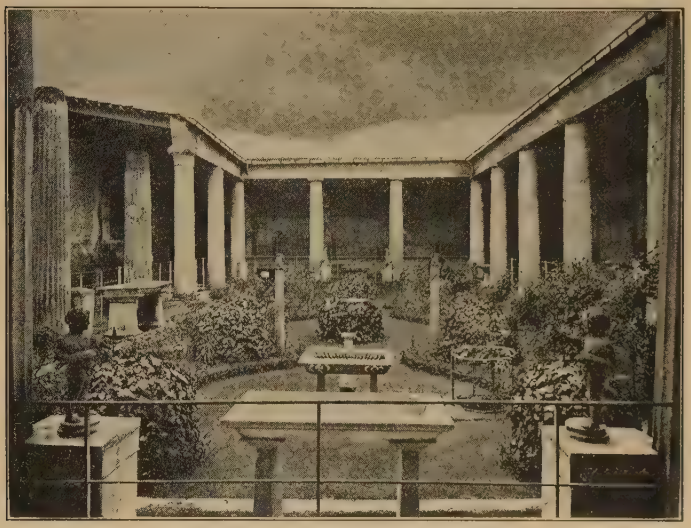
COLLATERAL READING

Roman Houses after the Punic Wars (146–49 B.C.)

The houses of the wealthy men had come to imitate the Greek type. The original "house" had become a central hall (atrium) with rooms on the sides and rear. The atrium now became a *front* hall, where the master of the house received his guests. It was shut off from the street by a vestibule and a porter's room. Its central court, open to the sky, still admitted light and air, and it now held a marble basin to

[1] Why is *ne* added to *Dēbēmus?*

catch the rain. . . . In the rear was a second court (peristyle) about which, as well as in the second story, were many rooms for the women and for household work.



A Roman House.

This shows the central court of the famous House of the Vettii at Pompeii, probably the best-known and best-preserved house of antiquity.

Each house had its kitchens, and several dining rooms, large and small, where stood tables, each surrounded on three sides by luxurious couches, in place of old-fashioned hard benches. . . . Each fashionable house, too, had its bathrooms, one or more, and its library.

LESSON X

FIRST DECLENSION

23. Dative and Ablative Plural (**–īs**). — The dative and ablative plural of the first declension are alike and are formed by replacing the ending **–ae** of the genitive singular by **–īs**.

Puellīs parvīs rosās dō. indirect object descriptive adjective	*I give roses to the little girls.*
Hastīs pugnant. ablative of means	*They fight with (by means of) spears.*

Note that **means** or **instrument** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. So do not confuse *with* denoting **accompaniment** and translated by *cum*, and *with* denoting **means** or **instrument** and omitted in Latin.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
convī′va, **–ae** (masc.)	*guest*	convivial
cō′pia, **–ae**	*abundance*	copious, cornucopia
cō′piae, **–ārum** (plur.)	*troops*	
has′ta, **–ae**	*spear*	hastate (leaf)
mul′tae, **–ārum** (fem. plur.)	*many*	multitude
nos′tra, **–ae** (fem.)	*our*	nostrum
ves′tra, **–ae** (fem.)	*your*	
ē or **ex**[1]	*from*	eject, extract
can′tō, **–ā′re**	*sing (of)*	cantor, canticle
mo′veō, **–ē′re**	*move*	movable
pug′nō, **–ā′re**	*fight*	pugnacious

[1] **Ex** must be used before vowels or *h*; either form may be used before consonants.

HASTĪS PUGNANT.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the present stem of: **nārrāre**, **timēre**, **cantāre**, **movēre**, **dare**, **dēbēre**, and separate all the words below into syllables, indicating the syllable which must be accented.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

adsum, **amātis**, **monent**, **vidēmus**, **vocant**, **moveō**, **dat**, **pugnāmus**, **absunt**, **habent**.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Rēgīna puellae rosam dat; rēgīna bonīs puellīs rosās pulchrās dat.

CONVĪVAE.

The ancient Romans had no forks.

2. Cum convīvā cantāre dēbēs; cum convīvīs cantāre dēbēs.

3. Nautae stellās vident; stellae nautīs viam rēctam mōnstrant.

4. Cōpia rosārum in casīs grāta est.

5. Ē silvīs cōpiās nostrās movēmus.

6. Fīliae vestrae multās[1] et bonās amīcās habent.

7. Silva magna agricolīs umbram dat.

8. Discipulīs bonīs multās fābulās nārrō.

9. Incolae īnsulārum hastīs longīs pugnant.

10. Nautae cum incolīs īnsulārum pugnāre dēbent.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*) all the datives and ablatives, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline (1) in the singular: **patria nostra**, **hasta mea**; (2) in the plural: **victōriae vestrae**, **multae īnsulae.**

(*b*) Give the present indicative of:

1. In silvā nōn esse. 2. Cōpiās movēre. 3. Hastā longā pugnāre.

---

[1] Adjectives of quantity usually precede the noun they modify.

(*c*) Add first the proper singular ending; then the proper plural ending:

1. Serva puell— (indirect object) rosās dat. 2. Agricol— (indirect object) pecūniam damus. 3. Cum naut— nāvigāre dēbēmus. 4. Octāvia discipul— (indirect object) fābulam nārrat. 5. Ab īnsul— magn— nāvigant. 6. Ē silv— cōpiās moveō.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I am, you have, he likes, you (singular) do not fear, we move, you give, they ought not, she is away, you (singular) are fighting, I do not show, we warn, you do not call.

(*b*) 1. The mistress gives money to the slave; she gives money to the slaves.

2. We ought to sing with the guest; you ought to sing with the guests.

3. Sailors do not fight with spears.

4. The farmer gives many roses to our dear friends.

5. I move my troops from the forests.

6. You (singular) tell many stories to your pupils.

7. The inhabitants of the island show the sailors the right way.

8. You ought to fight with the inhabitants, sail with the sailors, and work with the farmers.

READING LESSON

Ītalia Antīqua (Ancient Italy)

Ītalia antīqua silvās magnās habet. Multae ferae (*wild beast*) in silvīs magnīs Ītaliae antīquae sunt. Incolae ferās silvārum nōn timent; cum ferīs saepe pugnant. Incolae hastās et sagittās (*arrow*) habent; hastīs et sagittīs pugnant et multās ferās silvārum necant (*kill*).

Multae aquilae (*eagle*) et columbae (*dove*) quoque in silvīs sunt. Columbae timidae aquilās timent; cum aquilīs avidīs (*greedy*) nōn pugnant; aquilae multās columbās necant.

AQUILAE.

Ītalia terra (*land*) agricolārum est; nautārum quoque est terra. Agricolae et nautae Ītaliae patriam amant.

Poētae quoque patriam amant. Poētae Ītaliae dē (*about*) victōriīs magnīs patriae semper cantant.

Pīrātae (*pirate*) in nāviculīs (*boat*) ad ōrās (*sea-coast*) nāvigant; incolae cum pīrātīs saepe pugnant.

COLLATERAL READING

Land and Peoples of Italy

In ancient times the Po valley was always considered part of Gaul. It was called Cisalpine Gaul or Gaul this side the Alps. The name Italy belonged only to the true peninsula with the Apennine range for its backbone.

Etruscan Tombs near Orvieto.

The center of the peninsula was the home of the Italians who were finally to give their language and law to the whole land. The western *Italians* were lowlanders, and were called Latins. One of their cities was Rome, on the Tiber. . . . The eastern and larger section of Italians were highlanders (Sabines, Samnites, Volscians). The more important of the other races were the *Greeks* in the south, the savage *Gauls*

of the Po valley, and the *Etruscans* in Etruria across the Tiber from the Latins. The Etruscans were a mysterious people — " the standing riddle of history." They were the first civilized race in Italy, long before the Greek settlements began in the south.

LESSON XI

REVIEW LESSON

24. The First Declension. — Below is the model for both numbers of the first declension.

PICTŪRA PULCHRA.

Pictūra pulchra, *a beautiful picture*
BASE: **pictūr– pulchr–**

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
Nom.:	**pictūra pulchra**, *the beautiful picture*	**–a**
Gen.:	**pictūrae pulchrae**, *of the beautiful picture*	**–ae**
Dat.:	**pictūrae pulchrae**, *to the beautiful picture*	**–ae**
Acc.:	**pictūram pulchram**, *the beautiful picture*	**–am**
Abl.:	**pictūrā pulchrā**, *with, by, from,* etc., *the beautiful picture*	**–ā**

	Plural	Endings
Nom.:	**pictūrae pulchrae**, *the beautiful pictures*	**–ae**
Gen.:	**pictūrārum pulchrārum**, *of the beautiful pictures*	**–ārum**
Dat.:	**pictūrīs pulchrīs**, *to the beautiful pictures*	**–īs**
Acc.:	**pictūrās pulchrās**, *the beautiful pictures*	**–ās**
Abl.:	**pictūrīs pulchrīs**, *with, by, from,* etc., *the beautiful pictures*	**–īs**

25. Present Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations.

First Conjugation	Second Conjugation
laudāre, *to praise*	**monēre**, *to warn*
Characteristic vowel: **ā**	Characteristic vowel: **ē**
Present stem: **laudā**	Present stem: **monē**

Person	Singular		*Common Personal Endings*
1st	**laudō**	**moneō**	**–ō**
2d	**laudās**	**monēs**	**–s**
3d	**laudat**	**monet**	**–t**
	Plural		
1st	**laudāmus**	**monēmus**	**–mus**
2d	**laudātis**	**monētis**	**–tis**
3d	**laudant**	**monent**	**–nt**

26. Present Indicative of *esse*, *to be*.

	Singular		Plural	
Person		*Endings*		*Endings*
1st	**sum**	**–m**	**sumus**	**–mus**
2d	**es**	**–s**	**estis**	**–tis**
3d	**est**	**–t**	**sunt**	**–nt**

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Translate into English the following words:

1. *Nouns*

convīva	glōria	īra	rēgīna
cōpia	hasta	lingua	stella
cōpiae	incola	patria	umbra
	victōria		

2. *Adjectives* (*feminine form*)

alba	grāta	multae	tua
fīda	laeta	nostra	vestra

3. *Verbs*

abesse	dēbēre	habēre	pācāre
adesse	dēlēre	monēre	pugnāre
cantāre	esse	movēre	timēre
	vidēre		

4. *All Other Parts of Speech*

ē or ex	numquam	saepe	semper

(*b*) Tell which syllable must be accented in each of the words in (*a*). Explain why.

(*c*) Which verbs in (*a*) 3 belong to the first conjugation; which to the second? How can you tell?

(*d*) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

1. What is the characteristic vowel of the first declension?

2. What cases does the ending **–ae** indicate?

3. What cases do the endings **–ārum**, **–ās**, **–īs** indicate? By what case is *means* or *instrument* expressed? Is that case used with or without a preposition?

4. What is the ending of the present infinitive of any verb of the first conjugation; of the second?

5. What do you do to the present infinitive of the first conjugation to get the present stem; to the present infinitive of the second conjugation?

6. What is the characteristic vowel of the present indicative (*a*) of the first conjugation; (*b*) of the second?

7. What are the personal endings of the present indicative of any verb in the active voice?

8. What vowel disappears in the first person singular of the present indicative of the first conjugation?

9. Does the characteristic vowel **ē** of the second conjugation disappear in the first person singular of the present indicative?

10. In what persons do the characteristic vowels **ā** of the first conjugation and **ē** of the second become short?

11. What is the verb whose first person singular of the present indicative does not end in **-ō**?

12. Why are the personal pronoun subjects generally omitted in Latin?

13. When are they required?

14. What is the personal pronoun subject used when addressing a single individual?

15. (*a*) What Latin words are suggested by the following English words: pugnacious, convivial, caress, debtor, irascible, admonition, umbrage, stellar, movable, patriotic, habit, timid, copious? (*b*) Give the meaning of each English word.

II. **Written.**

(*a*) Decline (1) in the singular: **lingua nostra**; (2) in the plural: **multae stellae**; (3) in both numbers: **via lāta**.

(*b*) Give the present indicative of:

1. In umbrā esse. 2. Fābulās nārrāre. 3. Glōriam magnam habēre.

(*c*) Translate the following words:

1. *Nouns*

abundance	glory	language	spear
anger	guest	queen	star
(native) country	inhabitant	shade	troops
	victory		

2. *Adjectives* (*feminine form*)

faithful	many	pleasant	your (plur.)
joyful	our	your (singular)	white

3. *Verbs*

to be	to destroy	to have	to owe
to be away	to fear	to move	to quiet
to be present	to fight	ought	to see
to calm	to warn		to sing (of)

4. *All Other Parts of Speech*

always	from	never	often

LESSON XII

REVIEW

READING LESSON

Ītalia

— Quam (*what*) terram vidētis?
— Ītaliam vidēmus.
— Ubi (*where*) Ītaliam vidētis?
— Ītaliam in tabulā (*map*) vidēmus.
— Estne Ītalia īnsula?
— Nōn est. Pēnīnsula Ītalia est.
— Quam fōrmam (*shape*) Ītalia habet?
— Ītalia longa sed nōn lāta terra est.
— Suntne [1] silvae in Ītaliā?
— Magnae silvae sunt.
— Suntne bēstiae (*beasts*) in silvīs Ītaliae?
— Multae ferae in silvīs sunt.
— Quās (*what*) bēstiās incolae nōn timent?
— Ferās silvārum nōn timent.
— Quid (*what*) habent?
— Hastās et sagittās (*arrow*) habent.
— Quōmodo (*how*) pugnant?
— Hastīs et sagittīs pugnant.
— Quās bēstiās necant (*kill*)?
— Multās ferās silvārum necant.

[1] See footnote 1, page 40.

— Estne Ītalia terra agricolārum?
— Est. Nautārum quoque terra est.
— Labōrantne agricolae Ītaliae cum dīligentiā?
— Magnā dīligentiā labōrant.
— Estne parsimōnia agricolārum Ītaliae magna?
— Est. Agricolae Ītaliae pecūniam amant.
— Patriamne quoque incolae Ītaliae amant?
— Patriam quoque amant.
— Habetne Ītalia puellās pulchrās?
— Habet. Laetae quoque puellae Ītaliae sunt.
— Habetne Ītalia poētās?
— Habet.
— Quam terram poētae amant et laudant?
— Ītaliam semper amant et laudant.

EXERCISES

I. Dictation.

Teachers may use the reading lesson or a part of it as a dictation.

II. Oral.

One of the pupils reads the questions, and his classmates, at the call of their names by the teacher, answer them fully.

III. Written.

Form two questions with

(*a*) **quid** (*what?* interrogative pronoun, neuter singular nominative or accusative);

(*b*) **quam** (*what?* interrogative adjective, accusative feminine singular);

(*c*) **quās** (*what?* interrogative adjective, accusative feminine plural);

(*d*) **ubi** (*where?*);

(*e*) **quōmodo** (*how?*).

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Literature

Literature played a small part in Roman life until just before the Empire. This is the list of the most important names for the four periods down to the Emperor Marcus Aurelius (161–180 A.D.).

Marcus Aurelius.

1. The "Age of Cicero" gave us *Lucretius*, perhaps the most sublime of all Latin poets, and *Caesar's* concise graphic historical narrative. *Cicero* himself remains the foremost orator of Rome and the chief maker of the graceful Latin prose essay.

2. For the glorious "Augustan Age," only a few of the many important writers can be mentioned: the great poets *Horace* and *Vergil*, and the historians *Livy*, *Dionysius*, and *Strabo*. The last two authors wrote in Greek.

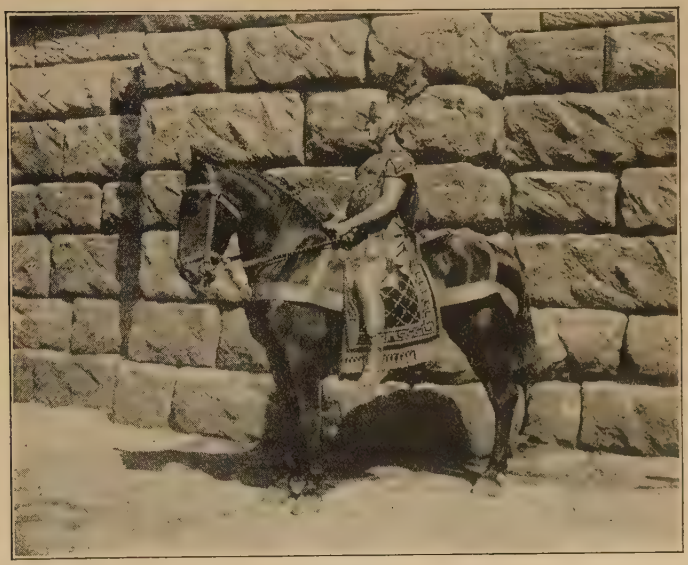
3. Among the great writers of the second half of the first century (after the Augustan age) are the Jewish historian *Josephus*, the scientist *Pliny the Elder*, the Stoic philosophers *Epictetus* and *Seneca*.

4. For the second century, we have the *Letters* of *Pliny the Younger*, the satirical poetry of *Juvenal*, the *Thoughts of Marcus Aurelius* (in Greek), the histories and biographies (in Greek) of *Appian*, of *Arrian*, of *Plutarch*, and (in Latin) of *Tacitus*.

LESSON XIII

SECOND DECLENSION. PAST OF *ESSE*

27. The Nominative Singular Masculine of the Second Declension ends either in **–us** or in **–er.**



EQUUS NIGER PULCHER EST.

Note the agreement of the adjectives in the following sentences:

Puer parvus est. *The boy is small.*

subject predicate adjective

Equus niger pulcher est. *The black horse is beautiful.*

subject descriptive adjective predicate adjective

28. Agreement of Adjectives. — Be sure to remember to use a masculine adjective, ending in **–us** or **–er**, with any masculine noun, even when it ends in **–a**.

Agricola bonus est.	*The farmer is good.*
Nauta pulcher est.	*The sailor is handsome.*

29. Appositives. — An appositive[1] is in the same case as the noun to which it refers and generally follows it.

Cassius, agricola bonus, labōrat.	*Cassius, the good farmer, is working.*

30. Past of *esse*, *to be*. — Note that the endings are the personal endings given in § 18, except that **–m**, not **–ō**, is used in the first person singular.

SINGULAR

Masculine Subject	*Feminine Subject*
(I was a small boy, etc.)	(I was a small girl, etc.)
puer parvus e′ram	**puella parva e′ram**
puer parvus e′rās	**puella parva e′rās**
puer parvus e′rat	**puella parva e′rat**

PLURAL

in casā erā′mus	we were in the cottage
in casā erā′tis	you were in the cottage
in casā e′rant	they were in the cottage

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
Cas′sius	*Cassius* (a proper name)	
e′quus	*horse*	equine
fī′lius	*son*	filial

[1] An appositive is a noun which explains something about a preceding noun.

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
pu'er	*boy*	puerile
Vergi'lius	*Vergil*	Vergilian
bo'nus (m.), **bo'na** (f.) [1]	*good*	bonus
lae'tus (m.), **lae'ta** (f.)	*joyful*	
mag'nus (m.), **mag'na** (f.)	*large, great*	magnify
me'us (m.), **me'a** (f.)	*my*	
ni'ger (m.), **ni'gra** (f.)	*black, dark*	negro
nō'tus (m.), **nō'ta** (f.)	*well known, famous*	noted
pul'cher (m.), **pul'chra** (f.)	*beautiful, handsome*	pulchritude

EXERCISES

I. **Oral.**

(*a*) Explain the agreement of every adjective:

equus niger, umbra nigra, agricola bonus, rēgīna bona, poēta nōtus, īnsula nōta, puer pulcher, puella pulchra, fīlius meus, fīlia mea, nauta laetus, serva laeta.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Puer bonus est.
2. Fīlius bonus eram.
3. Vergilius poēta magnus et nōtus erat.
4. Octāvia, fīlia mea, nōn laeta erat.
5. Cassius, agricola bonus, cum dīligentiā labōrat.
6. Equus niger est; equus niger pulcher est.
7. Nauta es, semper abes; nautae estis, semper abestis.
8. Nauta erās, semper aberās; nautae erātis, semper aberātis.
9. Aderam ego, sed Cassius, fīlius meus, nōn aderat.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*), (1) the subjects; (2) the predicate nouns and adjectives; (3) the descriptive adjectives; (4) the appositive nouns.

[1] Henceforth the feminine form of each adjective will follow the masculine form. They must be learned together.

(*d*) Give the masculine form of the following adjectives (*a*) on the model of **bona, bonus**:

longa, lāta, laeta, magna, cāra, grāta, mea, tua, rēcta, fīda;

(*b*) on the model of **pulchra, pulcher**:

Nostra, vestra, nigra.

II. **Oral and Written.**

(*a*) Replace the dashes by fitting nouns:

1. —— pulcher est. 2. —— nōtus erat. 3. —— niger est. 4. —— bonus erat.

(*b*) Complete each sentence by supplying the proper adjective:

1. Equus —— erat. 2. Puella —— est. 3. Nauta —— erat. 4. Puer nōn —— erat. 5. Via —— est. 6. Vergilius poēta —— erat.

(*c*) Write the present and past indicative of:

1. In Ītaliā esse. 2. Saepe abesse. 3. Numquam adesse.

(*d*) Review. Replace (1) the singular by the plural and vice versa; (2) the present by the past:

1. Adsum. 2. Nōn in Ītaliā es. 3. In silvā sumus. 4. Puella laeta est. 5. Semper adestis. 6. Fīliae meae pulchrae sunt.

III. **Written.**

Write in Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I am, I was, she was not, we are, you were not, they were, he was away, you (sing.) were not present, I was present, we were absent.

(*b*) 1. Cassius, my son, is a little boy.
2. He is good and joyful.
3. You[1] were good, too.
4. I was good, too, and joyful.
5. The poet Vergil was good.
6. He was famous, too.
7. My horse was black and small, but he was not beautiful.
8. You were always away.
9. We were present, but the poet's daughters were absent.
10. They are never present.

READING LESSON

Galba et Mārcus (Galba and Marcus)

Puer parvus sum. Galba amīcus (*friend*, m.) fīdus meus est. Puer bonus est. Mārcus amīcus noster est. Puer quoque parvus est.

Discipulus (*pupil*, m.) bonus sum. Galba, amīcus meus, discipulus quoque bonus est. Scholam amāmus; cum dīligentiā labōrāmus. Mārcus stultus (*foolish*) est; scholam nōn amat; in scholā nōn laetus est; numquam labōrat; discipulus malus (*bad*) est.

Fīlius agricolae sum. Galba quoque fīlius agricolae est. Mārcus, amīcus noster, fīlius nautae est. Equus parvus Galbae niger est; pulcher quoque est. Equus meus nōn niger, sed albus est; pulcher quoque est.

COLLATERAL READING

The Roman Navy

The first Punic or Carthaginian war lasted twenty-three years (264–241 B.C.). Carthage, an ancient Phoenician colony on the finest harbor in North Africa, was mistress of an

[1] Use *Tū* in sentence 3 and *Ego* in sentence 4. Why?

empire huge but scattered and heterogeneous. Rome was the head of a small but compact nationality. Each state ruled about 5,000,000 people. . . .

At first the Carthaginians were undisputed masters of the sea. But the Romans, with sagacity and boldness, built their first war fleet and soon met the ancient Queen of the Seas on her own element. . . .

A Roman Ship.

Here the three banks of oars are plainly seen. For an interior view, compare this with the picture on page 10.

Terrible reverses befell inexperienced Rome upon the sea. In quick succession she lost four great fleets with large armies on board. . . . One sixth of her citizens had perished; the treasury was empty; and, in despair, the Senate was about to abandon the effort to secure the sea. In this crisis Rome was saved by the public spirit of her private citizens. *Lavish loans built and fitted out two hundred vessels*, and this huge fleet won an overwhelming victory, which closed the war.

LESSON XIV

SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION

31. Genitive Singular of the Second Declension (-ī). — Nouns and adjectives ending in **-us** form the genitive singular by replacing **-us** by **-ī**; those ending in **-er** by adding **ī**.

DOMINUS EQUĪ ALBĪ SUM.

Dīligentiam puerī parvī laudō. *I praise the little boy's diligence.*

genitive case — descriptive adjective

Dominus equī albī sum. *I am the master of the white horse.*

genitive case — descriptive adjective

Note that all words in **–ius** like **Vergilius**, **fīlius**, etc., have the genitive singular in **–ī** instead of **–iī**. The accent rests on the penult: **Vergi′lī**.

Glōria Vergi′lī, poētae nōtī, magna est.
genitive case — appositive — descriptive adjective

The glory of Vergil, the famous poet, is great.

32. Past of the First Conjugation (–ābam). — The past tense is formed by adding to the present stem (**laudāre**, present stem: **laudā–**) the tense sign **–bā–** and the usual personal endings, **–m**, not **–ō**, being used in the first person singular.

PAST INDICATIVE OF **laudāre**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
(I praised, I was praising, I did praise the queen, etc.)	
rēgīnam laudā′bam	**rēgīnam laudābā′mus**
rēgīnam laudā′bās	**rēgīnam laudābā′tis**
rēgīnam laudā′bat	**rēgīnam laudā′bant**

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
a′ger, a′grī [1]	*field*	agriculture
amī′cus, –ī	*friend* (masc.)	amicable
disci′pulus, –ī	*pupil* (masc.)	discipline
do′minus, –ī	*master, owner*	domination
lēgā′tus, –ī	*lieutenant, ambassador*	legate, delegate
mun′dus, –ī	*world*	mundane
po′pulus, –ī	*people*	popular
ser′vus, –ī	*slave* (masc.)	servile
mi′ser, mi′sera [1]	*wretched, unhappy*	misery, miserable

[1] Nouns and adjectives in this book ending in **-er** lose the **e** when inflected, except **puer, miser**. So, the base of **ager** is **agr-**, but that of **puer** is **puer-**.

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
pi'ger, pi'gra	*lazy*	
Rōmā'nus, –a	*Roman*	Romanism
sa'cer, sa'cra	*sacred*	sacrament
tum	*then*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Indicate (1) the base of:

amīcus, dominus, mundus, servus, populus, Rōmānus, puer, miser, niger, ager, pulcher, sacer, piger;

(2) the present stem of:

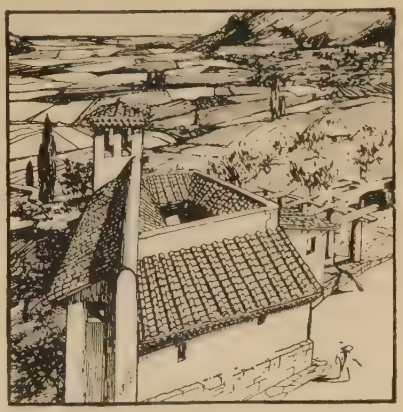
amāre, labōrāre, nāvigāre, pācāre, vocāre, dare, cantāre, mōnstrāre, pugnāre, nārrāre.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

laudō, laudābam, amās, amābās, pācat, pācābat, vocāmus, vocābāmus, datis, dabātis, pugnant, pugnābant.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Vīta servī nōn sacra est.
2. Tum Rōma domina mundī erat.
3. Cassius, lēgātus, amīcus Vergilī, poētae nōtī, erat.
4. Īram dominī pācābās.
5. Dīligentiam servī bonī laudābātis.
6. Dominus agrī parvī agricola piger est.



Agrī Rōmānī.

7. Casam agricolae miserī vidēmus.
8. Fīlius Cassī lēgātī discipulus bonus erat.
9. Puer parvus dominus equī nigrī est.
10. Vergilius, poēta nōtus, multās victōriās populī Rōmānī cantābat.

(*d*) Point out every genitive in (*c*), and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give the genitive singular of:

dominus bonus, populus Rōmānus, ager parvus, amīcus fīdus, puella pulchra, Vergilius poēta, nauta piger, agricola laetus, Cassius lēgātus, puer miser.

(*b*) Give the present and past of:

1. Glōriam amāre. 2. Īram populī Rōmānī pācāre.

(*c*) Review. Add the proper endings:

1. Casa amīc— (genitive case) parva est. 2. Servus īram domin— (genitive case) pācābat. 3. Vergilius amīcus Cassi— (genitive case) lēgāt— (appositive) erat.

(*d*) Review. Replace the dashes by (1) the present; (2) the past of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Abesse:* Fīlia amīcī meī ——.
2. *Amāre:* Populus Rōmānus glōriam ——.
3. *Nāvigāre:* Tū semper ——.
4. *Laudāre:* Vōs dīligentiam servī fīdī ——.
5. *Cantāre:* Poētae Ītaliam semper ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I like, I did not like, you (singular) were not showing, we called, she was singing, you quieted, they used to give, you were fighting.

(*b*) 1. The master's anger is great.

2. My son's horse was not black.

3. Your friend's daughters were always singing.

4. The field of the wretched farmer is small.

5. Then the life of a slave was not sacred.

6. The good poet was the friend of Cassius, the famous ambassador.

7. He was singing (of) the victories of Rome, mistress of the world.

8. We showed the cottage of the great Roman poet Vergil.

9. You (singular) were lazy; you were never working.

10. I was praising the glory of the Roman people.

READING LESSON

Plautus, Servus Bonus (The Good Slave Plautus) [1]

Cassius lēgātus nōtus populī Rōmānī erat. Plautus servus Cassī erat. Plautus bonus servus, sed Cassius malus (*bad*) dominus erat.

Ager dominī malī magnus erat. Plautus semper labōrābat. Nōn piger erat. Dominus Plautī dīligentiam servī fīdī numquam laudābat. Plautus miser erat. Miseria servī impigrī (impiger, *industrious*) magna erat. Vīta Plautī, bonī servi, nōn grāta erat.

Mārcus fīlius dominī Plautī erat. Puer bonus erat. Plautus amīcus fīdus puerī bonī erat. Iūlia et Augusta fīliae lēgātī nōti populī Rōmānī erant. Bonae puellae erant.

Servus bonus fīliās dominī malī amābat. Puellīs parvīs fābulās saepe nārrābat. Iūlia et Augusta fābulās amābant. Fābulae Plautī, servī bonī, puellās parvās dēlectābant (*charmed, pleased*).

---

[1] **Plautus** means *flat-foot.*

COLLATERAL READING

Rome the World Mistress

In 264 B.C., Rome had been one of the five Great Powers (Syria, Egypt, Macedonia, Carthage, Rome). By the peace of 201, after the battle of Zama, Carthage disappeared from that list. In the next fifty years, arrogant Roman "diplomacy" removed her other three rivals. In 146, Rome was

General View of Carthage To-day.
Looking southeast. Compare this with the pictures on pages 145, 191 241, and 295.

the *sole* Great Power. Carthage and Macedonia were provinces. Egypt and Syria had become protectorates and were soon to be provinces. All the smaller states had been brought within the Roman "sphere of influence." Rome held the heritage of Alexander as well as that of Carthage. There remained no state able to dream of equality with her. *The civilized world had become a Graeco-Roman World, under Roman sway.*

LESSON XV

SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

33. Accusative Singular (**-um**). — The accusative singular of the second declension is formed by replacing the ending **-ī** of the genitive singular by **-um**. Compare the accusative singular ending of the first declension, **-am**.

EQUUM NIGRUM VIDĒMUS.

Equum	**nigrum**	**vidēmus.**
direct object	descriptive adjective	
Poētam	**nōtum**	**amābātis.**
direct object	descriptive adjective	

We see a black horse.

You liked the famous poet.

34. The Past of the Second Conjugation is formed like that of the first, that is, by adding to the present

stem (**monēre**, present stem: **monē–**) the tense sign **–bā–** and the regular personal endings.

PAST OF **monēre**, *to warn*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
(I warned, I did warn, I used to warn, I was warning a friend, etc.)	
amīcum monē′bam	**amīcum monēbā′mus**
amīcum monē′bās	**amīcum monēbā′tis**
amīcum monē′bat	**amīcum monē′bant**

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
iniū′ria, –ae	*injury, wrong*	injurious
memo′ria, –ae	*memory*	memorial
ma′lus, –a	*bad*	malice
nos′ter, nos′tra	*our*	pater noster
tar′dus, –a	*slow*	tardy
ves′ter, ves′tra	*your*	
lī′berō, –ā′re	*free*	liberty
te′neō, –ē′re	*hold, keep*	tenet, tenure
(in) memo′riā tenē′re	*remember (hold in memory)*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) What is the present stem of the following verbs:

habēre, timēre, movēre, dēbēre, vidēre, dēlēre, tenēre?

(*b*) Identify and translate:

habet, habēbam, timēs, timēbat, dēbet, dēbēbātis, tenēmus, tenēbam, moneō, monēbāmus, vident, vidēbās.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Dominus servum līberat.
2. Dominus bonus erās; servum bonum līberābās.
3. Malus servus dominum nōn amābat.
4. Tardus servus erās; īram dominī timēbās.
5. Agrum magnum agricolae bonī vidēbāmus.
6. Discipulum pigrum saepe monēbātis.
7. Vergilium, poētam nōtum, amābāmus.
8. Fīlius Cassī, amīcī nostrī, equum nigrum habēbat.
9. Vergilius, poēta nōtus, populum Rōmānum laudābat.
10. Iniūriās populī Rōmānī (in) memoriā tenēbam.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*), (1) all the accusatives; (2) all the genitives.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give (1) the accusative singular; (2) the genitive singular of:

populus Rōmānus, puella Rōmāna, poēta Rōmānus, amīcus noster, dominus vester, servus miser tuus, equus pulcher, puer parvus, ager magnus, discipulus piger.

(*b*) Give the present and past indicative of:

1. Servum līberāre. 2. Dominum timēre.

(*c*) Review. Supply the necessary endings:

1. Cassi— (subject) amīc— (predicate noun) fīd— (descriptive adjective) erat. 2. Domin— (direct object) nōn amābam. 3. Serv— (subject) īr— (direct object) domin— (genitive case) nōn timēbat. 4. Serv— (direct object) mal— (descriptive adjective) nōn līberābās.

(*d*) Review. Replace the dashes (1) by the present; (2) by the past of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Habēre:* Ego amīcum fīdum ——.
2. *Vidēre:* Puer parvus equum pulchrum ——.
3. *Monēre:* Nōs populum Rōmānum ——.
4. *Dēbēre:* Tū patriae vītam ——.
5. *Tenēre:* Vōs iniūriās dominī (in) memoriā ——.
6. *Timēre:* Puellae īram nostram ——.
7. *Dēlēre:* Vōs cōpiās Rōmānās ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I warn, I warned, we fear, we did not fear, you held, he did not free, we used to call, you (singular) destroyed, I was working, she did not see.

(*b*) 1. I praised the good pupil (m.).
2. The master did not free the bad slave (m.).
3. The lazy slave (m.) feared the master.
4. They warned the Roman people.
5. I often saw my son.
6. He had a small horse.
7. We loved the great Roman poet.
8. They saw the field of the good farmer.
9. You (sing.) used to warn the slow and lazy pupil (m.).
10. You did not remember the great wrongs of Cassius, the ambassador of the Roman people.

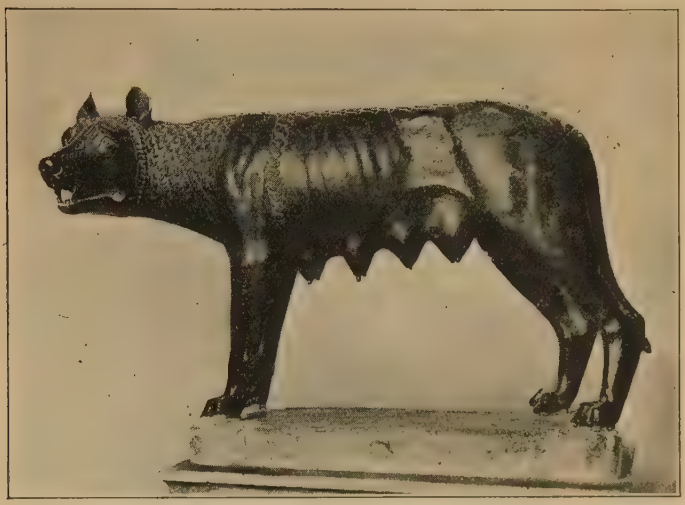
READING LESSON

Lupus et Capra (The Wolf and the Goat)

Caprae praeda (*prey*) lupī saepe sunt. Caprae lupum timent.

Agricola capram parvam habēbat. Ager dominī caprae prope (*near*) silvam erat. Lupus magnus cum cēterīs (*the other*) ferīs in silvā erat. Lupus circum (*around*, with accusative) agrum agricolae semper errābat (*prowl*) et capram saepe

vidēbat, sed capra timida lupum avidum vidēbat et prope casam dominī, ubi (*where*) tūta (*safe*) erat, manēbat (*remain*). Capra parva rīdēbat (*laugh*) et īra lupī avidī magna erat.



LUPUS.

This is the Capitoline Wolf, erected on the Capitol in memory of the wolf which suckled Romulus.

COLLATERAL READING

EARLY ROME

The Romans had no Homer.[1] Their early history, as it was first put together by their historians about 200 B.C., was a mass of curious legends. . . .

According to these legends, Rome was founded in 753 B.C.,[2] and for the next century and a half was ruled by a line of seven kings. The founder, *Romulus*, was the son of Mars

[1] The great epic poet of Greece.

[2] Later Romans counted time from this year, as we do from the birth of Christ.

(God of War) and of a Latin princess. As a babe he had been exposed to die, but was preserved and suckled by a wolf. He grew up among rude shepherds; with their aid he built a city on the Palatine Mount above the old wolf's den; here

A Roman Altar.

This altar shows the shepherd Faustulus finding Romulus and Remus and the wolf.

he gathered about him outlaws from all quarters, and these men seized the daughters of a Sabine tribe for wives. This led to war, and finally to the union of the Romans and the Sabines, who then settled upon one of the neighboring hills.

LESSON XVI

SECOND DECLENSION

35. Dative and Ablative Singular of the Second Declension (**–ō**). — They are alike and are formed by replacing the ending **–ī** of the genitive singular by **–ō**.

PUELLAE CUM PUERŌ PULCHRŌ SUNT.

Puerō (indirect object) **parvō** (descriptive adjective) **librum dō.**		*I give a book to the little boy.*
Puellae cum puerō (ablative of accompaniment) **pulchrō** (descriptive adjective) **sunt.**		*The girls are with a handsome boy.*

36. The Possessive Adjective *suus, sua,* *his own, her own, its own, their own,* agrees with the thing possessed, *not* with the possessor as in English.

Cassius dominum *suum* timet.	*Cassius fears* HIS OWN *master.*
Octāvia dominum *suum* timet.	*Octavia fears* HER OWN *master.*
Cassius et Octāvia dominum *suum* timent.	*Cassius and Octavia fear* THEIR OWN *master.*
Cassius patriam *suam* amat.	*Cassius loves* HIS *country.*
Octāvia patriam *suam* amat.	*Octavia loves* HER *country.*
Cassius et Octāvia patriam *suam* amant.	*Cassius and Octavia love* THEIR OWN *country.*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
cam′pus, –ī	*plain*	camp
li′ber, li′brī	*book*	library
no′vus, –a	*new*	novice
su′us, –a	*his, her, its; their*	suicide
nūn′tiō, –ā′re	*announce*	annunciation

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

(1) vocat, timēmus, estis, līberābam, dant, movent, pugnābātis, movēbāmus, nārrant, dēlēbam, nūntiābās.

(2) amīcī novī, librum tuum, nautae tardī, cum convīvā tuō, amīcus miser, discipulum pigrum, servō miserō.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Puer nōn in silvā sed in agrō erat.
2. Amīcō cārō tuō pecūniam dēbēbās.
3. Servus miser cum equō tardō in agrō dominī labōrābat.
4. Puellae parvae poētae nōtō rosās pulchrās dabant.
5. Populō Rōmānō victōriam nūntiābāmus.

6. Dominus cum convīvā suō cantāre dēbet.
7. Puer Cassiō librum suum dat.
8. Octāvia amīcae suae fābulam nārrābat.
9. Discipulō pigrō librum novum nōn dabās.
10. Agricola fīliae cārae suae fābulās longās nārrat.
11. Cassius, lēgātus, ē campō parvō cōpiās suās movēbat.
12. Lēgātī ē silvā cōpiās suās movent.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*), (1) all the datives; (2) all the ablatives, and explain each case; (3) all the forms of the adjective **suus, sua**, and explain the gender of each form.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular:

ager parvus, campus magnus, fīlius pulcher suus, fīlia pulchra sua, convīva laetus suus.

(*b*) Review. Add the necessary endings:

1. In camp— magn— erāmus. 2. Cassius puer— (indirect object) librum dat. 3. Popul— (indirect object) victōriam nūntiō. 4. Cum serv— in agr— labōrāre dēbēmus. 5. Discipul— (indirect object) fābulam nārrābās.

(*c*) Give the present and the past indicative of:

1. Populō victōriam nūntīāre. 2. Ē campō cōpiās movēre. 3. In agrō esse.

(*d*) Review. (1) Make the verb plural; (2) replace the present by the past:

1. Amīcō librum dō. 2. Īram dominī timēs. 3. Rēgīnae rosam dabat. 4. Agrum parvum habet. 5. Stellās vidēs. 6. Cum dīligentiā labōrō.

(*e*) Review. (1) Make the verb singular. (2) Replace the past by the present:

1. In agrō nōn erant. 2. Cum nautā laetō nāvigābāmus. 3. Cassium lēgātum monēbātis. 4. Campum magnum mōnstrābāmus. 5. Iniūriās (in) memoriā tenēbant.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) You were, they had, we used to warn, I was not sailing, she held, you feared, you (singular) moved, I used to give, they told, we were not announcing, he used to work.

(*b*) 1. We were in a large plain.

2. Cassius gave a new book to his son.

3. I was telling stories to the good boy.

4. The lady of the house gives money to her faithful slave (m.).

5. The master ought to (**dēbēre**) work with his slow slave (m.).

6. They owed money to their friend (m.), to their friend (f.).

7. I was working with a bad pupil (m.).

8. We used to sail with a wretched sailor.

9. Cassius, the lieutenant, was announcing his victory to the Roman people.

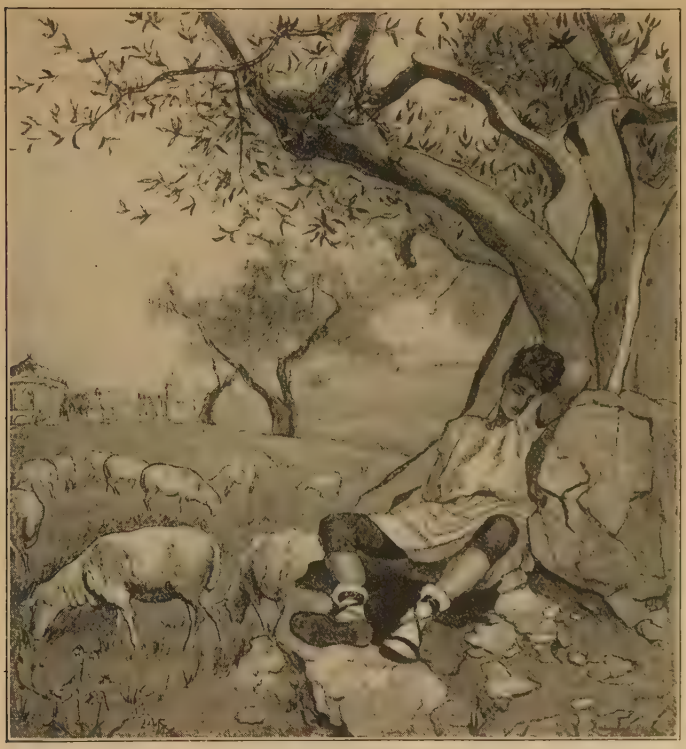
10. You were moving your troops from the forest and from the plain.

READING LESSON

Puer et Agnus (The Boy and the Lamb)

Mārcus puer parvus erat. Fīlius agricolae miserī erat. Casa parva Mārcī in campō magnō erat. Puer agnum parvum habēbat. Agnus puerī parvī albus erat. In agrō parvō agricolae semper manēbat (*remain*). Mārcus bonus agnō cārō herbam (*grass*) saepe dabat. Laetitia (*joy*) agnī albī magna erat. Agnus parvus herbam amābat.

Cōpia cibī (*food*) semper grāta est. Mārcus agnum album amābat. Agnus dominum nōn timēbat. Vīta agnī in agrō parvō nōn misera erat. Dominus parvus cum agnō albō saepe erat. Laetitia Mārcī bonī magna erat.



PUER ET AGNUS.

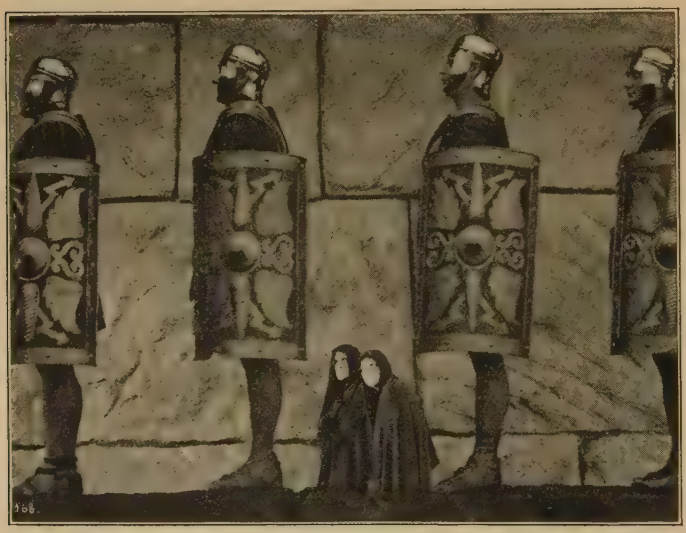
COLLATERAL READING

THE ROMAN ARMY

The ranks of the Roman army were broken up into three successive lines, and each line was divided further into small companies, forming the *flexible legion*.

The companies were usually six men deep, with twenty in each rank. . . . The front rank of the companies contained the raw recruits.

Experienced soldiers made up the second line of companies. The third line contained only veterans, and was usually held in reserve, to deliver a decisive blow at a critical moment in a battle. . . .



ROMAN SOLDIERS.

The legion used the hurling javelin to disorder the enemy's ranks before immediate contact, and the famous Roman short sword for close combat. . . .

The legion numbered about five thousand, and was made up of Roman citizens. Each legion was accompanied by about five thousand men from the allies. These *auxiliaries* served on the wings of the legion as light-armed troops, and they furnished also whatever cavalry the army had.

LESSON XVII

REVIEW

Singular of Second Declension Masculine Nouns and Adjectives in –us and in –er

	Puer parvus	Ager noster	Nauta bonus	*Endings*
Base:	puer– parv–	agr– nostr–	naut– bon–	
Nom.:	puer parvus	ager noster	nauta bonus	–us or –er
Gen.:	puerī parvī	agrī nostrī	nautae bonī	–ī
Dat.:	puerō parvō	agrō nostrō	nautae bonō	–ō
Acc.:	puerum parvum	agrum nostrum	nautam bonum	–um
Abl.:	puerō parvō	agrō nostrō	nautā bonō	–ō

First Conjugation		Second Conjugation	
Present stem: laudā–		Present stem: monē–	
Present	Past	Present	Past
laudō	laudābam	moneō	monēbam
laudās	laudābās	monēs	monēbās
laudat	laudābat	monet	monēbat
laudāmus	laudābāmus	monēmus	monēbāmus
laudātis	laudābātis	monētis	monēbātis
laudant	laudābant	monent	monēbant

Esse

Present		Past	
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus
es	estis	erās	erātis
est	sunt	erat	erant

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Translate into English:

1. *Nouns*

First Declension

iniūria memoria

Second Declension

A. Nouns in –us

amīcus	discipulus	fīlius	populus
campus	dominus	lēgātus	servus
Cassius	equus	mundus	Vergilius

B. Noun in –er, *gen.* –erī

puer

C. Nouns in –er, *gen.* –rī

ager liber

2. *Adjectives (masculine and feminine forms)*

A. Adjectives in –us, –a

albus	lātus	magnus	parvus
bonus	laetus	meus	Rōmānus
cārus	longus	nōtus	suus
fīdus	malus	novus	tardus
grātus			

B. Adjective in –er, –era

miser

C. Adjectives in –er, –ra

niger	noster	piger	pulcher
	sacer	vester	

3. *Verbs*

First Conjugation

līberō **nūntiō**

Second Conjugation

teneō

4. *Adverb*

tum

5. *Idiom*

(in) memoriā tenēre

Equī Rōmānī.

(*b*) Divide into syllables all the words mentioned in (*a*), and indicate which syllable must be accented in each of them.

(*c*) Answer the following questions, and illustrate:

1. What are the endings of the nominative singular of masculine nouns and adjectives of the second declension?

2. What is the ending of the genitive singular of nouns in **-ius**?

3. Name (*a*) two words, ending in **–er**, which retain the **e**; (*b*) two which lose the **e**.

4. What cases do the endings **–ī** and **–ō** indicate?

5. What case do the endings **–am** and **–um** indicate?

6. How does the adjective agree with its noun?

7. If the nominative singular of a noun ends in **–a**, how does the adjective which modifies it agree?

8. How does the possessive adjective **suus, sua**, agree?

9. What is the tense sign of the past tense?

10. How do you form the past tense of any verb?

11. How do the present and the past indicative differ?

12. Is the past tense of the verb **esse** regular?

13. What are the feminine Latin nouns corresponding to **dominus, discipulus, servus, amīcus**?

14. What English words are suggested by the Latin words: **amīcus, niger, tardus, populus, miser, mundus, grātus, campus, malus, liber**?

II. Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular:

populus Rōmānus, liber vester, convīva laetus suus.

(*b*) Write the present and past tenses of:

1. **In campō esse.** 2. **Populum līberāre.** 3. **Librum tenēre.**

(*c*) Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns*

book	friend (masc.)	memory	slave (masc.)
boy	horse	people	son
Cassius	lieutenant	plain	Vergil
field	master	pupil (masc.)	world
	injury	wrong	

2. *Adjectives* (*masculine and feminine forms*)

bad	good	long	sacred
beautiful	his own	my	slow
black	her own	new	their
dear	joyful	our	your
faithful	large	pleasant	white
famous	lazy	Roman	wide
		wretched	

3. *Verbs*

to announce	to free	to hold	to remember

4. *Adverb*

then

LESSON XVIII

REVIEW

READING LESSON

Vergilius

Ītalia patria Vergilī est. Vergilius, nātus (*born*) prope Mantuam,[1] poēta magnus Ītaliae est. Vergilius vērus (*true*) amīcus Augustī[2] erat. Tum Rōma domina superba (*haughty*) mundī erat. Ītalia magnum numerum (*number*) poētārum habēbat. Vergilius discipulus (*follower*) Homērī poētae Graecī (*Greek*) dīvīnī (*divine*) erat.

Homērus.

Vergilius vītam rūsticam (*rural*) amābat. Poētae nātūram (*nature*) amant. Dīligentiam et parsimōniam agricolārum Ītaliae laudābat; dē magnā glōriā patriae semper cantābat. Vergilium, poētam nōtum, Ītaliae amāre dēbēmus. Fāma Vergilī, poētae dīvīnī, aeterna est.

---

[1] Mantua, a city in Northern Italy.

[2] Augustus (B.C. 63–A.D. 14), the first Roman Emperor.

EXERCISES

Oral.

Answer the following questions, based on the preceding text:

1. Estne Gallia (*Gaul*) patria Vergilī? [Answer: Nōn est.] 2. Quis (*Who*) Vergilius erat? 3. Cuius (*Whose*) amīcus vērus erat? 4. Eratne Mantua domina superba mundī? 5. Habēbatne Ītalia magnum numerum poētārum? 6. Cuius Vergilius discipulus erat? 7. Eratne Homērus poēta Rōmānus? 8. Quis Homērus erat? 9. Quid Vergilius amābat? 10. Quid poētae amant? 11. Quid Vergilius laudābat? 12. Quid cantābat? 13. Cūr (*Why*) Vergilium amāre dēbētis? [Answer: Quia (*because*), etc.] 14. Cūr glōria Vergilī aeterna est?

One of the pupils reads the questions, and his classmates answer them in complete sentences.

The Reading Lesson above may be used as a dictation.

AUGUSTUS.

COLLATERAL READING

PŪBLIUS VERGILIUS MARŌ (70–19 B.C.)

Vergil was born on a small estate near the city of Mantua in what was then called Cisalpine Gaul. When he

was twelve years old, his father sent him to school at Cremona, then later to Milan, and finally to Rome, where he devoted himself to the study of philosophy and rhetoric.

His masterpieces which won for him the favor of the Emperor Augustus and of his minister Maecenas are the *Bucolics*, ten poems of pastoral life, which are a close imitation of the *Idylls* of the Greek poet Theocritus, the *Georgics*, "exquisite poems of country life," and the *Aeneid*, an epic poem on the growth of the greatness of Rome.

For centuries, especially during the Middle Ages, the *Aeneid* was accounted the greatest work of human genius, and probably no poem has been so widely known and studied, at least in the Western world, since the Christian era.

Vergil may be lacking in originality, but "as an artist in words, he stands supreme." He is the great poet of Nature and of rural life.

LESSON XIX

SECOND DECLENSION. FUTURE OF *ESSE*

37. Nominative Plural (**-ī**). — The nominative plural of nouns and adjectives in **-us** or **-er** of the second declension ends in **-ī** and is formed like the genitive singular.

Note the different endings of the nominative singular and the nominative plural in the following sentences :

EQUĪ NIGRĪ SUNT.

Equus niger est. (subject, predicate adjective)	*The horse is black.*
Equī nigrī sunt. (subject, predicate adjective)	*The horses are black.*

Note. The noun **vir**, *man*, has a peculiar nominative singular. The rest of the declension is like that of **puer**.

Vir bonus.	*The good man.*

38. Future of *esse*, *to be.*

Masculine (I shall be an industrious man, etc.)			Feminine (I shall be a proud girl, etc.)		
Vir	impiger	e′rō	Puella	superba	e′rō
Vir	impiger	e′ris	Puella	superba	e′ris
Vir	impiger	e′rit	Puella	superba	e′rit
Virī	impigrī	e′rimus	Puellae	superbae	e′rimus
Virī	impigrī	e′ritis	Puellae	superbae	e′ritis
Virī	impigrī	e′runt	Puellae	superbae	e′runt

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
Horā′tius, –tī	*Horace*	Horatian
magis′ter, –trī	*teacher*	magistrate
Rōmā′nī (plur.)	*the Romans*	Romanic
so′cius, –cī	*ally, companion*	social, sociable
vir, –ī	*man*	virile
im′piger, –gra	*industrious*	
in′teger, –gra	*unhurt, sound*	integral
pau′cī, –ae (plur.)	*few*	paucity
super′bus, –a	*haughty, proud*	superb
tū′tus, –a	*safe*	tutor, tutelage
vē′rus, –a	*true*	verity
crās	*tomorrow*	procrastinate
nunc	*now*	quidnunc
quan′dō	*when* (only interrogative)	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

sum, erat, adest, eritis, es, erō, adsunt, erāmus, aberō, estis, aberam, erunt, est, aderitis.

(*b*) Read carefully and translate:

1. Vir bonus amīcus vērus est; virī bonī amīcī vērī semper erunt.
2. Socius Rōmae erō; sociī populī Rōmānī erimus.
3. Rōmānī superbī dominī mundī erunt.
4. Horātius et Vergilius magnī poētae Ītaliae erant.
5. Discipulus impiger semper laetus erit; discipulī pigrī numquam laetī erunt.
6. Sociī nostrī paucī erant.
7. Paucī erimus, sed integrī et tūtī.
8. Quandō aberitis?
9. Crās aberimus.

(*c*) Point out every nominative plural in (*b*), and explain its use.

(*d*) Give the nominative plural of:

dominus bonus, puer pulcher, agricola tardus, amīcus vērus, vir superbus, socius integer, via tūta, campus lātus, ager longus, magister impiger, servus piger.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Write (1) the present, past, and future of:

1. Nōn tardus sum. 2. Nōn tarda sum.

(2) the same tenses of:

1. Paucī, sed integrī et tūtī, sumus. 2. Paucae, sed integrae et tūtae, sumus.

(*b*) Review. Replace (*a*) the singular by the plural; (*b*) the present by (1) the past; (2) the future:

1. Amīcus vērus sum. 2. Puella parva misera est. 3. Dominus mundī es. 4. Ager meus parvus est.

(*c*) Review. Replace (*a*) the plural by the singular; (*b*) the past by (1) the future; (2) the present:

1. Agricolae impigrī erant. 2. Sociī populī Rōmānī erātis. 3. Viae Ītaliae bonae erant. 4. Virī bonī erāmus. 5. Nōn aderātis.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) They were, I shall be, you are not, she will be, we were, you (sing.) are, I was not, they will be away, we shall not be present.

(*b*) 1. I am a faithful friend (m.); we are faithful friends (m.); I was a faithful friend (f.); we were faithful friends (f.).

2. You will be a good pupil (m.); you will be good pupils (m.); you will be a good pupil (f.); you will be good pupils (f.).

3. Horace is a famous poet; Vergil also is a great poet; they are famous poets of Italy.

4. We (m.) shall be joyful; we shall always be industrious.

5. I shall not be present to-morrow.

6. When will she be absent?

7. Now the Romans are our allies.

8. The slaves (m.) of a good master will never be lazy.

9. Our teachers are good men.

10. We (m.) shall always be your true friends.

11. Our friends (m.) are few but true.

12. The allies of Rome will always be safe.

READING LESSON

Nunc et Crās

Nunc puerī Rōmānī sumus; Rōma patria nostra est; discipulī bonī sumus; impigrī, nōn tardī sumus; cum

dīligentiā labōrāmus. In scholā laetī, nōn miserī sumus; scholam amāmus. Magistrī dīligentiam nostram semper laudant.

Crās virī erimus; virī probī (*honest*) erimus; nōtī erimus; nec (*neither*) malī agricolae, nec (*nor*) tardī nautae, nec pigrī poētae, sed bonī agricolae, aut (*or*) perītī (*skillful*) nautae,

ATHENS.
This view shows the Acropolis and the Parthenon.

aut magnī poētae erimus. Patria prōspera (*prosperous*) erit. Sociī nostrī multī (*numerous*) erunt; integrī erunt. Amīcī vērī nostrī tūtī semper erunt. Superbī dominī mundī erimus.

COLLATERAL READING

QUĪNTUS HORĀTIUS FLACCUS (65–8 B.C.)

Horace was born at Venusia (Apulia). His father, a former slave, was a poor farmer, but he managed to give his son the best education the world then offered.

The boy studied at Rome and Athens (Greece) and fought at the battle of Philippi (Macedonia). On his return to

Italy, he began to write and became the author of humorous *satires*, graceful *odes*, delightful *epistles*, and the famous treatise *Art of Poetry*.

His writings, like those of Vergil, were studied in schools and known throughout the Roman Empire.

LESSON XX

SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION

39. Genitive Plural (**–ōrum**). — The genitive plural of the second declension ends in **–ōrum.** It is formed by replacing the ending **–ī** of the genitive singular by **–ōrum.** Compare it with that of the first declension, which ends in **–ārum**, and note the different endings of the genitive singular and the genitive plural:

Dīligentiam discipulī bonī laudō. — *I praise the diligence of the good pupil.*

genitive case — descriptive adjective

Dīligentiam discipulōrum bonōrum laudō. — *I praise the diligence of the good pupils.*

genitive case — descriptive adjective

40. The Future of the First Conjugation is formed by adding to the present stem (**laudā–**) the tense sign **–bi–** and the usual personal endings.

FUTURE INDICATIVE OF **laudāre**, *to praise*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
(I shall or will praise the teacher, etc.)	
magistrum laudā′bō	**magistrum laudā′bimus**
magistrum laudā′bis	**magistrum laudā′bitis**
magistrum laudā′bit	**magistrum laudā′bunt**

Note that **i** of the tense sign **–bi–** is dropped before **ō** in the first person singular, and becomes **u** in the third person plural.

CAPTĪVĪ.

This relief shows the way the Romans sometimes treated their captives. It is one of many from Trajan's Column, a tall shaft erected in Trajan's Forum at Rome. Around the column runs a spiral band over six hundred feet long with about twenty-five hundred figures in relief. These depict various scenes from Trajan's wars with the Dacians.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH WORDS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
captī′vus, –ī	*captive, prisoner*	captivity
fu′ga, –ae	*flight, escape*	fugitive
Gal′li, –ōrum	*the Gauls*	Gallic
nu′merus, –ī	*number*	numerous
con′vocō, –ā′re	*call together, summon*	convoke
iu′vō, –ā′re	*help, aid*	adjuvant
pa′rō, –ā′re	*prepare*	compare
ser′vō, –ā′re	*save, rescue*	conserve, preserve

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

pācant, parābō, pugnātis, aderō, dabit, nūntiās, nāvigābāmus, iuvābō, nūntiābunt, servābitis, convocābimus.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Rōma patria virōrum nōtōrum erat.
2. Fāma Rōmānōrum magna est.
3. Librī puerōrum bonī esse dēbent.
4. Patriam servābis.
5. Fugam captīvōrum nōn parābitis.
6. Īram dominōrum pācābimus.
7. Magistrī dīligentiam discipulōrum impigrōrum laudābunt.
8. Magnum numerum sociōrum vestrōrum convocābitis.
9. Amīcum vērum Gallōrum iuvābō.
10. Cassiō lēgātō victōriam magnam Rōmānōrum nūntiābis.

(*c*) Point out all the genitive plurals in (*b*), and explain their use.

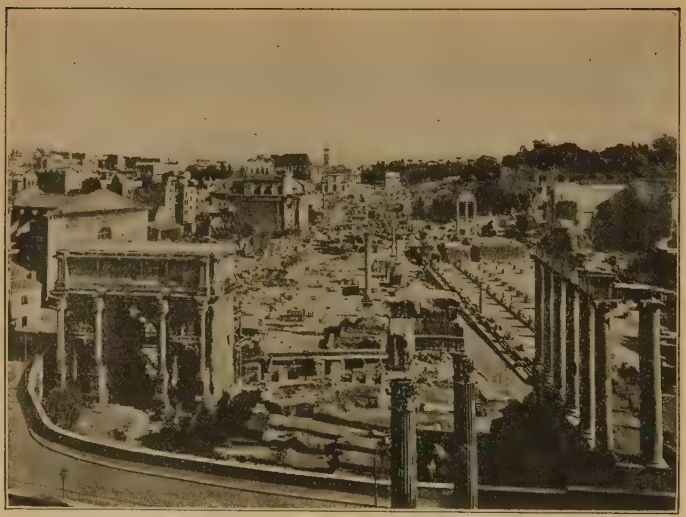
(*d*) Review. Add the necessary endings (1) in the singular; (2) in the plural:

1. Fugam captīv— (genitive case) parābat. 2. Fāmam magist— (genitive case) laudābimus. 3. Glōria poēt— (genitive case) magna erit. 4. Librī puer— (genitive case) bonī esse dēbent.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give the nominative and genitive plural of:

socius meus, poēta vērus, liber noster, vir bonus, magister vester, stella nova.



THE ROMAN FORUM.

The upper view is taken from the Capitoline hill looking southeast; the lower picture is taken from the opposite end of the Forum, looking toward the Capitoline. Compare this with the pictures on pages xxv, 31, and 150.

(*b*) Write the present, past, and future of **amīcum meum iuvō**, and replace **meum** by the other possessive adjectives.

Model: **amīcum tuum iuvās**, etc.

(*c*) Review. Replace the dashes by (*a*) the present; (*b*) the past; (*c*) the future:

1. *Nūntiāre:* Ego victōriam Gallōrum ——.
2. *Iuvāre:* Gallī socium Rōmānōrum nōn ——.
3. *Convocāre:* Tū magnum numerum amīcōrum ——.
4. *Servāre:* Dominus servum bonum ——.
5. *Parāre:* Nōs fugam nōn ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) They will fight, I shall not give, we shall not announce, she will help, you (singular) will not rescue, he will summon, they will not prepare, I shall show, we shall not work.

(*b*) 1. You will announce the victory of the Gauls.

2. They will rescue a great number of slaves (m.).
3. The prisoners will prepare their escape.
4. You will not like the language of the sailors.
5. I shall show the cottages of the wretched inhabitants.
6. We shall sing (of) the glory of the famous poets.
7. Cassius will summon a great number of the faithful allies of Rome.
8. You (singular) will not calm the anger of the bad masters.
9. They will not help an ally of the Romans.

READING LESSON

Rōma Prōspera (Prosperous Rome)

Rōma prōspera erit. Rōmānī terrās populōrum fīnitimōrum (*neighboring*) occupābunt. Fāma campōrum fēcun-

dōrum (*fertile*) Ītaliae invidiam (*envy*) multōrum bellicōsōrum (*warlike*) barbarōrum excitābit. Victōriae Rōmānōrum crēbrae (crēber, –bra, *frequent*) erunt. Numerus captīvōrum magnus erit.

Fāma poētārum nōtōrum Ītaliae magna erit. Poētae magnī animum (*spirit*) sociōrum, dīligentiam et parsimōniam incolārum impigrōrum, scientiam magistrōrum nōtōrum laudābunt; glōriam magnam Rōmānōrum, dominōrum superbōrum mundī, cantābunt. Semper Rōma patria superba virōrum bellicōsōrum erit.

COLLATERAL READING

Rome's Prosperity

Rome began as a village of rude shepherds and peasants. The village grew up into a city state and then into the queen city of a united Italy. Later, Italy was to organize the fringes of the three continents bordering the Mediterranean into one Graeco-Roman society.

But it was not Rome's genius in war, great as that was, which made the world Roman. *It was her political wisdom and her organizing power.* As Greece stands for art and intellectual culture, so Rome stands for government and law.

The poet Vergil wrote:

". . . To rule the nations with imperial sway be thy care, O Roman. These shall be thy arts: to impose terms of peace, to spare the humbled, and to crush the proud."

LESSON XXI

SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

41. Accusative Plural (**–ōs**). — The accusative plural of nouns and adjectives in **–us** or **–er** of the second declension ends in **–ōs**. It is formed by replacing the ending **–ī** of the genitive singular by **–ōs**. Compare it with the ending **–ās** of the first declension.

Note the different endings of the accusative singular and the accusative plural.

EQUŌS ALBŌS VIDEŌ.

Equum	**album**	**videō.**	*I see a white horse.*
direct object	descriptive adjective		
Equōs	**albōs**	**videō.**	*I see the white horses.*
direct object	descriptive adjective		

42. The Future of the Second Conjugation is formed like that of the first (see § 40).

FUTURE OF **monēre**, *to warn*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
(I shall or will warn the Gauls, etc.)	
Gallōs monē′bō	**Gallōs monē′bimus**
Gallōs monē′bis	**Gallōs monē′bitis**
Gallōs monē′bit	**Gallōs monē′bunt**

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
o′culus, –ī	*eye*	oculist
īrā′tus, –a	*angry*	irate
perī′tus, –a	*skillful*	expert
ter′reō, –ē′re	*frighten*	terrible
vās′tō, –ā′re	*devastate*	waste

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

movent, timēbunt, dēbētis, dēbēbātis, dēbēbitis, nōn terrēbimus, vidēbit, tenēbis, vāstābunt, habēbō, dēlēbunt.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Multōs amīcōs habēbimus.
2. Gallī agrōs incolārum vāstābunt.
3. Rōmānī multōs captīvōs habēbunt.
4. Magistrōs īrātōs timēbō.
5. Nautae perītō vītam dēbēbis.
6. Oculōs habent et nōn vidēbunt.
7. Populus Rōmānus sociōs suōs semper iuvābit.
8. Magister discipulōs tardōs nōn terrēbit.

9. Amīcī vērī sumus; amīcōs nostrōs semper iuvābimus.
10. Amīcī vērī nōn estis; amīcōs vestrōs numquam iuvātis.
11. Multōs perītōs nautās nōn vidēbitis.
12. Gallī Rōmānōs numquam timēbunt.

(*c*) Indicate all the accusative plurals in (*b*), and explain their use.

(*d*) Give the nominative, genitive, and accusative plural of:

amīcus cārus vester, convīva laetus, liber nōtus, incola īrātus, magister perītus, equus niger.

II. **Oral and Written.**

(*a*) Write the present, past, and future of:

1. Puerōs nōn terrēre. 2. Agrōs vāstāre.

(*b*) Put the italicized words in the plural:

1. Discipulī *magistrum* nōn timent. 2. *Virum bonum* laudās. 3. Puerī *nautam perītum* iuvant. 4. *Servum* terrēbam. 5. *Campum magnum* vāstāmus.

(*c*) Review. Replace the present by (1) the future; (2) the past:

1. Oculōs bonōs habeō et videō. 2. Cassiō pecūniam dēbēs. 3. Ītaliam vāstātis. 4. Incolās terrent. 5. Multās iniūriās Gallōrum (in) memoriā tenēmus.

III. **Written.**

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) We shall have, you (singular) will not move, you will owe, he will not fear, I shall frighten, she will destroy, we shall devastate.

(*b*) 1. The Romans will have many allies.
2. You will have few friends.
3. Slaves will always fear bad masters.

4. We shall warn the slow sailors.
5. You (singular) will call together joyful guests.
6. We shall help the wretched captives.
7. The teacher will frighten his new pupils.
8. The Gauls will devastate the fields of Italy.
9. The lieutenant ought (dēbēre) to summon the faithful allies of the Romans.
10. You have good eyes and you will not see.

The Circus Maximus (Restored).

Gladiatorial games were held in the Colosseum (page xvi), but chariot races took place here. Compare this with the pictures on pages 83, 97, and 115.

READING LESSON

In Lūdō[1] (At School)

Crās in lūdō eritis. Ibi (*there*) manēbitis. Magister multōs discipulōs habēbit. Discipulōs novōs terrēbit. Multōs sociōs, sed paucōs vērōs amīcōs, habēbitis. Bonī discipulī magistrōs īrātōs nōn timēbunt. Impigrī eritis et magistrōs nōn timēbitis. Magister vester puerōs bonōs laudābit. Puerō parvō fābulam nārrābit. Impigrō discipulō librōs

[1] **Lūdus, -ī,** m., *game, play,* means also *school.*

pulchrōs dabit. Magistrī discipulōs pigrōs et tardōs monēbunt sed nōn terrēbunt. Magistrōs novōs timēbimus.

Crās in lūdō manēre dēbēbimus quia (*because*) pigrī sumus.

COLLATERAL READING

Italian Allies

Most numerous of all the inhabitants of Italy stood the mass of subject Greeks, Italians, and Etruscans, under the general name of *Italian Allies*. These cities differed greatly in condition among themselves. Each one was bound to Rome by its separate treaty, and these treaties varied widely. None of the " Allies " had either the private or public rights of the Romans, and they were *isolated jealously one from another;* but in general they bore few burdens and enjoyed local self-government and Roman protection.

LESSON XXII

SECOND DECLENSION

43. Dative and Ablative Plural (**-īs**). — The dative and ablative plural of the second declension both end in **-īs**. Both are formed by replacing the ending **-ī** of the genitive singular by **-īs**, so that all dative and ablative plurals of both first and second declensions have the same ending: **-īs**.

A Roman Sword in its Sheath.

Note the different endings of (*a*) the dative singular and the dative plural; (*b*) the ablative singular and the ablative plural:

(*a*)	**Puerō parvō librum dabō.** indirect object — descriptive adjective	*I shall give a book to the little boy.*
	Puerīs parvīs librōs dabō. indirect object — descriptive adjective	*I shall give books to the little boys.*
(*b*)	**Gladiō longō pugnat.** ablative of means — descriptive adjective	*He fights with a long sword.*
	Gladiīs longīs pugnant. ablative of means — descriptive adjective	*They fight with long swords.*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
amīci'tia, –ae	*friendship*	amity
gla'dius, –dī	*sword*	gladiator
fīni'timus, –a	*neighboring*	finite
quid?	*what?*	quid pro quo
dē (with ablative)	*of, about*	*de*viate, *de*ject
cōnfir'mō, –ā're	*establish*	confirm
pu'tō, –ā're	*think*	putative
amīcitiam cōnfirmāre	*make a treaty of alliance*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

pugnābit, dēbēs, vocāmus, timēbant, cōnfirmābō, putābam, vāstābimus, terrēbit, putābimus, habēbitis.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Incolae in agrīs, nōn in silvīs sunt.
2. Magister discipulīs fābulās nārrābit.
3. Nautīs perītīs pecūniam dabunt.
4. Quid dē lēgātīs novīs putās?
5. Rōmānī gladiīs parvīs pugnābant.
6. Sociīs nostrīs victōriam nūntiābimus.
7. Quandō ē silvīs cōpiās vestrās movēbitis?
8. Cum Rōmānīs superbīs pugnābimus.
9. Cum populīs fīnitimīs amīcitiam cōnfirmābis.
10. Cum servīs tardīs et pigrīs labōrāre dēbēbunt.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*): (1) all the datives; (2) all the ablatives. Explain each case.

(*d*) Decline in both numbers:

puer parvus, puella parva, nauta laetus, fīlius meus, vir miser, ager noster.

(*e*) Review. Add the necessary endings (*a*) in the singular; (*b*) in the plural:

1. Amīc— (indirect object) pecūniam dēbēbam. 2. Quid dē libr— nov— putātis? 3. Cum naut— perīt— nāvigō. 4. Cum popul— fīnitim— amīcitiam cōnfirmābāmus.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Write the present, past, and future of:

1. Quid putāre? 2. Quid vidēre?

(*b*) Review. Replace the past by (*a*) the present; (*b*) the future:

1. Puerīs librōs bonōs dare dēbēbant. 2. Cassius captīvōs iuvābat. 3. Rōmānī incolās terrēbant. 4. Agrōs vāstābāmus.

(*c*) Review. Put the verb:

(*a*) in the singular: Cum servīs labōrāmus.
(*b*) in the plural: Oculōs habēs, sed nōn vidēs.
(*c*) in the present: Librī pulchrī grātī erunt.
(*d*) in the future: Rōmam vāstātis.
(*e*) in the past: Servōs terrēre dēbeō.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) We show, you used to fear, they will not free, you (singular) are thinking, she must, we shall devastate, I did not announce, you will frighten.

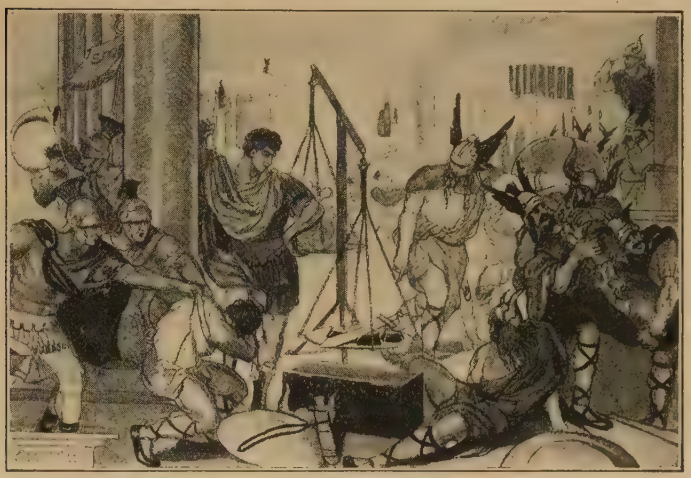
(*b*) 1. The cottages are in large plains.
2. What do you think of our new teachers?
3. I shall not work with slow pupils.
4. Teachers will give new books to good pupils.
5. The wretched farmer owes money to my friends.
6. The teacher will not tell stories to lazy pupils.

7. You (singular) will announce the victory to our faithful allies.

8. The Gauls ought not to form an alliance with the haughty Romans.

9. We shall navigate with skillful sailors.

10. They fight with[1] swords; we fight with long spears.



VAE VICTĪS!
Brennus throwing his sword into the scales. See page 124.

READING LESSON

VAE VICTĪS! (Woe to the Vanquished!)

Dominī mundī erimus. Multōs sociōs habēbimus. Cum cūnctīs (*all*) populīs fīnitimīs amīcitiam cōnfirmābimus. Gallōs nōn amāmus. Cum sociīs nostrīs in pugnīs (pugna, –ae, *battle*) crēbrīs (*frequent*) pugnant. Sociī Rōmānōrum nōn tūtī sunt. Gallī sociōs nostrōs terrent. Sociōrum nostrōrum casās dēlent et agrōs vāstant. Sed sociōs nostrōs iuvābimus et servābimus. Iniūriās Gallōrum (in) memoriā

[1] See § 23, note.

tenēbimus et vindicābimus (*avenge*). Gallōs superābimus (*vanquish*). Numerus captīvōrum magnus erit. Galliam occupābimus, incolās terrēbimus, casās dēlēbimus, agrōs vāstābimus. Vae victīs!

COLLATERAL READING

Rome Sacked by the Gauls, and Saved by the Geese (390 B.C.)

A horde of Gauls, who had overrun Etruria, defeated the Roman army and cut it off from the city. . . . A small garrison, under the soldier *Marcus Manlius*, garrisoned the Capitoline citadel. Later Romans told the story that one night the barbarians had almost surprised even this last defense, but some hungry geese, kept there for religious sacrifices, awakened Manlius by their noisy cackling just in time for him to hurl back the first-comers from the walls.

The Gauls sacked the rest of the city and held it seven months. But their host was ravaged by the deadly malaria of the Roman plain, and they had little skill or patience for a regular siege. Finally they withdrew on the payment of a ransom.

When the sum was being paid, the Romans accused the victors of using false weights. Then the Gallic leader, *Brennus*, throwing his heavy sword into the scales, uttered the famous phrase: "Vae victīs!"

LESSON XXIII

VOCATIVE. IMPERATIVE

44. The Vocative or case of address has the same form as the nominative in all the declensions, with the following exceptions:

1. The vocative singular of nouns and adjectives in **–us** of the second declension ends in **–e**.

2. But in **fīlius** and proper nouns ending in **–ius** the **–ie** contracts to **–ī**. See § 31, note.

3. The vocative of **meus** is **mī**.

(Ō) **poēta**! (Ō) **domine**!	(*O*) *poet!* (*O*) *master!*
(Ō) **Domine**!	(*O*) *Lord!*
(Ō) **Vergi'lī**! (Ō) **mī fīlī**!	(*O*) *Vergil!* (*O*) *my son!*

45. The Present Imperative has only two forms, the second person singular and plural.

The second person singular of the present imperative of *any* verb in the active voice is like the present stem.

The second person plural of the first and second conjugations is formed by adding **–te** to the singular.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF **laudāre**, *to praise*

Dominum laudā.	*Praise thou the Lord.*
Dominum laudāte.	*Praise ye the Lord.*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF **monēre**, *to warn*

Malōs monē.	*Warn (thou) the wicked.*
Malōs monēte.	*Warn (ye) the wicked.*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF **esse**, *to be*

Bonus (m.), **bona** (f.) **es.**	*Be good* (singular).
Bonī (m.), **bonae** (f.) **este.**	*Be good* (plural).

Note. The verb form **es** may mean *you* (singular) *are*, or *be;* the reader must be guided by the context.

DOMINUM LAUDĀTE.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
ta′bula, –ae	*map*	table
do′leō, –ē′re	*be sorry for, lament*	dolorous
gau′deō, –ē′re	*rejoice*	gaudy
ō′rō, –ā′re	*beseech, pray*	oratory
rī′deō, –ē′re	*laugh, laugh at*	deride
Ō!	*O! oh!*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) (1) Give the present stem of:

mōnstrāre, dēlēre, vāstāre, terrēre, ōrāre, nūntiāre, gaudēre, dare, vocāre;

(2) Divide these infinitives into syllables, indicating which one must be accented.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

pācā, es, timē, ōrā, rīdēte, nārrāte, este, habē, līberā, pugnāte, dolē, gaudē, dā (see footnote, page 44).

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Puellae parvae rosās dā, Octāvia.[1]
2. Amīcōs tuōs iuvā, mī cāre amīce.
3. Impigrī este, meī cārī amīcī.
4. Bona es, mea cāra amīca; bonōs iuvā et laudā.
5. Servum bonum līberā, domine, et servum tardum monē.
6. Tabulam vidēte, discipulī, et magistrō Rōmam mōnstrāte.
7. Dominum ōrā et timē, mī fīlī.
8. Sociōs Rōmānōrum iuvā, Cassī, et cum Gallīs amīcitiam cōnfirmā.
9. Laetī este, puerī; numquam dolēte; semper rīdēte et gaudēte.
10. Victōriās patriae cantā, Vergilī, et populum Rōmānum laudā.

TABULAM VIDĒTE.

(*d*) Indicate all the vocatives in (*c*).

(*e*) Give the vocatives of the following words:

Rōma, nauta, puer laetus, servus tardus, populus Rōmānus, magister irātus, socius meus, Cassius superbus, fīlius bonus, agricolae pigrī (plural).

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Write the present imperative of:

parāre, vidēre, habēre, nārrāre, esse, dare, nūntiāre, dolēre, dēlēre, servāre.

(*b*) Review. Make plural the verb forms which are in the singular, and vice versa:

[1] A Latin vocative is seldom the first word of the sentence.

1. Discipulum bonum laudā. 2. Puerīs fābulās nārrāte. 3. Puer bonus es (*translate two ways*). 4. Puellae impigrae este. 5. Captīvōs servāte. 6. Stellās pulchrās vidēte. 7. Victōriās nūntiā.

Head of a Vestal Virgin.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) (Use both forms of the present imperative) Call, warn, see, pray, show, fear, have, love, be, never praise, rejoice, laugh.

(*b*) 1. Cassius,[1] show the map of the world.

2. Daughters,[1] beseech and love the Lord.
3. My son, work, and be joyful.
4. Teachers, tell pleasant stories to your pupils.
5. Roman people, make a treaty of alliance with the Gauls.
6. Dear friend, prepare my escape.
7. Farmers, see the fields and the plains, and rejoice.
8. Allies, never help the Romans.
9. Slaves, be good, work with diligence.
10. Cassius, laugh, and rejoice; never lament.

READING LESSON

Mī Fīlī!

Bonus es, mī fīlī; sī (*if*) bonus es, semper laetus eris. Discipulus impiger es; magistrī discipulōs impigrōs laudant.

[1] Remember the footnote on page 127.

Semper cum dīligentiā labōrā. Multōs amīcōs habē sed sociōs malōs vītā (*avoid*). Amīcōs vērōs amā et laudā; miserīs pecūniam dā, puerīs viam rēctam mōnstrā, bonōs iuvā, numquam īrātus es; numquam iniūriās tuās vindicā. Sī (*if*) miser es, ridē et gaudē. Dominum mundī laudā et timē.

The So-called Temple of Vesta at Rome.

COLLATERAL READING

The Roman Gods

The Romans were pagans. Religion centered about the home and the daily tasks. For each house the door had its protecting god *Janus*, two-faced, looking in and out; and

each hearth fire had the goddess *Vesta*. When the city grew powerful, it had a city *Janus* and a city *Vesta*. In the ancient round temple of *Vesta*, the holy fire of the city was kept always bright by the priestesses (*Vestal Virgins*). For the fire to go out or to be defiled in any way would mean disaster.

Next to the *house gods* came the *gods of the farm: Saturn*, the god of sowing; *Ceres*, the goddess who made the grain grow; . . . and *Terminus*, a god who dwelt in each boundary pillar, to guard the bounds of the farm, and, later, the boundaries of the state.

. . . Each Latin tribe had its ancestral deity. The war god, Mars, was at first the special god of Rome. But at the head of all the tribal gods of Latium stood Jupiter (Father Jove); and when Rome became the central Latin power, Jupiter became the center of the Roman religion.

LESSON XXIV

REVIEW LESSON

46. Review of Second Declension Words in *-us* and *-er*.

	Singular			*Endings*
	Puer parvus	Ager noster	Nauta bonus	
Base:	puer- parv-	agr- nostr-	naut- bon-	
Nom.:	puer parvus	ager noster	nauta bonus	-us or -er
Gen.:	puerī parvī	agrī nostrī	nautae bonī	-ī
Dat.:	puerō parvō	agrō nostrō	nautae bonō	-ō
Acc.:	puerum parvum	agrum nostrum	nautam bonum	-um
Abl:	puerō parvō	agrō nostrō	nautā bonō	-ō
		Plural		
Nom.:	puerī parvī	agrī nostrī	nautae bonī	-ī
Gen.:	puerōrum parvōrum	agrōrum nostrōrum	nautārum bonōrum	-ōrum
Dat.:	puerīs parvīs	agrīs nostrīs	nautīs bonīs	-īs
Acc.:	puerōs parvōs	agrōs nostrōs	nautās bonōs	-ōs
Abl.:	puerīs parvīs	agrīs nostrīs	nautīs bonīs	-īs

47. The Conjugation of Verbs.

Present	Past	Future
	First Conjugation	
laudō	laudābam	laudābō
laudās	laudābās	laudābis
laudat	laudābat	laudābit
laudāmus	laudābāmus	laudābimus
laudātis	laudābātis	laudābitis
laudant	laudābant	laudābunt

Present	Past	Future
	Second Conjugation	
moneō	monēbam	monēbō
monēs	monēbās	monēbis
monet	monēbat	monēbit
monēmus	monēbāmus	monēbimus
monētis	monēbātis	monēbitis
monent	monēbant	monēbunt
	Esse	
sum	eram	erō
es	erās	eris
est	erat	erit
sumus	erāmus	erimus
estis	erātis	eritis
sunt	erant	erunt

Present Imperative

First Conjugation	Second Conjugation	Esse
laudā	monē	es
laudāte	monēte	este

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Translate the following words:

1. *Nouns*

First Declension

amīcitia	fuga	tabula

Second Declension

A. Nouns in -us

captīvus	gladius	numerus	Rōmānī
Gallī	Horātius	oculus	socius

B. Noun in **–er**, *gen.* **–ri**

magister

C. Noun with Special Form

vir

2. *Adjectives* (*masculine and feminine forms*)

A. Adjectives in **–us**, **–a**

fīnitimus	**īrātus**	**paucī**	**perītus**
superbus	**tūtus**	**vērus**	

B. Adjectives in **–er**, **–ra**

impiger **integer**

3. *Verbs*

First Conjugation

cōnfirmō	**iuvō**	**parō**	**servō**
convocō	**ōrō**	**putō**	**vāstō**

Second Conjugation

doleō	**gaudeō**	**rīdeō**	**terreō**

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

crās	**dē**	**nunc**	**quandō?**	**quid?**

5. *Idiom*

amīcitiam cōnfirmāre

(*b*) Divide all the words in (*a*) into syllables, indicating which one must be accented.

(*c*) Answer the following questions and illustrate your answers:

1. What cases does the ending **–ī** indicate?
2. How does the genitive plural of the first declension differ from that of the second?

3. (*a*) What is the common ending of the dative and the ablative plural of both declensions? (*b*) By what case is the preposition **dē** followed?

4. How does the accusative plural of the second declension differ from that of the first?

5. What is the meaning of the term "vocative"?

6. What is the ending of the vocative singular of (*a*) nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the second declension; (*b*) of proper nouns in **-ius**; (*c*) of **fīlius** and **meus**; (*d*) of any other noun singular or plural?

7. What is the tense sign of the future?

8. How are the futures of the first and second conjugations, active voice, formed?

9. Is the future of **esse** formed regularly?

10. How is the present imperative of the first and second conjugations in the active voice formed?

11. What is the present imperative of **esse**?

12. What Latin words are suggested by the following English words:

virile, numerous, oculist, gladiator, table, deride, pugnacious, caress, vocative, dative, gaudy, expert, viaduct, procrastinate?

II. Written.

(*a*) Write all the case forms, including the vocative, of the following Latin words:

(1) in the singular: **Horātius poēta**;

(2) in both numbers: **populus fīnitimus, magister perītus, incola īrātus**;

(3) in the plural: **paucī amīcī**.

(*b*) Give the present, past, future, and the present imperative of: 1. **Sociōs servāre.** 2. **Captīvōs terrēre.**

(*c*) Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns* (*nominative and genitive singular*)

ally	flight	Horace	the Romans
captive	friendship	man	sword
eye	the Gauls	map	teacher
		number	

2. *Adjectives* (*masculine and feminine forms*)

angry	industrious	safe	sound
few	neighboring	skillful	true

3. *Verbs* (*1st person singular, and infinitive*)

to beseech	to help	to pray	to save
to devastate	to lament	to prepare	to summon
to establish	to laugh	to rejoice	to think
to frighten			

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

now	to-morrow	what?	when?
		of (about)	

5. *Idiom*

to make a treaty of alliance

LESSON XXV

READING LESSON

DĒ GALLIĀ (Gaul)

Gallia patria Gallōrum erat. Incolae Galliae Gallī erant. Trēs (*three*) populī, Belgae (*the Belgians*), Celtae (*the Celts*), Aquītānī (*the Gascons*) in Galliā habitābant (*live*). Rōmānī suā linguā Celtās Gallōs appellābant (*call, name*).

THE DYING GAUL.

A famous statue in Rome, formerly called the "Dying Gladiator."

Gallia multās et magnās silvās sed paucōs fēcundōs campōs habēbat. Incolae miserī in vīcīs (*hamlet*) parvīs habitābant. In silvīs multae ferae errābant (*prowl*).

Gallia ab ōceanō ad Germāniam et Helvētiam (*Switzerland*) et Ītaliam pertinēbat (*extend*).

Gallī, virī bellicōsī, cum sociīs Rōmānōrum saepe pugnant; Rōmānōs nōn amant; cum Rōmānīs amīcitiam nōn cōnfirmant; sociōs Rōmānōrum terrent.

Mox (*soon*) Rōmānī iniūriās sociōrum suōrum vindicābunt, Gallōs superābunt, Galliam occupābunt; casās dēlēbunt et agrōs vāstābunt et incolās terrēbunt; numerus captīvōrum magnus erit. Vae victīs!

Oral.

Answer the following questions, based on the preceding text:

1. Eratne Germānia patria Gallōrum? 2. Cuius (*of what*) terrae incolae erant? 3. Quī (*what*) populī in Galliā habitābant? 4. Quōs (*whom*) Rōmānī suā linguā Gallōs appellābant? 5. Habēbatne Gallia paucās silvās et multōs fēcundōs campōs? 6. Erantne silvae in Galliā? 7. Quae (*what*) bēstiae in silvīs Galliae errābant? 8. Eratne Gallia magna terra?

9. Suntne Gallī bellicōsī? 10. Quibuscum (*with whom*) saepe pugnant? 11. Amantne Rōmānōs? 12. Suntne sociī Rōmānōrum? 13. Quōs Gallī terrent? 14. Quid Rōmānī vindicābunt? 15. Quem (*what*) populum superābunt? 16. Quam (*what*) terram occupābunt? 17. Quid dēlēbunt? 18. Quid vāstābunt? 19. Quōs terrēbunt?

Note. The preceding text or part of it may be used for drill in dictation.

COLLATERAL READING

Gaul

Gaul was the name of two distinct regions. One was *Cisalpine Gaul* (that is, Gaul this side of the Alps, from the Roman standpoint), which included northern Italy and was for a long time peopled by Gallic tribes (see Collateral Reading, page 61). It became a Roman possession in 222 B.C.

The other was *Transalpine Gaul* (that is, Gaul beyond the Alps, from the Roman standpoint), which was bounded by the Alps, the Pyrenees, the ocean, and the Rhine. It was peopled by numerous warlike tribes, and covered with immense forests. Most of this was conquered by Caesar

ROMAN RUINS IN GAUL.

This is known as the Imperial Palace at Treves (Trier) on the Moselle. It shows how elaborately the Romans built, even in the provinces.

(58–50 B.C.) and enjoyed real prosperity under the Roman Empire, which protected it from German invasions, built in it many great public works, roads, aqueducts, temples, amphitheaters, triumphal arches, etc., and founded or developed such large towns as Lyons, Arles, Toulouse, Bordeaux, Orleans, and Lutetia Parisiorum (the old name of Paris).

LESSON XXVI

SECOND DECLENSION. VERB *ESSE*

48. Gender. — There are three genders in Latin as in English: masculine, feminine, and neuter. The second declension includes nouns in **–us** and **–er** (all used in these lessons are masculine), and nouns in **–um** (all are neuter).

49. Nominative, Genitive, and Accusative Neuter Singular of the Second Declension. — The nominative and accusative singular of neuter nouns and adjectives of the second declension have a common ending: **–um**.

The genitive singular ends in **–ī**, like that of the nouns and adjectives in **–us** and **–er**. It is formed by replacing the ending **–um** of the nominative singular by **–ī**. See § 31, note.

Templum pulchrum est. subject predicate adjective	*The temple is beautiful.*
Fāma templī antīquī magna est. genitive case descriptive adjective	*The fame of the ancient temple is great.*
Templum pulchrum videō. direct object descriptive adjective	*I see the beautiful temple.*

50. Perfect Tense. — The endings of the perfect indicative of *every* Latin verb in the active voice are:

	Singular	Plural
1st	person: **-ī**	**-imus**
2d	person: **-istī**	**-istis**
3d	person: **-it**	**-ērunt**

TEMPLUM PULCHRUM EST.

This temple at Nîmes in Southern France is the best preserved Roman temple in the world.

PERFECT INDICATIVE OF **esse**, *to be;* perfect stem: **fu-**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
(I was or I have been lazy, etc.)	
piger (m.), **pigra** (f.) **fu'ī**	**pigrī** (m.), **pigrae** (f.) **fu'imus**
piger (m.), **pigra** (f.) **fuis'tī**	**pigrī** (m.), **pigrae** (f.) **fuis'tis**
piger (m.), **pigra** (f.) **fu'it**	**pigrī** (m.), **pigrae** (f.) **fuē'runt**

Note. The past is also called the *imperfect* or the *past descriptive* to distinguish it from the perfect. It denotes verbal action as unfinished or habitual: **piger eram**, I was lazy, in the sense that *I used to be lazy*, I continued to be, it was a habit. The perfect, on the other hand, denotes single or finished verbal action: **piger fuī**, *I have been lazy, I was lazy* at one time, but perhaps I'm not lazy now.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
op'pidum, –ī	*town*	
perī'culum, –ī	*danger*	peril
proe'lium, –lī	*combat*	
sig'num, –ī	*sign, signal*	signify
tem'plum, –ī	*temple*	templar
antī'quus, –a, –um [1]	*ancient*	antique
Grae'cus, –a, –um	*Greek*	Graeco-Roman
mag'nus, –a, –um	*large, great*	magnitude
nos'ter, –tra, –trum	*our*	paternoster
no'vus, –a, –um	*new*	novice
pū'blicus, –a, –um	*public*	publicist
pul'cher, –chra, –chrum	*beautiful, handsome, fine*	pulchritude

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

sumus, eris, erant, fuimus, erimus, es, fuistī, sunt, fuērunt, erō, fuistis, abes, adfuī, aderunt, āfuī (instead of **abfuī**).

(*b*) Translate the following expressions, and explain the agreement of every adjective:

ager magnus, silva magna, oppidum magnum, puerum pulchrum, rosam pulchram, templum pulchrum, glōria Rōmae antīquae, fāma templī antīquī.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Proelium longum fuit.
2. Cassius signum proelī dat.

[1] Henceforth the feminine and neuter forms of every adjective will follow the masculine form: **antīquus, antīqua, antīquum.**

3. Templum pūblicum magnum fuit.
4. Perīculum nōn timētis.
5. Templum novum pulchrum est.
6. Fāma templī Graecī magna erat.
7. Puerī templum antīquum vidēbunt.
8. Oppidum magnum vidēbitis.
9. Incolae oppidī antīquī laetī fuērunt.
10. Adfuimus; nōn adfuistis.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*), (1) the neuter singular nominatives; (2) the neuter singular accusatives; (3) the neuter singular genitives, and explain their uses.

II. **Oral and Written.**

(*a*) (1) On the model of **magnus**, m., **magna**, f., **magnum**, n., give the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms, nominative case, of:

bonus, longus, lātus, laetus, cārus, parvus, meus, tuus, suus, perītus, tardus, tūtus;

(2) on the model of **pulcher**, m., **pulchra**, f., **pulchrum**, n., give the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms, nominative case, of:

noster, niger, vester, piger, impiger, sacer, integer;

(3) form a few sentences, using some of these adjectives in connection with neuter nouns, such as **templum, oppidum, perīculum, proelium, signum.**

(*b*) Give the genitive and accusative singular of:

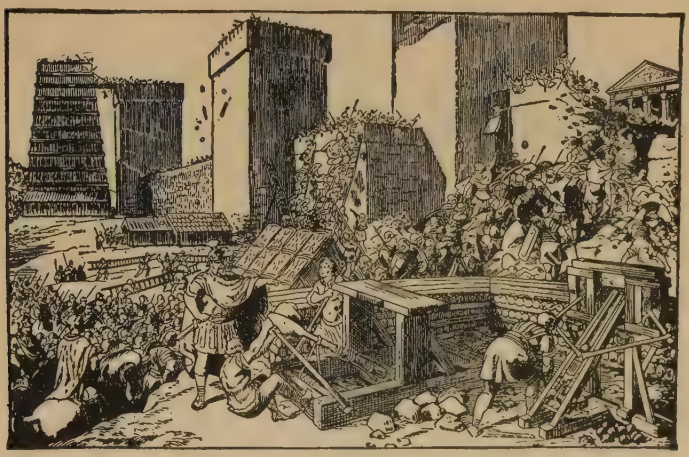
oppidum parvum, perīculum novum, templum sacrum, proelium longum, signum bonum.

(*c*) Give the present and perfect of:

1. **Cum amīcīs esse.** 2. **Nōn semper adesse.**

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by (*a*) the present; (*b*) the perfect; (*c*) the past; (*d*) the future of **esse**:

1. Ego cum magistrō ——. 2. Vōs perītī ——. 3. Nōs laetī ——. 4. Oppidum nōtum ——. 5. Tardus ——, mī amīce.



RŌMĀNĪ OPPIDUM OPPUGNANT.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, using the perfect tense when the verb form is italicized, and marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I am, I used to be, he *was*, we shall not be, they are, we *were*, she *was* present, they *were* absent.

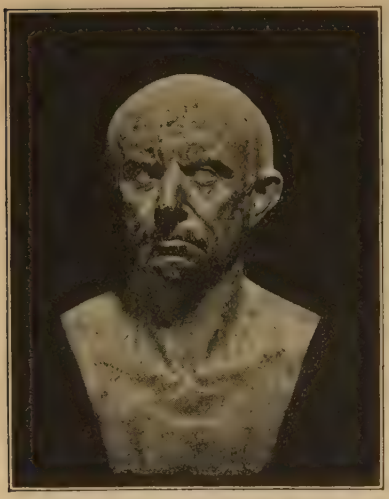
(*b*) 1. The beautiful temple was new.
2. The town was small but famous.
3. The danger of the town *was* great.
4. He will not see the new signal.
5. I see the ancient temple.
6. The inhabitants of the large town *were* safe.
7. You (singular) will give the signal of the combat.
8. She praises the fame of the public temple.

9. You *were* away, but I *was* present.
10. The allies of the famous town *were* many.
11. They were fearing a new danger.
12. We shall see a long combat.

READING LESSON

Rōmānī Oppidum Dēlent

Oppidum antīquum et nōtum est. Rōmānī oppidum oppugnant (*besiege*). Incolae oppidī antīquī perīculum timent. Perīculum oppidī magnum est. Tubae (*trumpet*) signum proelī dant. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum multae sunt, incolae paucī sunt. Rōmānī oppidum expugnant (*take by storm*). Incolās miserōs oppidī fugant (*put to flight*) aut (*or*) necant (*kill*). Cōpiae Rōmānōrum casās et templum oppidī dēlent. Templum novum erat; templum novum nōtum erat; parvum sed pulchrum erat. Fāma templī novī magna erat.



Catō.

This is the old Roman who used to end all his speeches in the Senate with the words: "Carthage must be blotted out."

COLLATERAL READING

Carthage[1] "Blotted Out"

. . . The Roman fleet and army proceeded to Carthage, and played out an act of masterful treachery by successive steps.

[1] Carthage, an ancient Phoenician colony on the finest harbor in North Africa, the great rival of Rome.

First, at the demand of the Roman general, Carthage sent as hostages to the Roman camp three hundred boys of the noblest families. . . . Then, on further command, the city dismantled its walls and stripped its arsenal. . . . Next, the shipping was all surrendered. Finally, now that the city was supposed to be utterly defenseless, came the announcement that it must be destroyed and the people removed to

CARTHAGE.

View of the citadel across the commercial harbor. Compare this with the pictures on pages 82, 191, 241, and 295.

some spot *ten miles inland*, away from the sea from which, from dim antiquity, they had drawn their living.

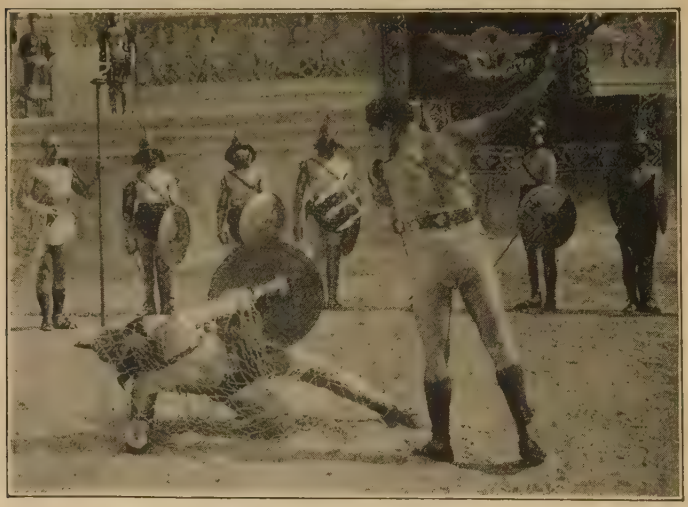
Despair blazed into passionate wrath, and the Carthaginians chose death rather than ruin and exile, . . . and, to the angry dismay of Rome, Carthage stood a four years' siege, holding out heroically against famine, pestilence, and war.

At last the legions forced their way over the walls. . . . Then, *by express orders from Rome*, the city was burned to the ground, and its site was plowed up, sown to salt, and cursed.

LESSON XXVII

SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST CONJUGATION

51. The Dative and Ablative Singular of neuter nouns and adjectives of the second declension have the common ending **–ō**. They are formed like the same cases of words ending in **–us** and **–er** (see § 35).



IN PERĪCULŌ MAGNŌ EST.

Praesidiō parvō frūmentum damus. *We give grain to the small garrison.*

indirect object — descriptive adjective

In perīculō magnō est. *He is in great danger.*

ablative of place — descriptive adjective

52. The Perfect Stem of a verb is obtained by dropping the vowel **–ī** of the perfect indicative, first singular: **laudāvī**; perfect stem: **laudāv–**.

The perfect indicative of all verbs is formed by adding to the perfect stem (**laudāv–**) the personal endings: **–ī, –istī, –it, –imus, –istis, –ērunt** (see § 50).

PERFECT OF **laudāre**, *to praise*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
(I praised or I have praised the garrison, etc.)	
praesidium laudā′vī	**praesidium laudā′vimus**
praesidium laudāvis′tī	**praesidium laudāvis′tis**
praesidium laudā′vit	**praesidium laudāvē′runt**

Exceptions. All the verbs of the first conjugation met so far are conjugated like **laudāre**, except two: **dare** and **iuvāre**, whose principal parts [1] are:

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT	PAST PARTICIPLE
dō	**dare**	**dedī**	**datus**
iuvō	**iuvāre**	**iūvī**	**iūtus**

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
bel′lum, –ī	*war*	bellicose, belligerent
frūmen′tum, –ī	*grain*	
praesi′dium, –dī	*garrison*	presidio
tu′ba, –ae	*trumpet*	tube
i′bi	*there*	alibi
col′locō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus	*place*	collocate
oc′cupō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus	*occupy*	occupation

[1] Henceforth the principal parts will be given in the special vocabularies in this same order.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the perfect stem of:

vocāre, mōnstrāre, parāre, labōrāre, nārrāre, nūntiāre, dare, iuvāre, collocāre.

TUBA.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

vocāvimus, convocāvistis, occupāvit, parāvistī, servāvī, dedistis, iūvērunt, collocāvimus.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. In templō nōtō fuimus.
2. Incolae oppidī in perīculō magnō fuērunt.
3. Bellum longum parāvimus.
4. Praesidiō victōriam nūntiāvī.
5. Tubae sīgnum proelī dedērunt.
6. Ē perīculō novō sociōs servāvistis.
7. Cōpia magna frūmentī in oppidō parvō erat.
8. Incolīs miserīs frūmentum dedimus.
9. Sociōs Rōmānōrum nōn iūvistī.
10. Cassius lēgātus oppidum occupāvit et ibi praesidium collocāvit.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*), (1) the datives; (2) the ablatives, and explain their uses.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular:

frūmentum bonum, bellum magnum, praesidium parvum.

(*b*) Review. Add the suitable singular endings:

1. In templ— Graec— erat. 2. Puellae perīcul— (direct object) timent. 3. Praesidi— (direct object) ibi collocāvit. 4. Cassium ē perīcul— magn— servāvērunt. 5. Incolae in oppid— nōn sunt.

(*c*) Write the perfect of:

1. **Oppidum occupāre.** 2. **Signum proelī dare.**

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by (*a*) the present; (*b*) the perfect; (*c*) the future; (*d*) the past indicative of the italicized infinitive.

1. *Esse:* Puerī in templō ——.
2. *Occupāre:* Rōmānī oppidum ——.
3. *Dare:* Nōs oppidō frūmentum ——.
4. *Collocāre:* Vōs praesidium in oppidō ——.
5. *Parāre:* Tū bellum ——.
6. *Iuvāre:* Incolae sociōs nostrōs ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, using the perfect in every sentence, and marking all long vowels:

(*a*) They called, he showed, I did not give, she helped, you (singular) placed, we announced, you have occupied.

(*b*) 1. The Romans prepared a new war.
2. The danger of war was great.
3. Our town was in a new danger.
4. The garrison was in the town.
5. I placed a small garrison there.
6. They gave grain to their friends.
7. He rescued his allies from a new danger.
8. We helped the wretched garrison.
9. You (singular) did not announce our great victory to the inhabitants of the town.
10. The troops of the Romans occupied our country.

READING LESSON

Rōmānī et Gallī

Gallī gaudēbant; laetī erant; bellum parābant. Cōpiam frūmentī habēbant. Rōmānī quoque bellum parābant. Oppidum magnum occupāvērunt et ibi praesidium collocāvērunt. Oppidum antīquum erat et templum pulchrum ibi erat.

A Restoration of the Forum Looking Northwest.
Compare this with the pictures on pages xxv, 31, 112, and 161.

Gallī tubā longā signum proelī dedērunt et gladiīs magnīs pugnāvērunt. Rōmānī in perīculō magnō erant, sed nōn timēbant. Gallī campum Rōmānōrum occupāvērunt et agrōs vastāvērunt, Rōmānī tūtī in oppidō manēbant.

Crās Gallī cum Rōmānīs amīcitiam cōnfirmābunt.

COLLATERAL READING

The Early Latins

The Latins called their district Latium . . . and the straggling village *Alba Longa* (The Long White Town) was

the recognized leader of the Latin tribes in war . . . against the powerful Etruscans across the Tiber. . . . But in many ways those dangerous neighbors had become necessary to Latin comfort. The Latins themselves were peasant farmers. There were no smiths or artisans among them. If a farmer needed a plowshare or a knife, he drove an ox across the plain to the bank of the Tiber, or sometimes carried grain there, to trade it to some Etruscan for the tool.

. . . About 12 miles up the Tiber from its mouth, . . . the river could be crossed by a ford. . . . To this place Etruscan traders very early began to bring wares of metal and wood on regular " market days," . . . and to the same point the Sabines from the foothills of the Apennines floated down their wine and grain on flat barges. Just south of the ford rose a remarkable group of seven low hills. The level space between these hills, opening on the river, became the regular marketplace, or *Forum*, for all this trade.

LESSON XXVIII

SECOND DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

53. (*a*) **The Nominative and Accusative Neuter Plural** of the second declension have a common ending (**–a**). They are formed by replacing the ending **–ī** of the genitive singular by **–a.**

(*b*) **The Genitive Neuter Plural** ends in **–ōrum.** It is formed like that of the other nouns of the second declension (see § 39).

TEMPLA GRAECA ANTĪQUA SUNT.

Templa	**Graeca**	**antīqua**	**sunt.**	*The Greek temples are ancient.*
subject	descriptive adjective	predicate adjective		
Templa	**Graeca**	**videō.**		*I see Greek temples.*
direct object	descriptive adjective			
Fāmam templōrum		**Graecōrum**	**laudō.**	*I praise the fame of the Greek temples.*
	genitive case	descriptive adjective		

54. The Perfect of the Second Conjugation is formed, like that of the first, by adding the personal endings of the perfect to the perfect stem (see § 52). The perfect stem of the second conjugation usually ends in **-u**.

PERFECT OF **monēre**, *to warn;* perfect stem: **monu-**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
(I warned or have warned the inhabitants, etc.)	
incolās mo'nuī	**incolās monu'imus**
incolās monuis'tī	**incolās monuis'tis**
incolās mo'nuit	**incolās monuē'runt**

Exceptions: The verbs of the second conjugation met so far have the perfect formed on the model of **monuī**, with the following exceptions:

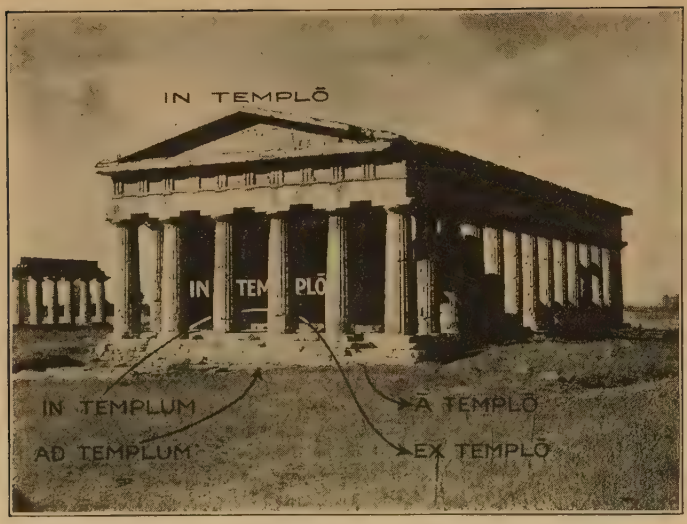
dēleō	**dēlēre**	**dēlēvī**	**dēlētus**
moveō	**movēre**	**mōvī**	**mōtus**
rīdeō	**rīdēre**	**rīsī**	**rīsus**
videō	**vidēre**	**vīdī**	**vīsus**

The perfect of **gaudēre** is especially irregular and will be given and explained later.

55. Place. In general, place is expressed as follows:

(*a*) Place *in, at,* or *on* which — **in** with the ablative case.
(*b*) Place *from* which — **ā** or **ab** with the ablative case.
(*c*) Place *out of* which — **ē** or **ex** with the ablative case.
(*d*) Place *into* which — **in** with the accusative case.
(*e*) Place *to* which — **ad** with the accusative case.

(*a*) **In templō est.** *He is in* (or *on*) *the temple.*
(*b*) **Ā templō properat.** *He hastens from the temple.*
(*c*) **Ex templō properat.** *He hastens out of the temple.*
(*d*) **In templum properat.** *He hastens into the temple.*
(*e*) **Ad templum properat.** *He hastens to the temple.*



PLACE USES IN LATIN.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
ar′ma, **–ōrum** (plur.)	*arms, weapons*	army
cas′tra, **–ōrum** (plur.)	*camp*	Chester
de′us, **–ī**	*god*	deity
dō′num, **–ī**	*gift*	donation
exem′plum, **–ī**	*example*	exemplary
Labiē′nus, **–ī**	*Labienus* (a proper name)	
ad (with accusative)	*to, toward*	*ad*mit
pro′perō, **–ā′re**, **–ā′vī**, **–ā′tus**	*hasten*	
prōvi′deō, **–ē′re**, **prōvī′dī**, **prōvī′sus**	*foresee*	provide
cas′tra movē′re	*break up camp*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the perfect stem of:

habēre, timēre, tenēre, dēbēre, dolēre, terrēre, dēlēre (see § 54, Exceptions), **movēre, vidēre.**

(*b*) Identify and translate:

dēbuistī, habuērunt, timuimus, terruistis, tenuit, mōvī, dēlēvērunt, vīdimus.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Multa et bona exempla habuimus.
2. Perīcula nova incolās oppidōrum terruērunt.
3. Labiēnus lēgātus castra mōvit.
4. Perīcula proeliōrum nōn timuistī.
5. Rōmānī multa oppida Gallōrum dēlēvērunt.
6. Bellum novum prōvīdī et virōs ad arma convocāvī.
7. Amīcī vērī dōna deōrum sunt.
8. Numerus templōrum antīquōrum in Ītaliā magnus est.
9. Iniūriās vestrās (in) memoriā tenuimus.
10. Ex agrō ad templum properāvimus.
11. Ab agrō in templum properat.
12. Arma ex casā in castra movēbunt.
13. Arma ā casā ad castra movēmus.

(*d*) Indicate in (*c*): (1) the nominatives; (2) the accusatives; (3) the genitives; (4) the place uses.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give (1) the nominative, genitive, and accusative plural of:

exemplum bonum, dōnum grātum, oppidum novum, perīculum magnum;

(2) the genitive and accusative of:

multa arma, castra nostra.

(*b*) Review. Put in the plural:

1. Templum oppidī nōtum est. 2. Amīcō dōnum dedit. 3. Bellum nōn timeō. 4. Novum perīculum oppidum terret. 5. Vīta bonī virī exemplum bonum semper fuit.

(*c*) Review. Put the italicized words in the singular:

1. *Dōna grāta sunt.* 2. *Proelia longa erant.* 3. *Rōmānī bella amābant.* 4. *Exempla mala* esse nōn *dēbent.* 5. *Templa* Deī vērī *sacra sunt.* 6. Fāma *oppidōrum Graecōrum antīquōrum* magna fuit.

(*d*) Write the perfect of:

1. **Perīcula timēre.** 2. **Castra movēre.**

(*e*) Review. Replace the present by (1) the perfect; (2) the past; (3) the future:

1. Bellum timēmus. 2. Multōs amīcōs habeō. 3. Perīculum magnum incolās oppidī terret. 4. Templa Rōmāna antīqua vidētis.

III. **Written.**

Translate into Latin, putting every past tense in the perfect and marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I had, he warned, they frightened, you (singular) did not fear, we destroyed, he saw, you moved.

(*b*) 1. We had many gifts.

2. Examples ought always to be good.

3. They feared great dangers.

4. He foresaw new wars.

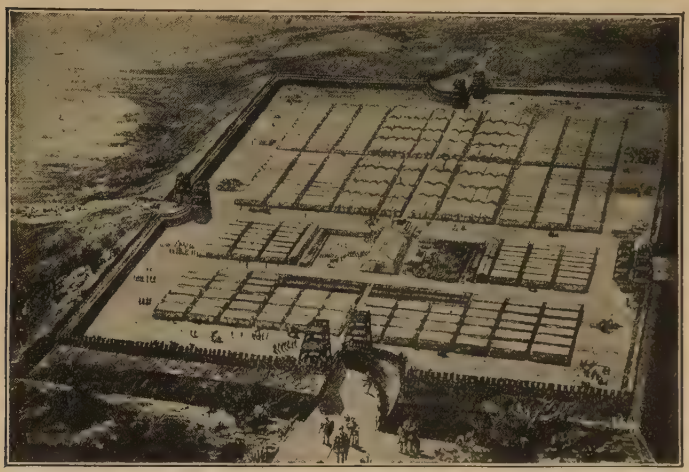
5. The dangers of a long war frightened the towns.

6. A true friend is a pleasant gift of God.

7. The temples of the Roman gods were sacred.

8. We shall move the arms out of the town into the camp.

9. The fame of the ancient Roman temples was great.
10. Labienus hastened from (his) house to the camp.
11. The lieutenant did not break up camp.
12. The number of famous ancient towns in Italy was great.



CASTRA RŌMĀNA.

READING LESSON

I

IOCUS RŌMĀNUS (A Roman Joke)

Cicerō [1] facētus (*witty*) erat. Quondam (*once*) Lentulum (*Lentulus*, a proper name), generum (gener, –erī,[2] *son-in-law*) suum, parvae statūrae (*height*) virum, longō gladiō accīnctum (*girded*) vīdit. "Quis," inquit (*said he*), "generum meum ad gladium alligāvit (*tie*)?"

---

[1] **Cicerō, -ōnis** (third declension), Cicero, the great Roman orator (106–43 B.C.).

[2] Note that this noun keeps the **e** when inflected, like **puer** and **miser** (see footnote, p. 78).

II

Mārcus et Pōma (Marcus and the Fruits)

Mārcus, fīlius agricolae, puer bonus erat, sed malōs amīcōs habēbat. Agricola exempla mala amīcōrum Mārcī timuit et puerum monuit, "Perīculum, ō mī fīlī, prōvidē; amīcōs tuōs renūntiā (*give up*); multa mala exempla habēs." Sed Mārcus rīsit, "Exemplum meum meōs malōs amīcōs mūtābit (*reform*)."

Agricola nōn respondit (*answer*). Mārcō fīliō suō magnum numerum pōmōrum dedit. Multa pōma bona sed pauca mala erant. Dōnum puerum dēlectāvit, sed mox (*soon*) pauca mala pōma bona vitiāvērunt (*spoil*).

Tum agricola Mārcum monuit, "Pauca mala pōma bona vitiant. Sīc (*Thus*) amīcī malī bonum puerum vitiābunt."

Mārcus amīcōs malōs renūntiāvit.

COLLATERAL READING

The Roman Camp

The Roman camp was characteristic of a people whose colonies were garrisons. Where the army encamped — even if for a single night — there grew up in an hour a fortified city, with earth walls and regular streets. This system allowed the Romans often "to conquer by sitting still," declining or giving battle at their own option; while, too, when they did fight, they did so "under the walls of their city," with a fortified and guarded refuge in their rear.

The importance of these camps, as the sites and foundation plans of cities over Europe, is shown by the frequency of the Roman word *castra* (camp) in English place-names, as in *Chester*, *Rochester*, *Winchester*, *Dorchester*, *Manchester*, and so on.

LESSON XXIX

SECOND DECLENSION. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

56. The Dative and Ablative Neuter Plural of the Second Declension have the common ending **-īs**. They are formed like those of other nouns of the second declension (see § 43).

Praesidiīs parvīs frūmentum dedimus. *We gave grain to the small garrisons.*

indirect object — descriptive adjective

Pīlīs pugnābant. *They were fighting with javelins.*

ablative of means

GLADIUS ET PĪLUM.

"Thine, Roman, be the pilum,
Roman, the sword be thine!" — MACAULAY.

57. The Past Perfect (-eram). — The past perfect of any verb in the active voice is formed by adding the past of **esse** to the perfect stem.

PAST PERFECT[1]

esse	**laudāre**	**monēre**
(I had been in town, etc.)	(I had praised the Gauls, etc.)	(I had warned the boy, etc.)
in oppidō fu'eram	**Gallōs laudā'veram**	**puerum monu'eram**
in oppidō fu'erās	**Gallōs laudā'verās**	**puerum monu'erās**

[1] Remember that the perfect stem of **esse** is **fu-**; of **laudāre**, **laudāv-**; of **monēre**, **monu-**.

esse	laudāre	monēre
in oppidō fu'erat	Gallōs laudā'verat	puerum monu'erat
in oppidō fuerā'mus	Gallōs laudāverā'mus	puerum monuerā'mus
in oppidō fuerā'tis	Gallōs laudāverā'tis	puerum monuerā'tis
in oppidō fu'erant	Gallōs laudā'verant	puerum monu'erant

58. Synopsis. — The synopsis of **esse**, **laudāre**, and **monēre**, in the first person singular of the tenses learned so far, is as follows:

Present	Past	Future	Perfect	Past Perfect
sum	eram	erō	fuī	fueram
laudō	laudābam	laudābō	laudāvī	laudāveram
moneō	monēbam	monēbō	monuī	monueram

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
fac'tum, –ī	*fact, deed*	factor
pī'lum, –ī	*javelin*	pile
ver'bum, –ī	*word*	verb
glōriō'sus, –a, –um	*glorious*	glorify

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

fuī, vocāvistī, timuerat, fuerāmus, labōrāverātis, terruerant, vīderās, mōveram.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Cōpiae Labiēnī lēgātī in castrīs erant.
2. In perīculīs magnīs fuerātis.
3. Incolās oppidōrum nōn monueram.
4. Rōmānī gladiīs et pīlīs pugnant.
5. Sociī oppidīs frūmentum dederant.

6. Praesidiīs Rōmānīs victōriam nostram nūntiāverātis.
7. Puerīs facta glōriōsa bellī nārrāverās.
8. Factīs, nōn verbīs, sociōs nostrōs iūverāmus.
9. Cassius lēgātus oppida occupāverat et ibi praesidia collocāverat.

RESTORATION OF THE FORUM LOOKING SOUTHEAST.
Compare this with the other pictures of the Forum.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*): (1) the datives; (2) the ablatives, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in both numbers:

factum novum, verbum longum, proelium glōriōsum.

(*b*) Review. Supply the proper endings (1) in the singular; (2) in the plural:

1. Oppid— (indirect object) victōriam nūntiāvī. 2. Ē perīcul— (ablative of separation) amīcōs servant. 3. Lēgātus praesidi— (indirect object) arma dedit.

(*c*) Write the perfect and past perfect of:

1. **In templō esse.** 2. **Pīlīs pugnāre.** 3. **Bellum timēre.** 4. **Perīcula prōvidēre.**

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the perfect; (2) the past perfect of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Esse:* Cōpiae in castrīs ——.
2. *Timēre:* Gallī bellum nōn ——.
3. *Convocāre:* Cassius virōs ad arma ——.
4. *Terrēre:* Perīculum rēgīnam nōn ——.
5. *Dare:* Ego exemplum bonum semper ——.
6. *Vidēre:* Tū facta glōriōsa Cassī nōn ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) She has been, they had been, I had shown, you had had, I have seen, they had given, she has called, you (singular) had frightened.

(*b*) 1. You had been in many towns.

2. The Gauls had feared a new war.

3. Glorious deeds are always good examples.

4. We fought by (means of) javelins and swords.

5. I had announced the victory of the allies to the neighboring towns.

6. You had frightened the Romans by your glorious deeds.

7. The trumpets had given (to) the garrisons the signal for (Latin genitive) the battle.

8. You (singular) had rescued your allies from great dangers.

9. Your words had quieted the people.

10. We had made a treaty of alliance with many towns.

11. Labienus had moved his camp from the forest into the plain (see § 55).

READING LESSON

Dē Perīculīs Bellī

Invidia (*envy*) causa crēbra bellōrum fuit (fuerat). Tum bella crēbra fuērunt (fuerant). Perīculum bellōrum novōrum magnum fuit (fuerat). Rōmānī cum oppidīs fīnitimīs amīcitiam cōnfirmāvērunt (cōnfirmāverant). Sociōs ad arma convocāvimus (convocāverāmus). Multae cōpiae in castrīs fuērunt (fuerant). Incolae oppidōrum et campōrum bella timuērunt (timuerant). Perīcula oppida et campōs terruērunt (terruerant). Saepe tuba signum proelī dedit (dederat). Bellicōsī fuistis (fuerātis). Bella numquam ego amāvī (amāveram). Proelia crēbra vōs amāvistis (amāverātis). Magister discipulīs facta glōriōsa bellōrum nārrāvit (nārrāverat).

Campōs, Labiēne, vāstāvistī (vāstāverās), multa oppida oppugnāvistī (oppugnāverās), expugnāvistī (expugnāverās), occupāvistī (occupāverās), dēlēvistī (dēlēverās). Templa deōrum nōn sacra fuērunt (fuerant). Cōpiae tuae incolās in templīs necāvērunt (necāverant). In silvīs cum ferīs manēre (*remain*) dēbuimus (dēbuerāmus). Iniūriās bellōrum (in) memoriā semper tenuimus (tenuerāmus).

COLLATERAL READING

Rome Unites Italy

. . . Other states in Italy had suffered by the invasion of the Gauls in 390 B.C., as much as Rome or more. Rome at once stood forth as the champion of Italian civilization against the barbarians and she forced them to withdraw to the Po valley. In return, she seized for herself half of Etruria and much territory elsewhere.

Next Campania and Latium were added to the Roman dominion. The leadership of central Italy now lay between Rome, the great city-state of the lowlands, and the warlike

Samnite tribes, which were spread widely over the southern Apennines. The Samnites built up a great alliance which soon came to contain nearly all the states of Italy, together with the Cisalpine Gauls. But Rome *beat her foes one by one*, before they could unite their forces. By 290 B.C., she had become mistress of all the true peninsula, except the Greek cities of the south.

PYRRHUS.

The great victory at Beneventum (275 B.C.) over Pyrrhus, the chivalrous king of Epirus, gave Rome the sovereignty of Italy. In 266, she rounded off her work by conquering that part of the Cisalpine Gaul which lay south of the Po.

LESSON XXX

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. ADVERBS

59. Agreement of Predicate Adjectives. — (*a*) If the subjects of a verb are of the same gender, the predicate adjective is in the plural of that gender.

FORUM ET TEMPLA PULCHRA SUNT.

Labiēnus et Cassius tūtī sunt. (subjects; predicate adjective)	*Labienus and Cassius are safe.*
Octāvia et fīlia bonae sunt. (subjects; predicate adjective)	*Octavia and (her) daughter are good.*
Forum et templa pulchra sunt. (subjects; predicate adjective)	*The forum and the temples are beautiful.*

(*b*) If the subjects are of different genders, the predicate adjective is

(1) masculine plural when the subjects are beings;

Puer et puella bonī sunt. *The boy and the girl are good.*
subjects — predicate adjective

(2) neuter plural when the subjects are things.

Ager et silva magna sunt. *The field and the forest are large.*
subjects — predicate adjective

60. Formation of Adverbs (**–ē**). — An adverb, derived from an adjective of the first and second declensions (**–us**, or **–er**, **–a**, **–um**), is formed by adding **–ē** to the base.

Adjective	Base	Adverb
lentus, **–a**, **–um** (*slow*)	**lent–**	**lentē**, *slowly*
pulcher, **–a**, **–um**	**pulchr–**	**pulchrē**, *beautifully*

Note. Distinguish such an adverb as **lentē** from the vocative masculine singular of the adjective **lente**. What is the difference?

Note also the irregular form **bene**, *well*, from **bonus**, **–a**, **–um**.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
hor'tus, **–ī**	*garden*	horticulture
prae'mium, **–mī**	*reward*	premium
cer'tus, **–a**, **–um**	*certain, sure*	certify
incer'tus, **–a**, **–um**	*uncertain*	incertitude
be'ne	*well*	benefactor
cer'tē	*certainly*	
len'tē	*slowly*	

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
ma′le [1]	*badly*	malefactor
pul′chrē	*finely, beautifully*	pulchritude
rēc′tē	*(all) right*	rectitude
clā′mō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus	*cry out, shout*	exclaim

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) (1) Give the base of the following adjectives:

lentus, cārus, grātus, rēctus, malus, tardus, vērus, tūtus, pulcher, piger, impiger, integer, miser.

(2) Give the adverb formed from each of them, and translate.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

longē, lātē, pūblicē, glōriōsē, perītē, laetē.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Puer et puella parvī sunt.
2. Dominus et servī nōn tardī fuerant.
3. Domina et serva laetae erant.
4. Ager et hortus parvī sunt.
5. Casa et templum antīqua erant.
6. Agricola et nauta bonī et perītī sunt.
7. Vergilius et Horātius nōtī fuērunt.
8. Casa et hortus magna sunt.
9. Bella et proelia incerta semper erunt.
10. Poēta et fīlia mea certē miserī sunt.
11. Magister noster numquam clāmat, "Bene labōrātis, discipulī, laetus sum; pulchrē! bene! rēctē!" Semper clāmat, "Pigrī estis, discipulī, lentē labōrātis, praemia certē nōn dabō; male! male!"

[1] Note that the **e** of **male** is short by exception, like the **e** of **bene**.

(*d*) (1) Explain the agreement of every adjective in (*c*); (2) point out every adverb in (*c*), and explain its formation.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Supply the proper endings:

1. Fīlia mea et Augusta pulchr— sunt. 2. Ager et silva magn— erant. 3. Cassius et Octāvia parv— sunt.

COURT OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII.
In the distance you can see Vesuvius smoking.

4. Rēgīna et fīliae laet— fuērunt. 5. Agricola et servus nōn tard— erant. 6. Fīlius et fīlia agricolae bon— sunt. 7. Hortus et casa nōn magn— erant. 8. Nautae et agricolae perīt— sunt. 9. Vir et puella tūt— erant. 10. Oppidum et templum nov— sunt. 11. Silva et campus parv— sunt. 12. Glōria et fāma incert— semper erunt.

(*b*) Write the first and second persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of: **saepe clāmāre**.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. Cassius and Octavia are diligent.
2. The farmer and the sailor are not lazy.
3. The man and the girl were joyful.
4. The garden and the field are beautiful.
5. The plain and the forest are large.
6. The temple and the town are ancient.
7. The cottage and the temple were not sacred.
8. The forest and the field are small.
9. The master and the lady of the house are certainly good.
10. My son and your friend were wretched.
11. Boys and girls, be industrious, work well.
12. You (singular) never shout, "Well! All right!" You always shout, "Badly! Badly!"

READING LESSON

Agricola Miser

Fīlius et fīlia vīcīnī (vīcīnus, –ī, *neighbor*) meī impigrī sunt. Servī et servae multī sunt et assiduē (*continually*) labōrant. Saepe clāmat, "Laetus sum, servī meī; assiduē labōrātis; multa praemia dabō; mox multōs servōs līberābō. Bene, pulchrē, labōrāte!" Casa et hortus magna sunt; agrī et prāta (prātum, –ī, *meadow*) fēcunda sunt. Vīcīnus meus multam (multus, –a, –um, *much*) pecūniam parat (*prepare, make*). Beātus (*fortunate*) est.

Sum agricola miser. Mārcus, fīlius meus, et Octāvia, fīlia mea, pigrī sunt. Servī et servae paucī et tardī sunt. Semper clāmō, "Lentē labōrātis, servī; properāte (*hasten*); servīs pigrīs praemia nōn dabō; servōs pigrōs numquam līberābō; malī vōs estis." Hortus et casa parva sunt; prātum et ager nōn fēcunda sunt. Silva prope casam est. Lupī et cēterae (*other*) ferae in silvā multī sunt. Agnī et

SERVĪS PIGRĪS PRAEMIA NŌN DABŌ.

caprae in prātō nōn tūtī sunt. Pecūniam nōn parō. Quis beātus est nisi (*if . . . not*) pecūniōsus (*rich*) est? Semper miser erō. Beātus numquam erō, nam gaudium et fortūna semper mihi (*to me*) inimīca (inimīcus, -a, -um, *hostile*) sunt.

COLLATERAL READING

ROMAN SLAVERY (*Continued;* see page 9)

Besides his town house, each rich Roman had one or more country houses (villas) with all the comforts of the city, — baths, libraries, museums, mosaic pavements, etc.

Commonly a villa was the center of a large farm; and its magnificent luxury found a sinister contrast in the squalid huts, leaning against the walls of the villa grounds in which slept the wretched slaves that tilled the soil and heaped up wealth for the noble master. . . .

Slaves performed also most of the unskilled hand-labor in the towns. A baker or a mason would usually have two or three or a dozen slaves to work under his direction. . . .

The model Roman, Cato, advised his countrymen to work slaves like cattle, selling off the old and infirm. "The slave," he said, "should be always working or sleeping." With brutal masters, there were of course indescribable and inhuman cruelties.

LESSON XXXI

REVIEW LESSON

61. Review of Declension. —

I. Neuter Nouns and Adjectives of the Second Declension

templum antīquum, *the ancient temple*
Base: templ– antīqu–

	Singular	*Endings*	Plural	*Endings*
Nom.:	templum antīquum	–um	templa antīqua	–a
Gen.:	templī antīquī	–ī	templōrum antīquōrum	–ōrum
Dat.:	templō antīquō	–ō	templīs antīquīs	–īs
Acc.:	templum antīquum	–um	templa antīqua	–a
Abl.:	templō antīquō	–ō	templīs antīquīs	–īs

II. First and Second Declension Nouns

	Singular			
Nom.:	via	puer	servus	verbum
Gen.:	viae	puerī	servī	verbī
Dat.:	viae	puerō	servō	verbō
Acc.:	viam	puerum	servum	verbum
Abl.:	viā	puerō	servō	verbō

	Plural			
Nom.:	**viae**	**puerī**	**servī**	**verba**
Gen.:	**viārum**	**puerōrum**	**servōrum**	**verbōrum**
Dat.:	**viīs**	**puerīs**	**servīs**	**verbīs**
Acc.:	**viās**	**puerōs**	**servōs**	**verba**
Abl.:	**viīs**	**puerīs**	**servīs**	**verbīs**

Templum Antīquum.

This shows two Greek temples at Paestum in Southern Italy. Compare this with the Roman temple on page 140.

III. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

laetus, –a, –um, *joyful, happy*

	Singular		
	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.:	**laetus**	**laeta**	**laetum**
Gen.:	**laetī**	**laetae**	**laetī**
Dat.:	**laetō**	**laetae**	**laetō**
Acc.:	**laetum**	**laetam**	**laetum**
Abl.:	**laetō**	**laetā**	**laetō**

PLURAL

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
Nom.:	laetī	laetae	laeta
Gen.:	laetōrum	laetārum	laetōrum
Dat.:	laetīs	laetīs	laetīs
Acc.:	laetōs	laetās	laeta
Abl.:	laetīs	laetīs	laetīs

62. Review of Conjugation. —

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
FIRST CONJUGATION	
laudāvī	laudāveram
laudāvistī	laudāverās
laudāvit	laudāverat
laudāvimus	laudāverāmus
laudāvistis	laudāverātis
laudāvērunt	laudāverant
SECOND CONJUGATION	
monuī	monueram
monuistī	monuerās
monuit	monuerat
monuimus	monuerāmus
monuistis	monuerātis
monuērunt	monuerant
Esse	
fuī	fueram
fuistī	fuerās
fuit	fuerat
fuimus	fuerāmus
fuistis	fuerātis
fuērunt	fuerant

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Translate the following words:

1. *Nouns*

First Declension

tuba

Second Declension

(*a*) *Masculine*

deus	hortus	Labiēnus

(*b*) *Neuter Singular*

bellum	oppidum	proelium
dōnum	perīculum	signum
exemplum	pīlum	templum
factum	praemium	verbum
frūmentum	praesidium	

(*c*) *Neuter Plural*

arma	castra

2. *Adjectives*

antīquus, –a, –um	incertus, –a, –um	Graecus, –a, –um
certus, –a, –um	glōriōsus, –a, –um	pūblicus, –a, –um

3. *Verbs*

First Conjugation

clāmō	collocō	occupō	properō

Second Conjugation

prōvideō

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

ad	**ibi**	**pulchrē**
bene	**lentē**	**rēctē**
certē	**male**	

5. *Idiom*

castra movēre

(*b*) Divide all the words in (*a*) into syllables, indicating which syllable must be accented.

(*c*) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

TUBA SIGNUM DAT.

1. What is the gender of nouns (*a*) in **–us** and **–er**; (*b*) in **–um**?

2. How do their declensions differ?

3. What is the ending of an adjective of the first and second declensions which modifies a neuter noun, nominative singular?

4. What is the gender and number of a predicate adjective modifying (*a*) subjects of the same gender; (*b*) nouns of beings of different genders; (*c*) nouns of things of different genders?

5. How do you form adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declensions?

6. What is the use of the Latin perfect tense?

7. How do you get the perfect stem of any verb?

8. What is the perfect stem of: **collocāre**, **clāmāre**, **occupāre**, **dare**, **habēre**, **prōvidēre**, **movēre**?

9. What are the endings of every perfect tense?

II. Written.

(*a*) Decline (1) in both numbers:

exemplum bonum;

(2) in the plural:

arma mea, castra nostra.

(*b*) Give the perfect and past perfect of:

1. **Ibi praesidium collocāre.** 2. **Castra vidēre.**

(*c*) Translate into Latin the following words, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns* (*nominative and genitive*)

arms	example	gift	reward
camp	fact	god	signal
combat	garden	grain	temple
danger	garrison	javelin	town
war	trumpet	word	

2. *Adjectives* (*masculine, feminine, neuter*)

ancient	glorious	public	uncertain
certain	Greek		

3. *Verbs*

to foresee	to occupy	to place	to shout
to hasten			

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

all right	certainly	slowly	to
badly	finely	there	well

5. *Idiom*

to break up camp

III. Oral and Written.

63. Word Formation. — In the Introduction and in all the Vocabularies the number of English words which are related to Latin is very noticeable. It is interesting to make systematic lists of words related to common Latin roots, like **loc**–, *place*, **voc**–, *call*, **vid**–, **vīs**–, *see*, and so on. Pupils may be graded according to the number of derivatives they can find, the one finding the largest number getting 100, and the others being graded on that scale.

Below are given some sample lists. Make similar lists from other words met so far.

SPECIMEN PAGE OF A DERIVATION NOTE BOOK

Type I (without Definitions)

locō, **locāre**, **locāvī**, **locātus**, *place*	locate, local, locality, location, allocate, allocation, dislocate, localization, localize, locally, locative, locomotive, locomotor.

Type II (with Definitions)

vocō, **vocāre**, **vocāvī**, **vocātus**, *call*	vocation — a calling, occupation vocational — pertaining to a vocation or calling vocal — pertaining to voice evoke — call out convoke — call together vocative — a case of calling, case of address revoke — call back invoke — call upon vociferous — with large calling power, with loud tones invocation — calling upon, a prayer

COLOSSĒUM VIDEŌ.

Type III (with Examples of Use in English)

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see*

vision — Joan of Arc had a vision.
visible — Light makes things visible.
evidence — There was no evidence of fear.
review — There will be a review tomorrow.
provide — Men provide for their future.
supervise — He was to supervise the work.
visual — Many learn by visual instruction.
revise — This book has been revised.

LESSON XXXII

READING LESSON

List of Latin Words,[1] Phrases, and Proverbs often quoted in English literature and conversation.

A

Latin	English
ab initiō	*from the beginning*
ad astra per aspera	*to the stars through difficulties* (motto of the State of Kansas)
ad īnfīnītum	*to infinity, without limit*
ad lībitum	*at pleasure, at will*
ad vītam aeternam	lit., *to eternal life;* freely, *forever*
aequō animō	lit., *with an even mind;* freely, *with equanimity*
annō Christī	*in the year of the Christian era*
annō Dominī	*in the year of (our) Lord*
annō mundī	*in the year of the world*
ante bellum	*before the war*

C

cōram populō	lit., *before the public;* freely, *in public, publicly*

[1] This list is composed (*a*) of words already met; (*b*) of adjectives and nouns belonging to the first and second declensions; (*c*) of verbs of the first and second conjugations. The teacher will show the difference between the English pronunciation and the Roman pronunciation.

D

Latin	English
dē factō	lit., *from the fact;* freely, *present, actual*
dē novō	lit., *from a new . . .;* freely, *anew, afresh*
Deī grātiā	*by the grace of God*
Deō grātiās	lit., *thanks to God;* freely, *God be thanked*

E

et cētera	lit., *and the others;* freely, *and so forth*
ex abruptō	*abruptly*
ex officiō	*by virtue of one's office*
exemplī grātiā (abbreviated **e.g.**)	*for (the sake of an) example*
experientia docet	*experience teaches*

F

facta, nōn verba	*deeds, not words*

I

in extēnsō	*at full length*
in memoriam	*in memory, to the memory (of)*
in propriā persōnā	*in one's own person*

M

montānī semper līberī	*mountaineers (are) always freemen* (motto of the State of West Virginia)
multum in parvō	*much in little*

N

nunc aut numquam	*now or never*

P

Latin	English
pauca sed bona	*few but good*
per annum	*by the year, annually*
persōna grāta	*an acceptable person*
prō bonō pūblicō	*for the public weal*
prō fōrmā	*for form's sake, as a matter of form*

S

sīc semper tyrannīs	*thus ever to tyrants* (motto of the State of Virginia)
sub rosā	lit., *under the rose;* freely, *covertly, secretly*

T

terra firma	lit., *firm ground;* freely, *land (as opposed to water)*
terra incognita	*an unknown land*

V

vae victīs	*woe to the vanquished*
verba volant, scrīpta manent	*spoken words fly, written words remain*
viā (England)	*by way of* (England)
via media	*middle course*

EXERCISE

I. Oral.

(*a*) Cover the right-hand column and have one of the pupils read the Latin phrases while his classmates translate them into English.

(*b*) Cover the left-hand column and have a pupil read the English expressions while the others translate them into Latin.

1. Citadel (Arx).
2. Temple of Jupiter (Capitolinus).
3. "Quays of the Tarquins."
4. Citadel at Janiculum.
5. "Wall of Romulus."
6. Temple of Vesta.
7. Senate House (Curia).
8. Comitium.

RŌMA ANTĪQUA.

COLLATERAL READING

THE ROMAN CHARACTER

Undue praise has been given to the stern excellence of early semi-barbaric Rome. The real picture is by no means without shadows. The Roman was abstemious, haughty, obedient to law, self-controlled; but too often he was also

coarse, cruel, and rapacious. The finest thing in Roman character was the spirit of self-immolation for Rome, — a willingness to sink personal or party advantage for the public weal.

Next to this, and allied to it, is the capacity for organization, for working together for a common end. *Early Roman history is not the history of a few brilliant leaders; it is the story of a people.*

LESSON XXXIII

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE)

64. Ego and Tū. — We have already met the personal pronoun subjects **ego** and **tū** (see § 15). They are declined as follows:

	Ego, *I*	**Tū**, *you* (singular)
Nom.:	**ego**, *I*	**tū**, *you*
Gen.:	**meī**, *of me*	**tuī**, *of you*
Dat.:	**mihi**, *to me*	**tibi**, *to you*
Acc.:	**mē**, *me*	**tē**, *you*
Abl.:	**mē**, *with, from, by*, etc., *me*	**tē**, *with, from, by*, etc., *you*

(*a*) *Reflexive Use.* Note the reflexive use of these personal pronouns in the following sentences:

mē laudō	*I praise myself*
tē laudās	*you praise yourself*

(*b*) *Use with* **cum.** The preposition **cum**, *with*, is affixed to the personal pronouns.

Mēcum, nōn tēcum, labōrat. *He works with me, not with you.*

65. Passive Voice. — (*a*) *The present infinitive* of the passive voice of verbs of the first and second conjugation is formed by replacing final **e** of the present infinitive of the active voice by **-ī.**

Active Voice	Passive Voice
laudāre, *to praise*	**laudārī**, *to be praised*
monēre, *to warn*	**monērī**, *to be warned*

(*b*) *The personal endings* of the passive voice are

Singular	Plural
–r	**–mur**
–ris	**–minī**
–tur	**–ntur**

(*c*) *The present indicative* of any verb in the passive voice is formed by adding the personal endings of the passive voice to the present stem, except in the first person singular. The first person singular is formed by adding –r to the active form with its vowel shortened. Remember that the present stem of **laudāre** is **laudā–**, and of **monēre**, **monē–**.

Present Indicative of **laudārī**, *to be praised*, and **monērī**, *to be warned*

First Conjugation	Second Conjugation
(I am praised by the teacher, etc.)	(I am warned by a friend, etc.)
Ā magistrō lau′dor	**Ab amīcō mo′neor**
Ā magistrō laudā′ris	**Ab amīcō monē′ris**
Ā magistrō laudā′tur	**Ab amīcō monē′tur**
Ā magistrō laudā′mur	**Ab amīcō monē′mur**
Ā magistrō laudā′minī	**Ab amīcō monē′minī**
Ā magistrō laudan′tur	**Ab amīcō monen′tur**

66. Ablative of Agent. — Note that the name of the personal agent is put in the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab** (before consonants), **ab** (before vowels or *h*).

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
prōvin′cia, –ae	*province*	provincial
mul′tus, –a, –um	*much*	multitude

PORTA NIGRA IN PRŌVINCIĀ.

This is the famous Porta Nigra or *Black Gate* at Treves (Trier). See page 138. This is another good example of Rome's elaborate building in the provinces.

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
commo′veō, –ē′re, –mō′vī, –mō′tus	*disturb, alarm*	commotion
iu′beō, –ē′re, ius′sī, ius′sus	*order*	
prae′beō,[1] –ē′re, –uī, –itus	*offer, show*	
remo′veō, –ē′re, –mō′vī, –mō′tus	*move back, withdraw*	remove, remote
mē lau′dō	*I praise myself*	laudatory
mē super′bum prae′beō	*I show myself haughty, I display haughtiness*	
sī	*if*	

[1] **Praebēre** is the abbreviation of **prae-habēre.**

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

vocāris, iubeor, pācāmur, timēminī, convocantur, commovēris, vāstātur.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Amīcī ab amīcīs iuvantur.
2. Ā magistrō laudāminī, sī bene labōrātis.
3. Ego et tū properāre iubēmur.
4. Incolae prōvinciae ad arma convocantur.
5. Perīculīs nōn commoveor.
6. Pecūnia mihi ā tē dēbētur.
7. Ā Cassiō et Labiēnō lēgātīs monēmur.
8. Prōvincia ā Rōmānīs occupātur.
9. Tēcum, nōn mēcum, pugnant.
10. Bonī ā malīs numquam amantur.
11. Magister tē, nōn mē, laudat.
12. Tibi magna praemia, parva semper mihi dantur.
13. Tū ab amīcīs iuvāris, ego nōn iuvor.
14. Tū tē semper laudās; tū tē superbum certē praebēs.

(*c*) Indicate in (*b*) the personal pronouns of the first and second persons singular, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Replace the personal pronoun of the first person by that of the second, and vice versa, and make the necessary changes:

1. Ego ab amīcō moneor. 2. Tū semper laudāris. 3. Praemia mihi dantur. 4. Pecūnia tibi dēbētur. 5. Ego ā tē timeor. 6. Mē superbum numquam praebeō. 7. Tēcum nōn pugnō.

(*b*) Give the present indicative of:

1. **Amīcōs iuvāre.** 2. **Ā sociō iuvārī.** 3. **Perīcula nōn timēre.** 4. **Ā malīs timērī.**

(*c*) Replace the singular by the plural and vice versa:

1. Labōrāre iubeor. 2. Discipulī bonī laudantur. 3. Oppidum antīquum dēlētur. 4. Prōvincia vāstātur.

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by the present indicative of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Vocārī:* Ego ā Cassiō ——.
2. *Commovērī:* Tū magnīs perīculīs ——.
3. *Laudārī:* Vōs ā dominō nōn ——.
4. *Nūntiārī:* Victōria ā lēgātīs ——.
5. *Removērī:* Cōpiae Rōmānōrum ē silvā ——.
6. *Darī:* Exempla bona tibi ——.
7. *Timērī:* Nōs ā malīs ——.

(*e*) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive:

1. Rōmānī oppidum dēlent (Model: Oppidum ā Rōmānīs dēlētur.) 2. Dominus servum bonum līberat. 3. Octāvia rēgīnam timet. 4. Puerī nautās monent. 5. Iniūriae novae incolās commovent. 6. Sociī Rōmānōrum mundum vāstant.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) We are loved, he is not feared, they are called, you are not ordered, they are helped, I am warned; you (singular) are not alarmed.

(*b*) 1. Good [people][1] are not feared by the wicked.

2. We are not helped by our friends.

[1] Omit.

3. The story is well told by the teacher.
4. You are not alarmed by great dangers.
5. The town is destroyed by the Gauls.
6. A great victory is announced to you (singular) by Cassius.
7. *I*[1] never display haughtiness, *you* do (display haughtiness).
8. *You* (singular) are ordered to work, *I* am not (ordered).
9. *I* shall not work with you (singular), if *you* do not work well.
10. If *you* (singular) are feared by good [people] *I* am not (feared).
11. The fields and plains of the world are laid waste by wars.

READING LESSON

Puer Malus et Asinus (The Bad Boy and the Donkey)

Malus puer Mārcus est. Sine (*without*) amīcīs est. Ā sociīs nōn amātur; ā cēterīs (*the other*) puerīs oppidī timētur. Ā magistrō saepe monētur. Ab incolīs oppidī numquam laudātur.

Asinus sōlus (*alone*) in agrō ā Mārcō vidētur. Puer malus in agrum[2] intrat. Misericordiā nōn movētur. Bēstiam miseram verberat (*beat*) et fugat. Sed maleficium (*bad deed*) puerī malī ab asinī dominō vidētur. Poena (*punishment*) magna ā Mārcō merētur. Puer malus ā virō īrātō castīgātur (*punish*). Mārcus dolet et clāmat, "In agrum tuum, domine, nōn iam (*no more*) intrābō; asinum tuum nōn iam verberābō et fugābō." Misericordiam dominī agrī implōrat sed frūstrā (*in vain*). Puer ab incolīs nōn

[1] Why must the pronouns be expressed in sentences 7–10?

[2] The preposition *in* governs the accusative when it denotes motion *into* a place, and the ablative, rest *in* a place. See page 153.

iuvātur quī (*who*) rīdent et clāmant, "Tū, puer male, castīgāris! Vae malīs!"

COLLATERAL READING

The Provinces [1]

. . . Worse than the distinction between rich and poor in Rome, or between citizens and subjects in Italy, was the distinction between Italy and the provinces. "Italy was to rule and feast; the provinces were to obey and pay." . . .

General View of Carthage.

North Africa was a thriving Roman Province, of which Carthage would have been the natural capital but for the jealousy of Rome.

The special marks of a province were: payments of taxes [2] in money or grain; and the absolute rule of a Roman governor.

[1] The word *prōvincia* literally means "public office, mission." From the year 227 B.C., it often indicates "an annexed territory outside of Italy, governed by one who had served a term as magistrate in Rome."

[2] As in Italy itself, a province had various grades of cities, and some of these cities in name were independent "allies," exempt at least from taxes.

The Senate fixed at will the amount that each province must pay. Then it "farmed out" the collection of this revenue, at public auction, usually to some company of Roman capitalists. The "contractor," or "farmer," paid down a lump sum, and had for himself all that he could squeeze from the province above that sum. . . .

Everything tended to make the governor a tyrant. He had Roman soldiers to back up any command. There was no appeal from his decrees. He had no colleague and no tribune[1] to veto his acts. The persons of the provincials were at his mercy, and of course their property was. . . .

True, a governor might be brought to trial; but only *after* his term had expired; and only *at Rome* . . . before a court made up of Senators, many themselves interested in similar plunderings, either in person, or through a son or brother or cousin. . . .

When other means failed to secure acquittal, the culprit could fall back on bribery. When a certain Verres was given the province of Sicily for three years, Cicero tells us, he cynically declared it quite enough: "In the first year he could secure plunder for himself; in the second for his friends; in the third for his judges."

---

[1] Tribune (from **tribus**, gen. **-ūs**, *tribe*), a representative of the common people. The secession of 497 B.C. gave the plebs the right to choose *tribunes* with power to protect oppressed plebeians against cruel laws. It was agreed that the tribunes should have the right to stop any magistrate in any act by merely calling out **vetō** ("I forbid") — just as one consul could "veto" another. This veto could be exercised only within the city (not in war), and *only by the tribunes in person.*

LESSON XXXIV

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE)

67. Nōs and Vōs. — The personal pronouns **nōs** and **vōs** are declined as follows:

	Nōs, *we*	**Vōs**, *you* (plural)
Nom.:	**nōs**, *we*	**vōs**, *you*
Gen.:	**nostrum** or **nostrī**, *of us*	**vestrum** or **vestrī**, *of you*
Dat.:	**nōbīs**, *to* or *for us*	**vōbīs**, *to* or *for you*
Acc.:	**nōs**, *us*	**vōs**, *you*
Abl.:	**nōbīs**, *with, from, by*, etc., *us*	**vōbīs**, *with, from, by*, etc., *you*

(*a*) *Reflexive Use.* **Nōs** and **vōs** may be used reflexively:

Nōs laudāmus.	*We praise ourselves.*
Vōs laudātis.	*You praise yourselves.*

(*b*) *Use with* **cum.** The preposition **cum** is affixed to **nōbīs** and **vōbīs.**

Nōbīscum nōn pugnātis.	*You do not fight with us.*
Vōbīscum nōn pugnāmus.	*We do not fight with you.*

68. Past Indicative, Passive Voice. — The past indicative in the passive voice is formed by adding to the present stem the tense sign **–ba–** and the usual personal endings of the passive voice (see § 65 *b*).

PAST INDICATIVE OF **laudārī** AND **monērī**

FIRST CONJUGATION (I was or used to be praised by Cassius, etc.)	SECOND CONJUGATION (I was or used to be warned by friends, etc.)
Ā Cassiō laudā'bar	**Ab amīcīs monē'bar**
Ā Cassiō laudābā'ris	**Ab amīcīs monēbā'ris**
Ā Cassiō laudābā'tur	**Ab amīcīs monēbā'tur**
Ā Cassiō laudābā'mur	**Ab amīcīs monēbā'mur**
Ā Cassiō laudābā'minī	**Ab amīcīs monēbā'minī**
Ā Cassiō laudāban'tur	**Ab amīcīs monēban'tur**

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
cau'sa, –ae	*cause*	causal
gau'dium, –dī	*joy*	gaudy
trīsti'tia, –ae	*sadness, sorrow*	
permo'veō, –ē're, –mō'vī, –mō'tus	*move, excite*	
reti'neō,[1] **–ē're, –nuī, –ten'tus**	*retain, hold back*	retention, retentive
susti'neō, –ē're, –nuī, –ten'tus	*sustain, support*	sustenance
mē gaudiō dō	*I give myself up to joy*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

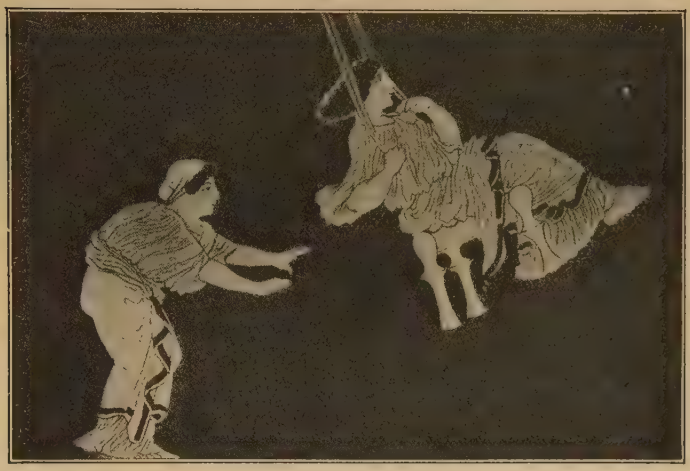
(*a*) Identify and translate:

līberābar, movēbantur, vocābāris, parābātur, retinēbāminī, servābāmur, removēbātur, sustinēbāris, iubēbāminī, iuvābantur, convocābāmur.

[1] Note that **tenēre** becomes **–tinēre** in its derivatives.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Templum novum dēlēbātur.
2. Dominus verbīs servī retinēbātur.
3. Discipulī malī ā magistrō nōn laudābantur.
4. Sī malī erātis, numquam amābāminī.
5. Glōriōsīs Rōmānōrum factīs permovēbar.
6. Nōbīs rosae parvae, magnae vōbīs dabantur.



LAETAE ESTIS.

7. Ā puerīs nōs amābāmur, vōs timēbāminī.
8. Causa bona ā vōbīs semper sustinēbātur.
9. Perīcula vōs, nōn nōs, commovēbant.
10. Rōmānī vōbīscum, nōn nōbīscum, pugnant.
11. Vōs ā nōbīs saepe monēbāminī.
12. Laetae estis, vōs gaudiō datis; miserī sumus, nōs trīstitiae damus.

(*c*) Indicate in (*b*) the personal pronouns of the first and second persons, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give the present and past of:

1. **Ā puerō vocārī.** 2. **Iniūriīs novīs commovērī.**

(*b*) Replace (1) the singular by the plural, and vice versa; (2) the first person by the second, and vice versa, with all necessary changes:

1. Ego properāre iubēbar. 2. Vōs perīculīs nōn terrēbāminī. 3. Nōs superbōs nōn praebēbāmus. 4. Tū tē trīstitiae, nōn gaudiō, dabās. 5. Praemia mihi nōn dabantur. 6. Victōria vōbīs nūntiābātur.

(*c*) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the present passive; (2) the past passive of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Līberārī:* Ego et tū ā dominō ——.
2. *Iubērī:* Vōs properāre ——.
3. *Monērī:* Nōs ā vōbīs ——.
4. *Commovērī:* Tū iniūriīs novīs ——.
5. *Darī:* Liber pulcher tibi ——.
6. *Vāstārī:* Agrī nostrī ——.

(*d*) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive:

1. Rōmānī oppida dēlēbant. (Model: Oppida ā Rōmānīs dēlēbantur.) 2. Labiēnus cōpiās removēbat. 3. Cassius ibi praesidium collocābat. 4. Puerī magistrum nōn timēbant. 5. Servus īram dominī pācābat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I was ordered, she was not called, they were sustained, we were held back, you were freed, he was rescued you (singular) were not excited.

(*b*) 1. The signal for (of) the battle was given by the trumpet.

2. Our towns were destroyed by the Gauls.

3. My cause was sustained by my friends, not by you.

4. You were not appeased by my words.

5. The province was occupied by us.

6. Beautiful books were given to you, not to us.

7. A long war was being prepared and we were alarmed by new dangers.

8. New islands were seen by the sailors.

9. You were diligent, you used to work with us.

10. The Romans are preparing a new war with you.

11. We were held back by a word of the lieutenant.

12. We gave ourselves up to joy, you gave yourselves up to sorrow.

READING LESSON

Gallī Rōmānōrum Iniūriās Vindicābunt

Gallia ā Rōmānīs occupābātur. Oppida Gallōrum expugnābantur et dēlēbantur. Agrī et campī ā cōpiīs Rōmānīs vāstābantur. Incolae ē casīs suīs removēbantur.

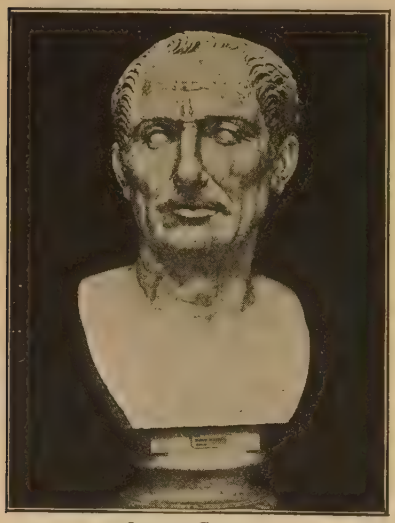
Quondam (*once*) Gallus, vir magnae statūrae, quī causam patriae sustinēbat, in castra Rōmānōrum intrāvit et Latīnē clāmāvit, "Vōs, Rōmānī, nōbīscum diū (*a long time*) pugnātis,[1] nōs superāvistis, servī vestrī sumus, trīstitiae nōs damus, nam (*for*) ā vōbīs agrī et campī nostrī vāstantur, oppida nostra expugnantur et dēlentur, incolae Galliae removentur. Ego vōs moneō: iniūriīs cotīdiānīs (*daily*) vestrīs permovēmur, sed vōs nōn timēmus. Maleficia vestra (in) memoriā tenēbimus, patriam servābimus et līberābimus, aliquandō (*some day*) vōs superābimus, vōs terrēbimus, Rōmam expugnābimus et dēlēbimus, iniūriās vestrās vindicābimus. Vae Rōmānīs!"

[1] The present with **diū** is translated in English by the perfect.

COLLATERAL READING

Caesar in Gaul

At the close of his consulship (59 B.C.), Caesar secured command of the Gallic provinces for five years as proconsul. . . . He found the Province[1] threatened by two great invasions: the whole people of the Helvetii were migrating from their Alpine homes in search of more fertile lands; and a great German nation, under the king, Ariovistus, was already encamped in Gaul. The Gauls themselves were distracted by feuds and grievously oppressed by their disorderly chieftains.



Julius Caesar.

Caesar saw the danger and grasped the opportunity. He levied armies hastily, and in one summer drove back the Helvetii and annihilated the German invaders. Then he seized upon the Rhine as the proper German frontier, and in a series of masterly campaigns, he made all Gaul Roman, extending his expeditions even into Britain. The story is told with incomparable lucidity in his own *Commentaries*. . . .

A wider home for Roman civilization was won among fresh populations, unexhausted and vigorous. *The map*

---

[1] In 121 B.C. the southeastern part of Transalpine Gaul had been given the form of a province. It was commonly known as *The Province* (modern *Provence*).

widened from the Mediterranean circle to include the shores of the North and Baltic seas. The land that Caesar made Roman (modern France) was, next to Greece and Italy, to form down to the present time the chief instructor of Europe.

LESSON XXXV

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE)

69. Is, Ea, Id. — These are the nominative singular forms of the demonstrative adjective and pronoun *this* and *that*. They are used also as the personal pronouns for the third persons: *he, she, it;* (pl.) *they.*

They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.:	**is**, *he*	**ea**, *she*	**id**, *it*
Gen.:	**eius**, *of him*	**eius**, *of her*	**eius**, *of it*
Dat.:	**eī**, *to* or *for him*	**eī**, *to* or *for her*	**eī**, *to* or *for it*
Acc.:	**eum**, *him*	**eam**, *her*	**id**, *it*
Abl.:	**eō**, *with, from, by*, etc., *him*	**eā**, *with, from, by*, etc., *her*	**eō**, *with, from, by*, etc., *it*

PLURAL

Nom.:	**eī**, *they*	**eae**, *they*	**ea**, *they*
Gen.:	**eōrum**, *of them*	**eārum**, *of them*	**eōrum**, *of them*
Dat.:	**eīs**, *to* or *for them*	**eīs**, *to* or *for them*	**eīs**, *to* or *for them*
Acc.:	**eōs**, *them*	**eās**, *them*	**ea**, *them*
Abl.:	**eīs**, *with, from, by*, etc., *them*	**eīs**, *with, from, by*, etc., *them*	**eīs**, *with, from, by*, etc., *them*

70. Reflexive Pronoun. — The reflexive pronoun of the third person is **suī**. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

Nom.: (lacking)

Gen.: **suī**, *of one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Dat.: **sibi**, *to* or *for one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Acc.: **sē**, *one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Abl.: **sē**, *with, from, by,* etc. *one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

71. Future, Passive Voice. — This is formed by adding to the present stem the tense sign **–bi–** and the usual personal endings of the passive voice (see § 65 *b*).

FUTURE OF **laudārī** AND **monērī**

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION
(I shall or will be praised by her, etc.)	(I shall or will be warned by them, etc.)
Ab eā laudā′bor	**Ab eīs monē′bor**
Ab eā laudā′beris	**Ab eīs monē′beris**
Ab eā laudā′bitur	**Ab eīs monē′bitur**
Ab eā laudā′bimur	**Ab eīs monē′bimur**
Ab eā laudābi′minī	**Ab eīs monēbi′minī**
Ab eā laudābun′tur	**Ab eīs monēbun′tur**

Note that the **i** of the tense sign **–bi–** disappears before **o** in the first person singular, becomes **e** in the second singular, and **u** in the third plural.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
grātē	*willingly*	gratitude
cum [1]	*when* (not interrogative)	
ni′si	*if not, unless*	
com′parō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus	*bring together, gather*	compare, comparison
obti′neō, –ē′re, –uī, –ten′tus	*obtain, get*	

[1] Do not confuse *cum* (when) with *cum* (with).

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the present stem of:

comparāre, obtinēre, retinēre, praebēre, vāstāre, timēre, permovēre, iuvāre.

Divide these infinitives into syllables, indicating the accented syllable.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

nārrātur, nārrābātur, nārrābitur, convocāminī, convocābāminī, convocābiminī, terreor, terrēbar, terrēbor, timēmur, timēbāmur, timēbimur, pācantur, pācābantur, pācābuntur.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

I. Is liber, ea tuba, id dōnum, casa eius puellae, cum eō discipulō, eae rosae, eōs populōs, ea praemia, eīs verbīs, incolae eārum īnsulārum. Is laetus sed misera ea est.

II. 1. Is sē nōn laudat, sē superbum nōn praebet; ea sē laudat, sē superbam praebet.

2. Nisi monēbiminī, in magnō perīculō eritis.

3. Agrī et campī ab eīs vāstābuntur.

4. Fāma magna ab eā obtinētur.

5. Cōpiae novae ā vōbīs comparābuntur.

6. Amīcitia cum populīs fīnitimīs ab eō cōnfirmābitur.

7. Facta glōriōsa eōrum[1] in bellīs Graecīs tibi nārrābunt.

---

[1] When the possessive adjectives *his, her, its, their*, refer to the subject of the sentence, they are translated by **suus, -a, -um**; (see § 36).

Dominus servum suum laudat. *The master praises his* own *slave.*

If they do not refer to the subject, *his, her, its* are expressed by **eius** (*of him, of her, of it*), and *their* is expressed by **eōrum** (*of them*, m. and n.) and **eārum** (*of them*, f.).

Dominus servum eius laudat. *The master praises his* (somebody else's) *slave.*

8. Ego dōnīs nōn pācābor; is verbīs retinēbitur.
9. Sī bonōs sē praebēbunt, eōs amābimus, ā nōbīs nōn timēbuntur; cum eīs grātē labōrābimus.
10. Cum bellum parābitur, signum eīs dabitur.
11. Sī sua facta laudābunt, superbās sē praebēbunt.
12. Nisi eās laudābō, trīstitiae sē dabunt.

(*d*) Indicate in (*c*) (I and II) all the uses of **is**, **ea**, **id**, as (1) demonstrative adjectives; (2) demonstrative pronouns; (3) personal pronouns.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in both numbers:

id dōnum, ea stella, is vir.

(*b*) Give the present, future, and past of:

1. **Sē gaudiō dare.** 2. **Ā lēgātō servārī.** 3. **Pugnāre iubērī.**

(*c*) Replace the singular by the plural and vice versa:

1. Is tardus, ea impigra est. 2. Verbīs eōrum pācābimur. 3. Eīs rosās dedimus. 4. Ab eā timēbiminī. 5. Superbōs sē praebuērunt.

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the future; (2) the past; (3) the present, of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Comparārī:* Magna cōpia frūmentī ab eō ——.
2. *Retinērī:* Tū memoriā iniūriārum ——.
3. *Obtinērī:* Multī captīvī ab eīs ——.
4. *Commovērī:* Nōs bellō longō ——.
5. *Laudāre:* Cassius sē nōn ——.

(*e*) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive:

1. Tuba victōriam nūntiābit. 2. Ego eī praemia dabō. 3. Nōs multās victōriās obtinēbimus. 4. Vōs cōpiās magnās comparābitis. 5. Tū virōs ad arma convocābis. 6. Memoria iniūriārum eōs permovēbit.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I shall be feared, war will be prepared, rewards will be obtained, you will not be called to arms, we shall be retained, they will be brought together, it will not be seen, you (singular) will be rescued.

(*b*) 1. They will not be alarmed by new dangers.

2. *She* will be rescued by us, *he* by you.

3. Much grain will be gathered by him.

4. *They* will be warned, *you* will not (be warned).

5. I shall not tell you a story if you (singular) do not give me your book.

6. A great deal of money will be obtained by her if she will help me.

7. You are slow; I do not work willingly with you.

8. They will be excited when glorious deeds are[1] related to them.

READING LESSON

Dēbentne Malī Discipulī ā Bonīs Iuvārī?

Mārcus et Cassius amīcī bonī sunt. Mārcus discipulus bonus, Cassius malus est. Ā magistrō Mārcus semper laudātur, Cassius saepe monētur et culpātur (*blame*).

Quondam Cassius in viā Mārcum vidit et eum implōrāvit, "Iuvā mē, amīce cāre, sī magister mē interrogābit. Nūllās (*no*) tabulās (tabula, –ae, *writing tablet*) habeō; ōrō tē,

[1] Use the future.

mī Mārce, mihi tuās dā. Nisi mē iuvābis, ā magistrō culpābor et fortasse (*perhaps*) ab eō castīgābor. Sī mē amās, ōrō tē, iuvā mē."

Sed Mārcus lentē respondit, "Saepe tē, Cassī, magister monuit; ego saepe tē monuī; tū semper pigrum et tardum tē praebuistī; cēterī puerī tē vident et exemplum malum eīs dās. Tē amō, sed tibi tabulās meās nōn dabō. Ā mē nōn iuvāberis sī ā magistrō interrogāberis. Ab eō certē culpāberis et fortasse castīgāberis, sed ego miseriīs tuīs nōn permovēbor. Tū magnam poenam merēs."

Malī discipulī ā bonīs iuvārī nōn dēbent.

EXERCISES

(*a*) This text or part of it may be used for dictation.

(*b*) Replace **Mārcus** by **Octāvia**, **Cassius** by **Iūlia**, and **magister** by **magistra** (*school mistress*).

COLLATERAL READING

Rural Estates

Rural estates were:

1. Large estates or pasture lands (**saltūs**), of at least five hundred acres, where were raised horses, oxen, asses, mules, pigs, goats and especially sheep, for common garments were then made of wool.

2. Smaller estates which comprised vineyards, orchards, groves of olive trees, meadows and wheat fields. The raising of bees was very important because honey took the place of sugar.

The farm (**vīlla**) was built around a courtyard facing south; in the center was a pool where cattle drank and bathed. Around the courtyard were the manager's house (at the gates), the stables, sheepfolds, chicken coops, pigsties, sheds for farming implements, slaves' huts, sick ward, kitchen,

baths (open only on holidays), and finally the subterranean prison (**ergastulum**) where refractory slaves were locked up.

The work was done only by slaves: the manager (**vīlicus**) was himself a slave, as well as the foremen (**magistrī operum**).

The main farming implements were the plow (**arātrum**) with a triangular plowshare (**vōmer**); the harrow (**crātis**); a heavy hoe with two crooked iron teeth (**bidēns**); a hoe with

A Part of Hadrian's Villa.

Compare this with the picture on page xx.

a long handle to work in vineyards and gardens (**ligō**); a spade or shovel (**pāla**); and a rake (**rāstrum**).

Wheat was threshed on the threshing floor with a flail, or a roller, or by horses' feet, and was ground between two mill stones. . . .

3. Very small estates in which the owner (**colōnus**) did the work, helped by his children and a few slaves.

— *Rome et les Romains* by Bornecque and Mornet, Paris, Librairie Delagrave.

LESSON XXXVI

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (PASSIVE)

72. Interrogative Pronoun *Quis*. — We have met several times in the Reading Lessons various forms of the interrogative pronoun **quis**, *who*. It is declined as follows:

Quis? *Who?* **Quid?** *What?*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.:	quis	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.:	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.:	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.:	quem	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.:	quō	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

(*a*) *Use with* **cum**. — The preposition **cum** is affixed to the interrogative pronoun:

Quōcum labōrāre dēbeō? *With whom ought I to work?*
Quibuscum pugnāre dēbēmus? *With whom ought we to fight?*

73. Past Participle. — One of the four principal parts of Latin verbs is the past participle (see page 147). This always ends in the syllable **–tus** or **–sus** and is declined like **bonus**, **–a**, **–um**.

The participial stem is found by dropping the ending **–us** from the past participle. The past participle

of **laudāre** is **laudātus**; **laudāt–** is the participial stem. Latin verbs have three stems:

	Present Stem	Perfect Stem	Participial Stem
Laudāre	**laudā–**	**laudāv–**	**laudāt–**
Monēre	**monē–**	**monu–**	**monit–**

74. The Perfect and Past Perfect, Passive, are formed from the past participle which agrees with the subject in gender and number. To this are added tenses of the verb **esse**: **sum** for the perfect and **eram** for the past perfect.

First Conjugation		Second Conjugation	
Perfect Tense of laudārī and monērī			
(I have been or was praised, etc.)		(I have been or was warned, etc.)	
laudātus, –a, –um	**sum**	**monitus, –a, –um**	**sum**
laudātus, –a, –um	**es**	**monitus, –a, –um**	**es**
laudātus, –a, –um	**est**	**monitus, –a, –um**	**est**
laudātī, –ae, –a	**sumus**	**monitī, –ae, –a**	**sumus**
laudātī, –ae, –a	**estis**	**monitī, –ae, –a**	**estis**
laudātī, –ae, –a	**sunt**	**monitī, –ae, –a**	**sunt**
Past Perfect of laudārī and monērī			
(I had been praised, etc.)		(I had been warned, etc.)	
laudātus, –a, –um	**eram**	**monitus, –a, –um**	**eram**
laudātus, –a, –um	**erās**	**monitus, –a, –um**	**erās**
laudātus, –a, –um	**erat**	**monitus, –a, –um**	**erat**
laudātī, –ae, –a	**erāmus**	**monitī, –ae, –a**	**erāmus**
laudātī, –ae, –a	**erātis**	**monitī, –ae, –a**	**erātis**
laudātī, –ae, –a	**erant**	**monitī, –ae, –a**	**erant**

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
ae′quus, –a, –um	*fair, just*	equal, equanimity
exīs′timō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus	*think*	esteem, estimate
do′ceō, –ē′re, –uī, doc′tus	*teach, show*	doctrine, doctor, docile

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the participial stems of:

vocāre, habēre, nārrāre, servāre, commovēre, docēre, parāre, praebēre, dare, iubēre, vidēre.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

pācātus, monita, vocātī, nūntiātum, iussus, datae, vīsum, doctī, cōnfirmātus, exīstimāta, commōtae.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Victōria eīs tubā nūntiāta est.
2. Quis fābulās nārrāvit? Cui fābulae nārrātae sunt?
3. Id bellum novum ā Rōmānīs bene parātum erat.
4. Quī exemplīs bonīs docērī dēbent? — Puerī.
5. Cui multae rosae saepe datae erant? — Tibi, nōn mihi.
6. Quis factīs novīs commōtus erat? — Amīcus noster.
7. Quōcum ad Ītaliam properāre iussī estis? — Cum Cassiō, lēgātō.
8. Patria nostra ab eīs sustenta est.
9. Quid vōs permōvit? — Nōs iniūriīs novīs permōtī sumus.
10. Verba tua ā nōbīs aequa exīstimāta sunt.
11. Praesidia ā vōbīs in oppidīs eōrum [1] collocāta erant.
12. Ā quibus patria servāta et līberāta est? Ā nōbīs, nōn ab eīs.

[1] See footnote, page 202.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give (1) the present of **sē docēre**; (2) the perfect and the past perfect of:

Perīculō commovērī. Piger exīstimārī.

(*b*) Replace (1) the masculine of the past participle by the feminine; (2) the singular by the plural, giving both masculine and feminine forms:

Ā quō līberātus es? Eīs verbīs pācātus eram.

(*c*) Replace (1) the feminine of the past participle by the masculine; (2) the plural by the singular, giving both masculine and feminine forms:

Ā quibus iūtae erātis? Factīs glōriōsīs permōtae sunt.

(*d*) Replace the singular by the plural, and vice versa:

1. Id templum vāstātum est. 2. Quibus ea praemia data erant?

(*e*) Review. Replace the various tenses by (1) the perfect passive; (2) the past perfect passive:

1. Quibuscum vōs ad Ītaliam properāre iubēminī? 2. Ā quō nōs ad arma convocābimur? 3. Eīs verbīs aequīs retineor.

(*f*) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive:

1. Is vir bonus patriam nostram sustinuit. 2. Rōmānī agrōs eōrum vāstāverant. 3. Ea serva puellam parvam pācāvit. 4. Memoria iniūriārum eōs permōverat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I have been freed, you (singular) had been helped, they (m.) have been seen, it had not been announced, you

have been taught, she had been ordered, we have been thought haughty, he had not been kept back, they (f.) were[1] ordered to hasten.

(*b*) 1. Who has helped you? — We have been helped by her.

2. The camp had been moved from that plain.

3. By whom has she been taught? — By a good teacher.

4. What had alarmed them (f.)? — They had been alarmed by the trumpet.

5. To whom were[1] rewards given? — To them, not to us.

6. She has not been soothed by their (of them) gifts.

7. With whom were[1] you (singular) ordered to work?

8. This ancient temple was destroyed by them, not by us.

9. The signal for (of) the battle had been given to them by me, not by you (singular).

10. We were[1] thought haughty, for (**nam**) we had praised ourselves.

READING LESSON

Perīculum Discordiae (The Danger of Discord)

I. Prīmum Exemplum (A First Example)

In eōdem[2] prātō (prātum, –ī, *meadow*) multī taurī (taurus, –ī, *bull*) erant. Id prātum herbōsum erat, sed prope silvam magnam erat. Multae ferae in eā silvā fuērunt.

Taurī amīcī erant; numquam certābant (*fight*); maxima concordia inter (*between, among*) eōs semper erat. Sīc nūllum perīculum timēbant et ab īnsidiīs (īnsidiae, –ārum, *ambush*) ferārum tūtī erant.

Sed mox sine causā inter sē dissēdērunt (*disagree*) et singulī (*one at a time*), ā ferīs circumdatī (*surround*), necātī et dēvorātī sunt.

Ea fābula perīculum discordiae docet.

---

[1] Use the perfect.

[2] **Īdem, eadem, idem,** *same,* is declined like **is, ea, id** (see § 69).

II. Secundum Exemplum (A Second Example)

Haec (*this*) quoque fābula perīculum discordiae docet.

Duo (*two*) virī asinum sōlum (*alone*) in prātō vīdērunt. Id prātum ā vīcō (vīcus, –ī, *hamlet*) longē aberat. Uterque (*both*) bēstiam dēsīderābat. Laetī duo virī in prātum intrāvērunt et ex eō prātō praedam remōvērunt. Alter (*one*) "Asinus meus est," inquit (*said*), "nam ā mē, nōn ā tē, bēstia vīsa est." Alter (*the other*) respondit, "Nōn tuus, sed meus est; ā mē asinus ex prātō remōtus est."

Neuter (*neither*) asinum habuit, nam dum (*while*) pugnīs (pugnus, –ī, *fist*) certant,[1] ā tertiō (*third*) bēstia remōta est.

COLLATERAL READING

A Roman "Triumph"

Plutarch (*Life of Aemilius Paulus*) describes the gorgeous "triumph" of the Roman general on his return after the victory of Pydna (168 B.C.) which closed the last attempt at Macedonian independence.

For three days a festal procession paraded the city, to the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. Throngs of white-robed citizens watched the procession from scaffolds which had been erected for the purpose in all convenient places.

On the first day, two hundred and fifty wagons carried by the statues and paintings which had been plundered from Macedonian cities.

On the next day passed many wagons, carrying Macedonian standards and armor, followed by three thousand men loaded with the silver money and silver plate which had been secured in the booty.

On the third day came a procession of men carrying gold spoil, followed by the conqueror in a splendid chariot, behind

[1] The conjunction **dum** (*while*) is regularly followed by the present indicative.

which walked the conquered king with his three young children.

Rome so filled her coffers with treasure by this plunder that the Republic never thereafter taxed her citizens. And

A Roman Triumph.

The German Princess Thusnelda in the triumph of Germanicus.

besides this public plunder, *the Roman general had paid his soldiers by permitting them to sack seventy helpless rich cities in Epirus.* The unspeakable suffering and misery — the ruined lives and broken families — in every such city is beyond the power of imagination to picture.

REVIEW LESSON XXXVII

75. The Latin Personal, Reflexive, and Interrogative Pronouns are declined as follows:

	Personal Pronouns					Reflexive
	Ego, *I*	**Tū,** *you* (singular)	**Is,** *he*	**ea,** *she*	**id,** *it*	**Suī,** *of one's self*
Nom.:	ego	tū	is	ea	id	(none)
Gen.:	meī	tuī	eius	eius	eius	Suī
Dat.:	mihi	tibi	eī	eī	eī	sibi
Acc.:	mē	tē	eum	eam	id	sē
Abl.:	mē	tē	eō	eā	eō	sē
	Nōs, *we*	**Vōs,** *you*	**Eī**	**eae** *they*	**ea,**	**Suī,** *of themselves*
Nom.:	nōs	vōs	Eī	eae	ea	(none)
Gen.:	nostrum / nostrī	vestrum / vestrī	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	suī
Dat.:	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs	eīs	eīs	sibi
Acc.:	nōs	vōs	eōs	eās	ea	sē
Abl.:	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs	eīs	eīs	sē

Interrogative Pronoun

Quis? *Who?* **Quid?** *What?*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.:	quis	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.:	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.:	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.:	quem	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.:	quō	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

76. The Passive Voice. — The tenses of the Indicative, Passive Voice, of verbs of the first and second conjugations are as follows:

First Conjugation	Second Conjugation	
Present Infinitive		
laudārī	**monērī**	
Present Indicative		*Common Personal Endings*
laudor	**moneor**	**–r**
laudāris	**monēris**	**–ris**
laudātur	**monētur**	**–tur**
laudāmur	**monēmur**	**–mur**
laudāminī	**monēminī**	**–minī**
laudantur	**monentur**	**–ntur**
Past (Tense sign **–bā–**)		
laudābar	**monēbar**	
laudābāris	**monēbāris**	
laudābātur	**monēbātur**	
laudābāmur	**monēbāmur**	
laudābāminī	**monēbāminī**	
laudābantur	**monēbantur**	
Future (Tense sign **–bi–**)		
laudābor	**monēbor**	
laudāberis	**monēberis**	
laudābitur	**monēbitur**	
laudābimur	**monēbimur**	
laudābiminī	**monēbiminī**	
laudābuntur	**monēbuntur**	

PERFECT

laudātus, –a, –um	sum	monitus, –a, –um	sum
	es		es
	est		est
laudātī, –ae, –a	sumus	monitī, –ae, –a	sumus
	estis		estis
	sunt		sunt

PAST PERFECT

laudātus, –a, –um	eram	monitus, –a, –um	eram
	erās		erās
	erat		erat
laudātī, –ae, –a	erāmus	monitī, –ae, –a	erāmus
	erātis		erātis
	erant		erant

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Translate into English the following words:

1. *Nouns*

A. FIRST DECLENSION

causa **prōvincia** **trīstitia**

B. SECOND DECLENSION

gaudium

2. *Adjectives*

aequus **multus**

3. *Verbs*

A. FIRST CONJUGATION

comparāre **exīstimāre**

B. Second Conjugation

commovēre	**obtinēre**	**removēre**
docēre	**permovēre**	**retinēre**
iubēre	**praebēre**	**sustinēre**

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

cum **nisi** **sī** **grātē**

5. *Idioms*

sē gaudiō dare **sē laudāre** **sē superbum praebēre**

(*b*) Divide all the words in (*a*) into syllables, pointing out the syllable which must be accented, and telling why it must be accented.

(*c*) Give (1) the principal parts; (2) the three stems of all the verbs in (*a*).

(*d*) What is the usual effect of the prefixes on the spelling of **tenēre** and **habēre**? Compare **tenēre** and **obtinēre**; **habēre** and **prohibēre**.

(*e*) Explain the derivation of **praebēre**.

(*f*) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

1. How do you translate into Latin the pronouns (direct object form): myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves?

2. Where is the preposition **cum** placed when its object is a personal pronoun or the interrogative pronoun?

3. What is the double use of **is**, **ea**, **id**?

4. How is the present infinitive of the passive voice formed?

5. What are the personal endings of the passive voice?

6. How is the present indicative of *any* verb in the passive voice formed?

7. (*a*) What is the tense sign of the past? (*b*) How is the past of the passive voice formed?

8. (*a*) What is the tense sign of the future of the first and second conjugations? (*b*) How is the future of the passive voice formed?

9. (*a*) How many stems do Latin verbs have? (*b*) How is the participial stem formed? (*c*) How do past participles agree? (*d*) How are the perfect tenses formed?

10. (*a*) In what case is the name of the agent put? (*b*) When is the preposition **ā** used? (*c*) When is the preposition **ab** used?

II. Written.

(*a*) Translate into Latin the following words, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns*

cause joy province sadness

2. *Adjectives*

just much

3. *Verbs*

to alarm to excite to order to sustain
to bring together to move to retain to teach
to disturb to obtain to show to think
to withdraw

4. *Pronouns*

he I it she they we what? who? you (both forms)

5. *Other Parts of Speech*

when (not interrogative) if if not willingly

6. *Idioms*

to display haughtiness to give up one's self to joy
to praise one's self

(*b*) Derivation. Make a list of the English derivatives of **movēre** according to Type I (see page 178), and of **tenēre** according to Type II.

READING LESSON

In Lūdō (At School)

Lūdus prope id templum locātus est (locāre, *to situate*). Puerī ad lūdum ā magistrō convocantur. Librī et tabulae eōrum ā paedagōgīs (paedagōgus, –ī, *a slave* to guide and attend children) portantur (*carry*). In eō lūdō docentur. Assiduē labōrāre et studiō (studium, –dī, *study*) sē dare iubentur. Aliī (*some*) bonī, aliī (*others*) malī sunt. Magna dīligentia ā discipulīs impigrīs, nūlla ā pigrīs adhibētur (*display*).

Eī discipulī pigrī sunt; ā magistrīs semper monentur et culpantur (*blame*) et saepe castīgantur (*chastise*). Discipulus impiger ā magistrō laudātur. Praemia crēbra eī dantur. Puerī memoriā iniūriārum et dōnōrum permoventur.

Cum (*when*) puerī erāmus, discipulī bonī erāmus. Lūdus ā nōbīs amābātur. Magister bonus ā nōbīs nōn timēbātur. Ab eō saepe laudābāmur.

— Fābulaene vōbīs ab eō nārrābantur?

— Fābulīs magistrī dēlectābāmur.

Mārcus, amīcus noster, piger est; culpāmur et castīgāmur quod (*because*) eum iuvāmus. Herī (*yesterday*) Mārcus ā magistrō properāre iussus est quod tardus erat. Nōn properāvit et dūrē (*severely*) castīgātus est.

Numquam tē, fīlī mī, laudā; cum puer sē laudābit, superbus ā cēterīs exīstimābitur. Sī tū impiger eris, magister tē laudābit. Sī vōs pigrī eritis, monēbiminī, culpābiminī, castīgābiminī. Sī nōs discipulōs iuvābimus, ā magistrīs culpābimur. Sī facta glōriōsa Rōmānōrum discipulīs nārrābuntur, eī permovēbuntur. Puerī exemplīs bonīs docērī dēbent.

COLLATERAL READING

Education and Learning under the Roman Empire, to 192 A.D.

Rome, Alexandria, and Athens were the three great centers of learning. Each had its *university*, with vast libraries and many professorships. . . .

Every important city in the Empire had its grammar school, corresponding to an advanced high school or small college. Like the universities, to which they led, they had permanent endowment from the Roman government.

The schools of this class in Gaul and Spain were especially famous; and noted instructors in Massilia (Marseilles), Autun, Narbonne, Lyons, Bordeaux, or Toulouse taught Latin grammar to noble youth drawn even from the Tiber side.

The walls of the classrooms were painted with maps, dates, and lists of facts. The masters were appointed by the local magistrates, with life tenure, good pay, and exemption from taxation.

All this education was for the upper classes, but occasionally bright boys from the lower classes found some wealthy patron to send them to a good school, and rich men and women sometimes bequeathed money to schools in their home cities for the education of poor children. . . . Davis' *Readings* gives Horace's story of how his father, a poor farmer, gave him the education that made it possible for him to become one of the most famous of poets.

LESSON XXXVIII

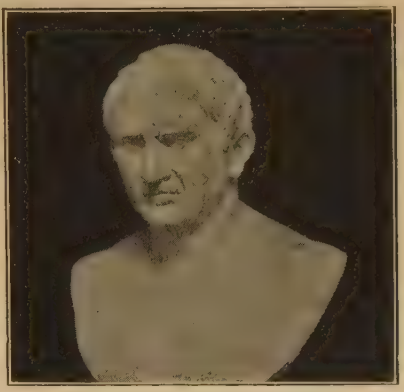
THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

77. The Third Declension includes all nouns and adjectives, masculine, feminine, and neuter, of which the genitive singular ends in **–is**.

(*a*) *Consonant Stems and* **i**-*stems.* — Nouns of the third declension are divided into two groups, nouns whose stems end with consonants (genitive plural, **–um**) and nouns whose stems end with **–i** (genitive plural, **–ium**).

In nouns with consonant stems, the stem is the same as the base.[1] **mīles**, *soldier;* base or stem: **mīlit–**.

In nouns with **i**- stems, the stem is obtained by adding the vowel **i** to the base: **cīvis**, *citizen;* base: **cīv–**; stem: **cīvi–**.



CICERŌ.

78. Masculine and Feminine Nouns, Consonant Stems. — (*a*) *Nominative Singular.* — The ending of the nominative singular of a masculine or feminine noun with a consonant stem of the third declension varies greatly.

Cicerō cōnsul est.	*Cicero is consul.*
subject predicate noun	

[1] The base is obtained by dropping the termination of the genitive singular.

(*b*) *Genitive Singular* (**–is**). — The genitive singular of all words of the third declension ends in **–is**. It must always be learned with the nominative singular because it is used in the formation of all other cases, singular and plural.

Amīcī Cicerōnis (genitive case) **cōnsulis** (appositive) **sumus.** *We are the friends of Cicero the consul.*

(*c*) *Accusative Singular* (**–em**). This is formed by replacing the ending **–is** of the genitive singular by **–em**. Compare **–am** (first declension) and **–um** (second declension).

Cicerōnem cōnsulem vīdī. (direct object, appositive) *I saw Cicero the consul.*

79. The Third Conjugation (**–ere**; **–ī**). (*a*) The present infinitive of the third conjugation ends in **–ere**, active voice, and in **–ī**, passive voice: **dūcere**, *to lead, to take*; **dūcī**, *to be led, to be taken.*

(*b*) *Present Indicative.* — The present indicative is formed by adding the personal endings (see §§ 18 and 65 *b*) to the present stem (**dūce–**).

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **dūcere** AND **dūcī**

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
(I lead him, etc.)	(I am led by him, etc.)
Eum dū'cō	**Ab eō dū'cor**
Eum dū'cis	**Ab eō dū'ceris**
Eum dū'cit	**Ab eō dū'citur**
Eum dū'cimus	**Ab eō dū'cimur**
Eum dū'citis	**Ab eō dūci'minī**
Eum dū'cunt	**Ab eō dūcun'tur**

Note that final **e** of the present stem disappears before **o** in the first person singular, becomes **u** in the third person plural, and **i** in the other persons, except in the second singular of the passive voice where it remains. Compare the future of the passive voice of the second conjugation.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
Ci′cerō, –ō′nis	*Cicero*	Ciceronian, cicerone
cōn′sul, –ulis, m.	*consul*	consulate
mī′les, –itis, m.	*soldier*	military, militia
pāx, pā′cis, f.	*peace*	pacify, pacific
rēx, rē′gis, m.	*king*	regal
vir′tūs, –ū′tis, f.	*manliness, courage*	virtue
dē′ligō, –ere, dēlē′gī, dēlēc′tus	*choose, elect*	
dū′cō, –ere, dū′xī, duc′tus	*lead, take* (a person)	ductile, aqueduct
mit′tō, –ere, mī′sī, mis′sus	*send*	mission, missile
pe′tō, –ere, petī′vī, petī′tus	*ask for, seek*	petition

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give (1) the base (see § 77 (*a*)) of every noun in the vocabulary; (2) the present stem and the present infinitive, passive voice, of every verb.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

dēligis, petunt, dūcitis, dēligimur, mittimus, petō, mittiminī, petitur, dūceris.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Cicerō bonus cōnsul erit.
2. Rōmānī Cicerōnem cōnsulem dēligunt.
3. Cicerō ā Rōmānīs cōnsul dēligitur.
4. Rēx pācem petit.
5. Fīliī rēgis ad Ītaliam mittuntur.
6. Multae viae ad Rōmam dūcunt.
7. Virtūtem mīlitis Rōmānī laudāmus.
8. Ad Cicerōnem cōnsulem dūcimur.
9. Lēgātōs ad rēgem mittimus et pācem petimus.
10. Lēgātī ad rēgem dūcuntur.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*) the nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.

Mīles Rōmānus.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give the genitive and accusative singular of:

rēx novus, pāx longa, mīles Rōmānus, virtūs Rōmāna.

(*b*) Give the present indicative of:

1. **Cōnsulem dēligere.**
2. **Ad rēgem mittī.**

(*c*) Put the verb (1) in the plural:

1. Pācem petis. 2. Eōs mittō. 3. Mīlitem dūcit. 4. Ad castra dūcor. 5. Semper dēligitur.

(2) In the singular:

1. Pācem numquam petimus. 2. Cōnsulem dēligitis. 3. Rēgem dūcunt. 4. Ad eum mittuntur. 5. Nōn dēligiminī.

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by the present indicative of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Dūcere:* Cassius cōpiās suās ad castra ——.
2. *Dēligī:* Ego cōnsul ā populō Rōmānō ——.
3. *Mittere:* Tū dōna ad eōs ——.
4. *Laudārī:* Virtūs mīlitis Rōmānī ——.
5. *Petere:* Vōs pācem ——.
6. *Monērī:* Rēx novus ā mē ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I choose, she sends, you (singular) are not elected, we ask, they do not lead, they are led, you are sent.

(*b*) 1. I am elected consul.
2. The fame of Cicero is great.
3. We do not praise Cicero the consul.
4. The courage of the Roman soldier is famous.
5. They choose a new king.
6. Who asks for peace?
7. You send the good consul.
8. The famous captive is led to (**ad** with accusative) the king.
9. We send the sons of the king to Italy.
10. A Roman soldier does not seek peace.
11. I lead the troops to the camp.
12. Roman ambassadors are sent to the famous king.

READING LESSON[1]

I. Silentiō (In Silence)

Tōnsor, blandus et garrulus, barbam rēgis Archelāī tondēbat. Rēgem interrogāvit, "Quōmodo eam tondēre dēbeō?" "Silentiō," respondit rēx.

[1] For new words in the Reading Lessons, see General Vocabulary.

II. Pāvō et Cicōnia (The Peacock and the Stork)

Pāvō cōram cicōniā pennās suās explicāns,[1] "Quanta est," inquit, "fōrma mea et tua dēfōrmitās!" Cicōnia ēvolāns,[1] "Et quanta est," inquit, "levitās mea et tua tarditās!"

Aliōs contemnere nōn dēbēmus.

The Roman Senate.

"The foremost political corporation of all time." — Mommsen.

III. Diogenēs (Diogenes, a Stoic Philosopher)

Cum accēnsā lucernā per forum interdiū Diogenēs ambulābat. Vir[2] eum interrogāvit, "Quid agis?" "Hominem[2] quaerō," respondit.

---

[1] The ending **-āns** indicates the nominative singular, masculine, feminine and neuter, of the present participle of the first conjugation: **laudāre**, *to praise;* **laudāns**, *praising.*

[2] Do not confuse **vir**, **virī** (a man, as opposed to **fēmina** or **mulier**, woman) and **homō**, **hominis** (a man, a human being); here it means an *honest man.*

IV. Lupus et Capra

Lupus capram in saxō altō vīdit. "Cūr," inquit, "nōn saxum nūdum relinquis nec hūc dēscendis in campōs herbōsōs quī pābulum bonum tibi praebent?" Respondit capra, "Quia iūcundīs tūta praepōnō."

EXERCISES

(*a*) Dictation. These stories may be used as material for dictation.

(*b*) Dialogue. Pupils may be asked to repeat these stories, personifying the different characters.

COLLATERAL READING

The Consuls

About 500 B.C., the Romans got rid of their kings, as other Italian cities were doing at the same time. We do not know the details, but in some way the patrician nobles succeeded in replacing the life-king by two elected consuls.

The consuls held office for only one year, but for that year they were "joint kings." They called and dissolved Assemblies at will. They alone could propose measures or nominate magistrates — even to succeed themselves. They filled vacancies in the Senate. They ruled the city in peace, and commanded the army in war.

In two ways, however, . . . the consul's real power was less than that of the old kings:

(1) Either consul might find any of his proposed acts absolutely forbidden ("vetoed") by his colleague.

(2) He knew that, when his short term was over, he might be called to account by the Assembly, and punished for any abuse of power.

The division of power between two consuls, with the chance of a deadlock by a mutual veto, might be fatal in a time

of foreign peril. Rome found escape from such danger by arranging at need to revive the old kingship under a new name. At the request of the Senate either consul might appoint a *dictator*. This officer was absolute master of Rome, save that his term of office could not exceed *six months*. He was the two consuls in one, with half their length of office. He had power of life and death in the city as in the army; and he could not be questioned for his acts even when he had laid down his powers.

LESSON XXXIX

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

80. Dative Singular (–ī) and Ablative Singular (–e). — The dative singular of *any* noun of the third declension is formed by replacing the ending **–is** of the genitive singular by **–ī**. The ablative singular of nouns with consonant stems is formed by replacing **–is** by **–e**.

CONSONANT STEMS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

Base and stem:	**Caesar**, *Caesar* **Caesar–**	**homō**, m., *man* **homin–**	**celeritās**, f., *quickness* **celeritāt–**	*Endings*
Nom.:	**Cae′sar**	**ho′mō**	**cele′ritās**	(various)
Gen.:	**Cae′saris**	**ho′minis**	**celeritā′tis**	**–is**
Dat.:	**Cae′sarī**	**ho′minī**	**celeritā′tī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**Cae′sarem**	**ho′minem**	**celeritā′tem**	**–em**
Abl.:	**Cae′sare**	**ho′mine**	**celeritā′te**	**–e**

81. Past. — The past, active and passive, of the third conjugation is formed by adding to the present stem with the final vowel **e** lengthened, the tense sign and the personal endings.

PAST OF **dūcere** AND **dūcī**

ACTIVE VOICE (I was leading, I did lead, or I used to lead them, etc.)	PASSIVE VOICE (I used to be led or I was led by them, etc.)
Eōs dūcē′bam	**Ab eīs dūcē′bar**
Eōs dūcē′bās	**Ab eīs dūcēbā′ris**
Eōs dūcē′bat	**Ab eīs dūcēbā′tur**

Active Voice	Passive Voice
Eōs dūcēbā′mus	**Ab eīs dūcēbā′mur**
Eōs dūcēbā′tis	**Ab eīs dūcēbā′minī**
Eōs dūcē′bant	**Ab eīs dūcēban′tur**

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
Cae′sar, –aris	*Caesar*	Caesarism, Czar, Kaiser
cele′ritās, –ā′tis, f.	*quickness*	celerity
ho′mō, –inis, m.	*man* (human being)	homicide
cē′dō, –ere, ces′sī, ces′sus	*yield*	cession
discē′dō, –ere, disces′sī, disces′sus	*depart*	
praecē′dō, –ere, praeces′sī, praeces′sus	*excel*	precede
osten′dō, –ere, osten′dī, osten′tus	*display*	ostensible, ostentation
pō′nō, –ere, po′suī, po′situs	*put*	position, opponent
tri′buō, –ere, tri′buī, tribū′tus	*attribute*	tribute
castra pōnere	*pitch camp*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the present infinitive, passive voice, of:

dēligere, mittere, pōnere, monēre, petere, ostendere, dūcere, timēre, tribuere, occupāre.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

mittit, mittēbāmur, petimus, petēbantur, dēligēbar, dēligēbātis, tribuunt, cēdēbat, pōnēbātur, discēdēbāmus, dūcēbāminī, praecēdunt, ostendēbās.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Vīta hominis nōn longa est.
2. Mīles Caesarī victōriam nūntiat.
3. Caesar fīdō mīlitī praemium dat.
4. Cum magnā celeritāte discēdēbāmus.
5. Caesar in campō castra pōnēbat.
6. Ad Caesarem mittēbāminī.
7. Magna virtūs ā rēge novō ostendēbātur.
8. Virtūtī tuae victōriam tribuēbās.
9. Gallōs virtūte praecēdēbāmus.
10. Facta glōriōsa Cicerōnī cōnsulī tribuēbantur.

(*d*) Indicate in (*a*) all the datives and ablatives of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular:

homo glōriōsus, magna virtūs, Caesar cōnsul, pāx glōriōsa.

(*b*) Give the present and past of:

1. **Cum magnā celeritāte discēdere.** 2. **Ab eīs dēligī.**

(*c*) Review. Replace the present by the past:

1. Castra pōnimus. 2. Mīles Rōmānus numquam cēdit. 3. Lēgātus ad Caesarem mittitur. 4. Amīcōs virtūte nōn praecēdis. 5. Castra in silvā pōnuntur.

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the present; (2) the past of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Pōnere:* Vōs castra ——.
2. *Ostendī:* Magna celeritās ā Caesare ——.

3. *Praecēdere:* Nōs Rōmānōs virtūte ——.
4. *Mittī:* Lēgātī ad Caesarem ——.
5. *Tribuī:* Facta glōriōsa Caesarī ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) He was departing, you were not excelling, I was sent, they used to put, you (singular) were elected, they were displaying, she was not led, it was attributed, they yield.

(*b*) 1. I departed very quickly (with great celerity).
2. We were chosen by Cicero the consul.
3. The victory was attributed to that man.
4. The camp was pitched by the king.
5. We announced the victory to the consul.
6. The troops were led by Caesar.
7. The man was displaying great courage.
8. The victory was announced to the king by a soldier.
9. Great courage was displayed by that man.
10. You used to excel them in courage and in quickness.

READING LESSON

I. Virtūs Leōnidae [1]

Nūntius Leōnidae, rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, dīcit, "Persae multitūdine sagittārum sōlem obscūrābunt." Rēx respondet, "Bene; ita in umbrā pugnābimus."

II. Formīca et Cicāda (The Ant and the Tree-Cricket)

Mediā hieme,[2] cicāda famēlica auxilium formīcae, vīcīnae suae, implōrāvit. Formīca "Quid aestāte," [2] inquit,

[1] **Leōnidās**, genitive **-ae**. Greek proper names ending in **-ās** are declined in Latin like nouns of the first declension.

[2] **Mediā hieme** (**medius, -a, -um**, *middle;* **hiems, -emis**, f., *winter*), *in the middle of winter*. **Mediā hieme** and **aestāte** are in the ablative; time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

"agēbās?" Respondit cicāda, "Agrōs et silvās peragrābam et assiduē cantābam." Rīdēns[1] formīca respondit, "Tibi, quae aestāte cantābās, nunc saltāre licet."

EXERCISE

Dialogue. — Two pupils may repeat the stories, personifying the different characters. They may amplify the stories by adding a few easy sentences such as the following model for I:

Nūntius. — Esne Leōnidās? Esne rēx Lacedaemoniōrum? Esne rēx magnus? Videōne castra tua in campō?

Leōnidās. — Leōnidās sum. Rēx Lacedaemoniōrum sum. Castra mea vidēs. Quid mihi nūntiās?

Nūntius. — Persae adsunt; multās cōpiās dūcunt; proelium parant; mox signum proelī dabitur; multitūdine sagittārum sōlem obscūrābunt.

Leōnidās. — Bene; ita in umbrā pugnābimus.

or as the following model for II:

Cicāda. — Vīcīna tua sum; famēlica sum; mediā hieme sumus; bona es, ō formīca; auxilium mihi dā; sine cibō sum.

Formīca. — Quis es?

Cicāda. — Cicāda sum; ōrō tē, vīcīna cāra mea, cibum mihi dā, iuvā mē.

Formīca. — Quid aestāte agēbās?

Cicāda. — Agrōs et silvās peragrābam et assiduē cantābam.

Formīca (rīdēns[1]). — Tibi, quae aestāte cantābas, nunc saltāre licet.

---

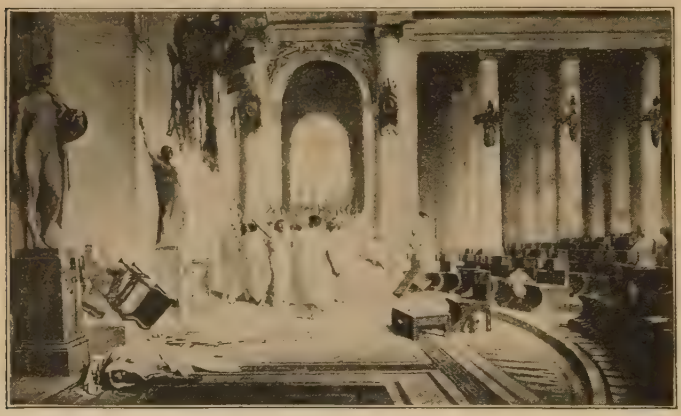
[1] The ending **-ēns** indicates the nominative singular, masculine, feminine, and neuter, of the present participle of the second, third, and fourth conjugations: **monēre**, *to warn;* **monēns**, *warning;* **dūcere**, *to lead;* **dūcēns**, *leading.* (See footnote 1, page 226.)

COLLATERAL READING

Caesar (100 B.C.–44 B.C.)

Caius Julius Caesar was born in Rome from an old patrician family. After serving with the army in Asia, and holding the successive public offices leading to the consulship, he formed with Pompey and Crassus the "First Triumvirate" which marked the end of the free republican government at Rome.

At the end of his consulship, he received the command of Gaul as proconsul (58 B.C. to 49 B.C.)



The Murder of Caesar.

In 50 B.C., he defied the Senate's orders and crossed the Rubicon, an act which meant civil war. When fording the stream, he is said to have exclaimed, "Ālea iacta est," "The die is cast," a phrase which has ever since been used to express a decision in a great crisis.

The phrase "vēnī, vīdī, vīcī," "I came, I saw, I conquered," attributed to him, pithily expresses the swiftness of his victories during the Civil War. In less than two years, he was the absolute master of Italy and Spain, having de-

feated his opponents at Pharsalus (Thessaly), Thapsus (Africa), and Munda (Spain), and having received the title of *Imperātor* for life.

He was murdered in 44 B.C. According to an old story, when he saw Brutus, his most trusted confidant, among the conspirators, he sadly exclaimed, "Et tū, Brūte," "Thou too, Brutus!" and drawing his toga about him, he defended himself no longer and fell bleeding from twenty-three wounds.

Caesar is considered the greatest of all the great men of antiquity; as a general he was unequalled; as an orator, he stood second only to Cicero; and he was hardly surpassed as a historian. Besides, he was a great architect, mathematician, jurist, and statesman.

LESSON XL

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

82. Nominative and Accusative Plural (–ēs). — The nominative and accusative plural of all masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension are alike. They are formed by replacing the ending **–is** of the genitive singular by **–ēs.**

Rēgēs mīlitēs dūcunt. *The kings lead the soldiers.*
subject direct object

83. The Genitive Plural of all the nouns with consonant stems is formed by replacing the ending **–is** of the genitive singular by **–um.**[1]

Virtūtem mīlitum laudō. *I praise the bravery of the soldiers.*
genitive case

84. The Future of the Third Conjugation. — The future, active and passive, of the third conjugation has the tense sign **–ē–**, which is weakened to **e** in the third person singular, active, and in the third person plural, active and passive, and changed to **a** in the first person, active and passive. The usual personal endings are added (see §§ 18 and 65 *b*).

[1] It must not be confused with the ending **–um** of the nominative neuter singular and the accusative masculine and neuter singular of the second declension.

MĪLITĒS DŪCAM.

FUTURE OF dūcere AND dūcī

ACTIVE VOICE (I shall or will lead soldiers, etc.)	PASSIVE VOICE (I shall or will be led by a soldier, etc.)
Mīlitēs dū′cam	**Ā mīlite dū′car**
Mīlitēs dū′cēs	**Ā mīlite dūcē′ris**
Mīlitēs dū′cet	**Ā mīlite dūcē′tur**
Mīlitēs dūcē′mus	**Ā mīlite dūcē′mur**
Mīlitēs dūcē′tis	**Ā mīlite dūcē′minī**
Mīlitēs dū′cent	**Ā mīlite dūcen′tur**

Note (*a*) that the tense sign of the future of the third conjugation is not **-bi-** as in the first and second;

(*b*) that, except in the first person singular, the future of the third conjugation looks like the present indicative of the second. Compare the two.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
a'mor, –ōris, m.	*love*	amorous
līber'tās, –ā'tis, f.	*liberty, freedom*	
ob'ses, –idis, m.	*hostage*	
prīn'ceps, –ipis, m.	*leader, chief*	prince, principal
dēfen'dō, –ere, dēfen'dī, dēfēn'sus	*defend, protect*	defender, defense
vin'cō, –ere, vī'cī, vic'tus	*vanquish, conquer*	victor, invincible

EXERCISES

I. **Oral.**

(*a*) Give (1) the present stem; (2) the present infinitive passive of:

dēligere, pōnere, mittere, ostendere, dēfendere, petere, vincere.

(3) Divide these infinitives into syllables, indicating which one must be accented.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

dēfenditis, dēfendētis, vinciminī, vincēminī, pōnentur, mitteris, mittēris, ostendēbāmus, petēs, dēligar, vincēmus, dēfendam.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Rōmānī cōnsulēs malōs nōn dēligent.
2. Amor patriae bonōs mīlitēs semper dūcit.
3. Virtūs mīlitum Rōmānōrum magna erat.
4. Gallī multōs obsidēs (*or* magnum numerum obsidum) Caesarī dant.
5. Rēgēs lībertātem numquam dēfendent.
6. Facta glōriōsa prīncipum nostrōrum nārrābuntur.
7. Cōpiae ā prīncipe in castra dūcentur.

8. Cōpiās Cassī et Labiēnī, cōnsulum, vincēmus.
9. Ā sociīs vestrīs nōn semper dēfendēminī.
10. Cōnsulēs bonī ā populō Rōmānō dēligentur.
11. Lēgātōs ad prīncipēs Gallōrum mittēmus et pācem petēmus.
12. Sī prīncipēs malōs dēligēmus, vincēmur.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*) the nominatives, genitives, and accusatives plural of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Give the singular cases, the nominative, genitive, and accusative plural of:

prīnceps nōtus, mīles tardus, obses novus.

(*b*) Give the present, past, and future of:

1. **Lībertātem dēfendere.** 2. **Ā Caesare vincī.**

(*c*) Put in the plural the italicized words:

1. Pācem *petam.* 2. Cōpiās in castra *dūcēs.* 3. *Victōriam* prīncipī *nūntiābō.* 4. *Mīles* patriam *dēfendet.* 5. *Rēx mē timēbit.* 6. Virtūtem *cōnsulis laudō.*

(*d*) Review. Replace the past by (1) the present; (2) the future:

1. Patriam bene dēfendēbāmus. 2. Pācem petēbant. 3. Facta glōriōsa prīncipum nārrābantur. 4. Eōs nōn vincēbātis. 5. Lēgātus ā rēge dēligēbāris.

(*e*) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive, and translate:

1. Amor patriae mīlitēs dūcit. *Model:* Mīlitēs amōre patriae dūcuntur. 2. Gallī multōs obsidēs prīncipī novō

dant. 3. Rōmānī magnam virtūtem ostendent. 4. Caesar Gallōs vincēbat. 5. Populus Rōmānus cōnsulēs malōs nōn dēliget. 6. Rēx lībertātem nōn dēfendēbat.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I shall send, we shall be defended, you (singular) will conquer, he will not be chosen, you will not lead, we shall excel.

(*b*) 1. We shall ask for peace.
2. They will be vanquished by Caesar.
3. The camp will be pitched.
4. The speed of our soldiers was famous.
5. The courage of the leaders will be praised.
6. We shall not elect bad consuls.
7. A large number of hostages was given by the king.
8. Good leaders will defend liberty.
9. They will be led by their love for (of) their kings.
10. Rome will be defended by the bravery of the consuls.

READING LESSON

Id Satis Erit (That Will Be Enough)

Antiochus, rēx Syriae, bellum cum Rōmānīs gerēbat. Hannibalī, prīncipī Poenōrum, magnās cōpiās ostendēbat. Arma et vestīmenta equitum et peditum aurō et argentō fulgēbant; multī carrī magnum numerum impedīmentōrum portābant; ōrnāmenta multōrum elephantōrum aurea erant: equī frēnōs argenteōs habēbant.

Tum rēx Antiochus, "Quid putās?" inquit. "Estne satis Rōmānīs?" Hannibal respondit, "Id Rōmānīs certē erit etiamsi avidī et avārī sunt."

Rēx dē multitūdine mīlitum quaerēbat: Hannibal dē praedā futūrā Rōmānōrum respondit.

COLLATERAL READING

Hannibal

The fight between Rome and Carthage for the supremacy in the West lasted from 264 B.C. to 146 B.C., and is divided into three periods: The First Punic War ("The War for Sicily"); the Second Punic War ("The War for Spain" or "The War with Hannibal"); and the Third Punic War ("The War for Africa").

Carthage.

View of the military harbor. Compare this with the pictures on pages 82, 145, 191, and 295.

Hannibal was the youngest son of Hamilcar Barca, the Carthaginian leader during the First Punic War. When Hannibal was only nine years old, his father swore him at the altar to eternal hostility to Rome. At twenty-six, he succeeded to the command in Spain, crossed the Pyrenees and the Rhone, forced the passes of the Alps, reached Cisalpine Gaul (see page 137) and defeated the Romans at the *Ticinus* and at the *Trebia*. The next spring he crossed the

Apennines and defeated the Roman troops near *Lake Trasimene* and a little later at the bloody battle of *Cannae*.

But Hannibal failed to reap the fruit of his victories. He tarried too long at Capua. Yet for thirteen years after the battle of Cannae, he maintained himself in Italy without reinforcement in men or money — always winning a battle when he could engage the enemy in the field.

Once he marched to the very walls of Rome, ravaging the fields about the city, but the only result was the fruitless fright he gave Rome — such that for generations Roman mothers stilled their children by the terror-bearing phrase "Hannibal ad portās," "Hannibal at the Gates."

In 202 Hannibal was summoned home to defend Carthage, and the same year the Second Punic War ended with his first and only defeat at the battle of Zama (Africa), which left Rome without any rival in the West.

Hannibal left his country and took refuge first at the court of Antiochus, king of Syria, and later at that of Prusias, king of Bithynia, where he died.

"*The greatest military genius* who ever lived attacked the *most military people* which ever existed, and the genius was defeated after a sixteen years' war."

LESSON XLI

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

85. Dative and Ablative Plural (**–ibus**).— The dative and ablative plural of the third declension are alike. They are formed by replacing the ending **–is** of the genitive singular by **–ibus**.

Mīlitibus victōriam nūntiāvī. (indirect object) *I announced the victory to the soldiers.*

Patria ā mīlitibus dēfendētur. (ablative of agent) *The country will be defended by the soldiers.*

86. Consonant Stems of the Third Declension, Masculine and Feminine.

	cīvitās, f., *state*	**eques**, m., *cavalryman*	**lēx**, f., *law*	*Endings*
		SINGULAR		
Base and stem:	**cīvitāt–**	**equit–**	**lēg–**	
Nom.:	**cī'vitās**	**e'ques**	**lēx**	(various)
Gen.:	**cīvitā'tis**	**e'quitis**	**lē'gis**	**–is**
Dat.:	**cīvitā'tī**	**e'quitī**	**lē'gī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**cīvitā'tem**	**e'quitem**	**lē'gem**	**–em**
Abl.:	**cīvitā'te**	**e'quite**	**lē'ge**	**–e**
		PLURAL		
Nom.:	**cīvitā'tēs**	**e'quitēs**	**lē'gēs**	**–ēs**
Gen.:	**cīvitā'tum**	**e'quitum**	**lē'gum**	**–um**
Dat.:	**cīvitā'tibus**	**equi'tibus**	**lē'gibus**	**–ibus**
Acc.:	**cīvitā'tēs**	**e'quitēs**	**lē'gēs**	**–ēs**
Abl.:	**cīvitā'tibus**	**equi'tibus**	**lē'gibus**	**–ibus**

87. The Perfect Tenses of the Third Conjugation, active and passive, are formed exactly like those of the first and second. (See §§ 52, 54, 57, and 74.)

The perfect and participial stems of verbs of the third conjugation vary greatly. Review the principal parts of **dēligere**, **dūcere**, **mittere**, **petere** (Lesson XXXVIII); **cēdere**, **ostendere**, **pōnere**, **tribuere** (Lesson XXXIX); **dēfendere** and **vincere** (Lesson XL).

CONJUGATION OF **dūcere** AND **dūcī**

PERFECT

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
(*I led* or *have led infantrymen*, etc.)	(*I was led* or *have been led by infantrymen*, etc.)
Peditēs dū'xī	**Ā peditibus duc'tus, –a, –um sum**
Peditēs dūxis'tī, etc.	**Ā peditibus duc'tus, –a, –um es**, etc.

PAST PERFECT

(*I had led cavalrymen*, etc.)	(*I had been led by cavalrymen*, etc.)
Equitēs dū'xeram	**Ab equitibus duc'tus, –a, –um eram**
Equitēs dū'xerās, etc.	**Ab equitibus duc'tus, –a, –um erās**, etc.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
cī'vitās, –ā'tis, f.	*state*	city
e'ques, –itis, m.	*cavalryman*	equestrian
lēx, lē'gis, f.	*law*	legal
pe'des, –itis, m.	*infantryman*	pedestrian
vē'rum, –ī, n.	*truth*	verify, verily
prō (with ablative)	*for*	pro and con

PEDITĒS DŪXI.

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
conten′dō, –ere, conten′dī, conten′tus	*fight, hasten*	contention
dī′cō, dī′cere, dī′xī, dic′tus	*say, tell*	diction, edict
ge′rō, –ere, ges′sī, ges′tus	*do, perform*	jest, gesture
scrī′bō, –ere, scrīp′sī, scrīp′tus	*write*	script, scribe
bellum gerere	*wage war*	
vērum dīcere	*speak the truth*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) (1) Identify and translate:

mīsērunt, scrībunt, missī estis, dēlēgeram, dēlēcta erat, scrīpserant, victī sunt, dīxit, dicta sunt, gerō, gessimus, gestae erant.

(2) Give the perfect and participial stems of each verb.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Caesar in Galliā bellum gessit.
2. Lībertās ā rēgibus numquam dēfēnsa erat.
3. Victōria mīlitibus ā Caesare nūntiātur.
4. Hominibus semper vērum dīxī.
5. Cīvitās Rōmāna ā cōnsulibus dēfēnsa est.
6. Caesar prīncipibus Gallōrum scrīpsit.
7. Facta glōriōsa ab equitibus et peditibus gesta erant.
8. Prō lēgibus, prō lībertāte, prō patriā semper contendistis.
9. Peditēs ab equitibus saepe victī sunt.
10. Cum cīvitātibus fīnitimīs pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāverāmus.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*) all the datives and ablatives of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular and plural:

cīvitās fīnitima, lēx bona, pedes tardus.

(*b*) Give the perfect and past perfect of:

1. **Bellum gerere.** 2. **Ab amīcīs dēfendī.**

(*c*) Review. Supply the proper endings (1) in the singular; (2) in the plural:

1. Cōnsul— (indirect object) victōriam nūntiō. 2. Prō lēg— contendērunt. 3. Cum cīvitāt— fīnitim— pāx

cōnfirmāta est. 4. Homin— (indirect object) vērum dīcere dēbēmus.

(*d*) Review. Replace (1) the italicized masculine words by the feminine form; (2) the italicized singular words by the plural, masculine and feminine, and make the other necessary changes:

1. *Dominus bonus laudātus* est. *Model:* (*a*) Domina bona laudāta est; (*b*) Dominī bonī laudātī sunt; dominae bonae laudātae sunt. 2. *Puer parvus* ad templum *ductus* est. 3. Ad Caesarem *missus* sum. 4. *Rēx malus victus* est. 5. Semper *dēfēnsus* erās. 6. *Fīlius* cōnsulis nōn *dēlectus* erat.

(*e*) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the present; (2) the past; (3) the future; (4) the perfect; (5) the past perfect of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Dīcere:* Nōs semper vērum ——.
2. *Vincī:* Ego ab equitibus ——.
3. *Gerere:* Rōmānī bellum ——.
4. *Mittī:* Lēgātī ā rēge ad Caesarem ——.
5. *Scrībere:* Vōs rēgī nōn ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I say, they told (perfect), you do (**gerere**), she did, it has been done (neuter), they used to write, they wrote; a few words had been written; I have fought, they have been led, she had been sent, you have not been defeated.

(*b*) 1. You did not tell us the truth.

2. The freedom of the state has never been defended by laws.

3. A few cavalrymen had defeated a large number of infantrymen.

4. The state had been defended by the soldiers, not by the leaders.
5. We wrote to the Roman consuls.
6. You have waged war in Italy.
7. The consul had not told the truth to the hostages.
8. Kings have never defended liberty.
9. The Gauls had been defeated by Roman cavalrymen.
10. Who has not fought for his country, for the state, for the laws, (and) for liberty?

READING LESSON

Rānae et Iuppiter (The Frogs and Jupiter)

Rānae in palūdibus diū līberāe vīvēbant sed lībertātem nōn iam amābant.

Rēgem ā Iove petīvērunt. Pater deōrum, rānārum clāmōribus exōrātus, trabem magnam ad eās mīsit.

Rēx novus ē caelō in aquam cecidit. Rānae, sonō perterritae, sē abdidērunt, sed postquam trabem immōtam in aquā vīdērunt, cum magnā contemptiōne in eā cōnsēdērunt, et alium rēgem clāmōribus novīs ā patre deōrum petīvērunt.

Tum Iuppiter stultitiam rānārum castīgāre statuit et gruem ad eās mīsit. Ea rānās ferē cūnctās dēvorāvit. Paucae necem fugitāvērunt.

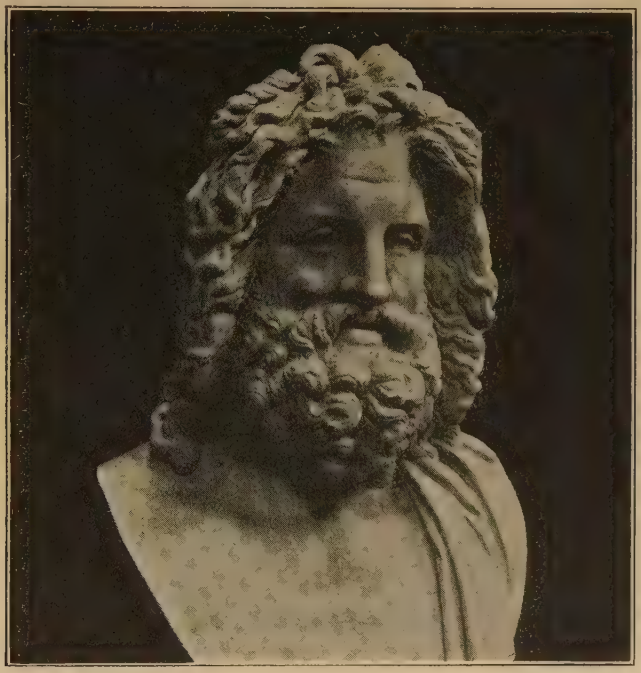
Nostrā fortūnā contentī esse dēbēmus.

EXERCISES

One of the pupils may read the questions, and his classmates answer them:

1. Ubi rānae vīvēbant? 2. Quōmodo vīvēbant? 3. Quid nōn iam amābant? 4. Quod dōnum ā Iove petīvērunt? 5. Quod dōnum Iuppiter ad eās mīsit? 6. Cūr? 7. Ē quō locō rēx novus cecidit? 8. Quō (*where*) cecidit?

9. Cūr rānae perterritae sunt? 10. Quid fēcērunt? 11. Cūr cum magnā contemptiōne in trabe consēdērunt? 12. Ā quō deō alium rēgem petīvērunt? 13. Cūr Iuppiter ad rānās gruem mīsit? 14. Cūnctāsne rānās grūs dēvorāvit? 15. Quot necem fugitāverunt?



JUPITER.

COLLATERAL READING

WRITING MATERIAL

The Romans wrote either on wax tablets or on papyrus or on parchment. To write on tablets, they used a piece of bone or metal, with one of the ends pointed like a pencil, and the other flattened so as to spread the wax or to erase

the writing. To write on papyrus or on parchment, they used a reed sharpened obliquely and dipped in ink.

Books were made of sheets of papyrus (or of parchment, 2d century A.D.) rolled around a stick. Each book was

ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS.

This lifelike face is a Pompeian painting in the museum at Naples.

put into a case, bearing the title. Schoolboys' books were carried in a box of cylinder shape (**capsa**). (See picture on page xii.)

Persius, describing the hard task of the "pedagogue" or trusted slave in charge of a boy's education, goes on as

follows: "At last (the boy has just got up), there he is with his book, his bicolored parchment of which the hair has fallen off, his notebooks and the knotty reed in his hand. Then new complaints are heard: now the ink too thick does not flow from the pen or too thin does not show on the paper; now the pen leaves two strokes instead of one . . ."

The Romans wrote a great many business and private letters. Short notes were written on tablets which were returned with the answer. Letters were written on papyrus. Both letters and short notes were tied by a thread and sealed.

Official mail was carried quickly, especially after the imperial postal system was created. Private mail was forwarded, as the occasion arose, through friends, public officials, or tradesmen, or by slaves if one was rich, or by special messengers if the letter was for people living in town or the suburbs.

LESSON XLII

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

88. The Singular of Neuter Nouns with consonant stems is declined like the masculine and feminine nouns of the same group, except that the accusative is always like the nominative:

SINGULAR

	flūmen, n., *river*	**caput**, n., *head*	**tempus**, n., *time*	*Endings*
Base and stem:	**flūmin–**	**capit–**	**tempor–**	
Nom.:	**flū′men**	**ca′put**	**tem′pus**	(various)
Gen.:	**flū′minis**	**ca′pitis**	**tem′poris**	**–is**
Dat.:	**flū′minī**	**ca′pitī**	**tem′porī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**flū′men**	**ca′put**	**tem′pus**	(like Nom.)
Abl.:	**flū′mine**	**ca′pite**	**tem′pore**	**–e**

89. Verbs in *–iō* of the Third Conjugation. — A few very common verbs of the third conjugation show **–i–** before **–o** and **–u** in the present indicative, active and passive.

90. The principal parts of the model verb **capere**, *to seize, to catch, to take*, are:

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
capiō	**capere**	**cēpī**	**captus**

Stem: Present, **cape–**; Perfect, **cēp–**; Participial, **capt–**

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **capere** AND **capī**

ACTIVE (I take up arms, etc.)	PASSIVE (I am caught by a cavalryman, etc.)
Arma ca′piō	**Ab equite ca′pior**
Arma ca′pis	**Ab equite ca′peris**
Arma ca′pit	**Ab equite ca′pitur**
Arma ca′pimus	**Ab equite ca′pimur**
Arma ca′pitis	**Ab equite capi′minī**
Arma ca′piunt	**Ab equite capiun′tur**

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
altitū′do, –inis, f.	*depth*	altitude
ca′put, –itis, n.	*head, capital*	decapitate
cor′pus, –oris, n.	*body*	corps, corpse
flū′men, –inis, n.	*river*	flume
i′ter, iti′neris, n.	*way, road*	itinerary
tem′pus, –oris, n.	*time*	temporal, temporize
vul′nus, –eris, n.	*wound*	vulnerable
per (with acc.)	*through*	*per*forate
ca′piō, –ere, cē′pī, cap′tus	*seize, take, catch*	capture, captive
acci′piō, –ere,[1] **accē′pī, accep′tus**	*receive*	accept
fa′ciō, –ere, fē′cī, fac′tus	*make, do*	fact, faction
fu′giō, –ere, fūgī, ——	*flee, fly*	fugitive
arma capere	*take up arms*	
iter facere	*march*	

[1] In composition, the **a** of **capere** becomes **i**: **ac** + **capere** = **accipere**, and the **a** of **captus** becomes **–e**: **acceptus**.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

fugitis, fugiunt, accipiō, accipit, acciperis, capiminī, capis, facit, facimus, faciunt.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Tempus fugit.
2. Gallī arma capiunt.
3. Obsidēs accipimus, nōn damus.
4. Altitūdō eius flūminis numquam magna est.
5. Mīlitēs Rōmānī numquam fugiunt.
6. Eō tempore,[1] superba Rōma caput mundī erat.
7. Paucī mīlitēs capiuntur.
8. Caesar per Galliam iter facit.
9. Vulnus in corpore accipiō.
10. Vulnus in capite ā prīncipe accipitur.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*) all the neuter nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular:

iter nostrum, tempus longum, flūmen lātum.

(*b*) Give the present indicative of:

1. **Vulnus accipere.** 2. **Ā mīlite capī.**

(*c*) Review. Replace the italicized singular words by their plurals, and vice versa:

1. *Equitēs fugiunt.* 2. *Obses accipitur.* 3. *Lēgātus* ad oppidum iter *facit.* 4. Arma *capimus.* 5. Ab *equitibus capiminī.*

---

[1] Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Eō tempore Cicerō cōnsul erat. *At that time Cicero was consul.*
ablative of time

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by the present indicative of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Capere:* Caesar prīncipēs Gallōrum ——.
2. *Facere:* Nōs per Ītaliam iter ——.
3. *Fugere:* Peditēs Rōmānī numquam ——.
4. *Accipī:* Multī obsidēs ——.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) He takes, they do not take, you are caught, I make, you are making, we receive, she does not receive, a wound is received, we flee.

(*b*) 1. At that time[1] Caesar was elected consul.

2. This road leads to the river.
3. Few infantry men are caught.
4. You do not take up arms.
5. We march through Italy.
6. Time does not fly if you are lazy.
7. Hostages are received but not given by the Romans.
8. Rome will always be the haughty capital of the world.
9. My friend is inquiring about (**quaerere dē**, with ablative) the depth of the river.
10. The chief flees, receives a wound in the body, (and) is captured.

READING LESSON

I. Quam Pulchrum Caput! (What a Beautiful Head!)

Quīdam in officīnam sculptōris intrat et persōnam (*mask*) pulchram videt. Eam circumspicit et clāmat, "Quam pulchrum caput! sed nūllum cerebrum habet."

Idem, nōn sine causā, dē multīs discipulīs dīcī potest.

[1] See footnote on previous page.

II. Mors Epamīnōndae (Epaminondas' Death)

Epamīnōndās, dux Thēbānōrum, in certāmine (*or* in proeliō) hastā graviter vulnerātus erat. Vulnus grave erat. Amīcī eum circumstābant. Nōn longō post tempore, eōs interrogāvit, "Salvusne clipeus meus est? Estne victōria certa?" Amīcī utrumque affirmāvērunt. Tum Epamīnōndās hastam ē corpore ēripuit et statim exspīrāvit.

Persōnae Rōmānae.

EXERCISES (Optional)

Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular:

vulnus malum, caput pulchrum, corpus sānum (*healthy*).

(*b*) Give (1) the first persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of: **idem dīcere.**

(2) The present indicative: **hastam ēripere** (see **capere**).

(3) The third persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of: **persōnam** (*a mask*) **vidēre.**

COLLATERAL READING

The Roman Calendar

Years were indicated either by the names of the consuls: **T. Veturiō Sp. Postumiō coss.** (= **cōnsulibus**), that is, *the year during which Titus Veturius and Spurius Postumius were consuls;* or from the foundation of Rome 753 B.C.: **annō nōnāgēsimō U. C.** or **A. U. C.** = **annō nōnāgēsimō Urbis Conditae** or **ab Urbe Conditā**, that is, *the ninetieth year from the foundation of the city* (*of Rome*).

Before Caesar's time (to 46 B.C.) the year had only 355 days. Caesar gave the year 365 days. Every fourth year, the 24th of February was repeated.

The months, which after Caesar's change had the same number of days as now, were divided into three unequal parts by the Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Calends were the first day of the month; the Nones came nine days before the Ides; and the Ides were on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the other months. Originally the Calends fell on the new moon and the Ides on the full moon. The months were:

Iānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Māius, Iūnius, Quīnctīlis (July), Sextīlis (August), September, Octōber, November, December.[1]

[1] The first day of the year fell on March 1st till 153 B.C., a fact which explains the Latin names of the months *Quīnctīlis* (the 5th month), *Sextīlis* (the 6th month), *September* (the 7th month), *Octōber* (the 8th month), *November* (the 9th month), and *December* (the 10th month).

The part of the day between sunrise and sunset was divided into twelve equal hours of different duration according to season; noon alone was a fixed time which marked the beginning of the 7th hour.

A Roman Room, Showing a Calendar.

Night between sunset and sunrise was divided into four equal parts or watches, also of different duration according to season, with midnight as a fixed hour which marked the beginning of the 3d watch.

To know the time, sundials were used from 263 B.C., and clepsydras or water-clocks (a vessel of glass or some transparent substance, from which the water trickled out through a narrow orifice) from 159 B.C. —*Rome et les Romains,* by Bornecque and Mornet.

LESSON XLIII

THIRD DECLENSION. THIRD CONJUGATION

91. The Plural of Neuter Nouns of the third declension with consonant stems is declined like the masculine and feminine nouns of the same group, except that both the nominative and accusative end in **–a** instead of **–ēs**.

FLŪMEN RŌMĀNUM.

Flūmen, –inis, *river*

	SINGULAR	*Endings*	PLURAL	*Endings*
Nom.:	**flū′men**	(various)	**flū′mina**	**–a**
Gen.:	**flū′minis**	**–is**	**flū′minum**	**–um**
Dat.:	**flū′minī**	**–ī**	**flūmi′nibus**	**–ibus**
Acc.:	**flū′men**	(like the Nom.)	**flū′mina**	**–a**
Abl.:	**flū′mine**	**–e**	**flūmi′nibus**	**–ibus**

92. The Past and Future of third conjugation verbs in **–iō** are formed regularly like **dūcere** (see §§ 81 and 84) except that they retain the **–i.**

PAST OF **capere** AND **capī**

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
(I used to take, I took, I did take, I was taking the money, etc.)	(I used to be seized, I was seized by Cassius, etc.)
Pecūniam capiē'bam	**Ā Cassiō capiē'bar**
Pecūniam capiē'bās	**Ā Cassiō capiēbā'ris**
Pecūniam capiē'bat	**Ā Cassiō capiēbā'tur**
Pecūniam capiēbā'mus	**Ā Cassiō capiēbā'mur**
Pecūniam capiēbā'tis	**Ā Cassiō capiēbā'minī**
Pecūniam capiē'bant	**Ā Cassiō capiēban'tur**

FUTURE

(I shall or will take the town, etc.)	(I shall or will be caught at that time, etc.)
Oppidum ca'piam	**Eō tempore ca'piar**
Oppidum ca'piēs	**Eō tempore capiē'ris**
Oppidum ca'piet	**Eō tempore capiē'tur**
Oppidum capiē'mus	**Eō tempore capiē'mur**
Oppidum capiē'tis	**Eō tempore capiē'minī**
Oppidum ca'pient	**Eō tempore capien'tur**

93. The Perfect Tenses are formed regularly.

PERFECT

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
(I took or have taken a sword, etc.)	(I was or have been caught in the plain, etc.)
Gladium cē'pī	**In campō cap'tus, –a, –um sum**
Gladium cēpis'tī	**In campō cap'tus, –a, –um es**
Gladium cē'pit	**In campō cap'tus, –a, –um est**

PERFECT

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE	
Gladium cē′pimus	**In campō cap′tī, –ae, –a**	**sumus**
Gladium cēpis′tis	**In campō cap′tī, –ae, –a**	**estis**
Gladium cēpē′runt	**In campō cap′tī, –ae, –a**	**sunt**

PAST PERFECT

(I had captured a chief, etc.)	(I had been captured by a chief, etc.)	
Prīncipem cē′peram	**Ā prīncipe cap′tus, –a, –um**	**eram**
Prīncipem cēp′erās, etc.	**Ā prīncipe cap′tus, –a, –um**	**erās**, etc.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
ge′nus, –eris, n.	*sort, kind*	genus, generic
rī′pa, –ae, f.	*(river) bank*	riparian
al′tus, –a, –um	*high, deep*	altitude
va′rius, –a, –um	*various*	varied, variety
ēri′piō, –ere,[1] **ēri′puī, ērep′tus**	*take out, snatch*	rapt, rapture
ia′ciō, –ere, iē′cī, iac′tus	*throw*	eject, ejection
interfi′ciō, –ere,[1] **interfē′cī, interfec′tus**	*kill*	
mū′tō, –ā′re, –tā′vī, –tā′tus	*change*	mutation, mutable

magnīs itineribus contendere *to hasten by forced marches*

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) (1) Give the base and stem of all the nouns and the three stems of all the verbs in the vocabularies of

[1] See footnote, p. 253, and compare with **rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus**, *seize*, and **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus**, *do*.

Lessons XLII and XLIII; (2) divide each word into syllables, indicating which syllable must be accented.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

iaciam, iēcistī, iacitur, iactum erat, ēripient, ēripiēbātur, ēripuērunt, ēreptī sunt, interficiētur, interfēceram, interfectī erant, interficiēbāmus, mūtāvērunt, mūtābitur, mūtātum est.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully, and translate:

1. Tempora mūtantur.
2. Rīpae flūminum saepe altae sunt.
3. Pauca flūmina Eurōpae longa sunt.
4. Multī mīlitēs vulnera varia accipiēbant.
5. Varia genera vulnerum accēperāmus.
6. Mīlitēs nostrī patriam ē perīculō ēripient.
7. Caesar in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit.
8. Rēx ab equitibus interfectus est.
9. Corpus prīncipis in flūmen iactum erat.
10. Hastae ē vulneribus ēripiēbantur.
11. Cassium et Labiēnum cōnsulēs interficiētis et corpora eōrum in flūmen iaciētis.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*) all the neuter nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline (1) in both numbers: **genus novum**; (2) in the plural:

vulnera varia, itinera longa, multa flūmina.

(*b*) Give all the tenses of the indicative of:

1. **Obsidēs interficere.** 2. **Ē perīculō ēripī.**

(*c*) Review. Put the italicized singular nouns in the plural, and make all necessary changes:

1. *Lēgātus vulnus* accipiēbat. 2. Rīpae *flūminis* altae sunt. 3. *Corpus* in flūmen iacitur. 4. *Caput* parvum

videō. 5. *Hasta* ē *vulnere* ērepta erat. 6. *Iter* longum nōn grātum est.

(*d*) Review. Replace the present by all the other tenses of the indicative:

1. Eques fugit. 2. Puerum ē flūmine ēripiō. 3. Gallī Cassium cōnsulem interficiunt. 4. Corpora servōrum in flūmen iaciuntur.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) They were taking, you will not take, she was taken, we snatch away, you (singular) will be snatched away, we never change, they were changed, he throws, we used to throw, we have killed, I shall not kill, he used to kill, she will be killed, they have not killed.

(*b*) 1. Times were changed, are changed, will be changed.

2. We shall snatch our friends away from danger.

3. At that time, the depth of the rivers was small.

4. You never threw away your weapons and you never fled.

5. We were hastening by forced marches through Gaul.

6. The slaves have been caught and killed on the banks of the rivers.

7. The horse had received various wounds in the body and in the head, but had not been killed.

8. They had snatched the spears from their wounds.

9. They will receive our hostages, will kill them, and will throw the bodies into the river.

READING LESSON

I. Quid Deinde? (What Then?)

Quondam amīcō suō Cīneae Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpīrī, "Ītaliam," inquit, "subiciam." Respondit Cīneās, "Tum, quid agēs,

ō rēx?" — "Tum, per Siciliam magnīs itineribus contendam." Cīneās dīxit, "Quid posteā agēs?" Rēx quī nōndum Cīneae mentem perspiciēbat, "Āfricam," inquit, "petam." Pergit Cīneās, "Quid deinde, ō rēx?" "Tum dēnique, mī amīce," ait Pyrrhus, "vītam in ōtiō agēmus." — "Quīn tū," respondit Cīneās, "in ōtiō iam nunc vītam agis?"

Relief on the Arch of Titus.

This relief shows part of the plunder, including the famous seven-branched candle-stick and the trumpets, which the Romans, when they captured Jerusalem in 70 A.D., carried away from the city to Rome.

II. Nōmina Rōmānōrum (Roman Names)

Cīvēs Rōmānī tria nōmina habēbant. Prīmum nōmen praenōmen erat; secundum vel medium, maiōrum nōmen erat; tertium vel extrēmum cognōmen erat.

Exemplī gratiā, M. Tullius Cicerō: M. vel Mārcus praenōmen erat; Tullius, gentis nōmen erat. Cicerō cognōmen erat. Tullius vērum nōmen erat.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Names

A Roman had at least three names. The gentile name was the *nomen*, the most important of the three; it came in the middle. The third (the *cognomen*) marked the family. The first (the *praenomen*) was the individual name (like our baptismal name). Then a Roman often received also a surname for some achievement or characteristic. Thus *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus* was the *individual* Publius of the Scipio *family* of the great Cornelian *gens*, *surnamed* Africanus for his conquest of Africa.

The first name was often abbreviated in writing. The most common of these abbreviations were: C. for Caius (Gaius); Cn. for Gnaeus; L. for Lucius; M. for Marcus; P. for Publius; Q. for Quintus; T. for Titus.

REVIEW LESSON XLIV

94. Consonant Stems of the Third Declension: masculine, feminine, and neuter.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	*Endings* M.	F.	N.
	cōnsul	**lēx**	**flūmen**			
Base and stem:	**cōnsul–**	**lēg–**	**flūmin–**			
Nom.:	**cōnsul**	**lēx**	**flūmen**		(various)	
Gen.:	**cōnsulis**	**lēgis**	**flūminis**	**–is**	**–is**	**–is**
Dat.:	**cōnsulī**	**lēgī**	**flūminī**	**–ī**	**–ī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**cōnsulem**	**lēgem**	**flūmen**	**–em**	**–em**	like Nom.
Abl.:	**cōnsule**	**lēge**	**flūmine**	**–e**	**–e**	**–e**

PLURAL

Nom.:	**cōnsulēs**	**lēgēs**	**flūmina**	**–ēs**	**–a**
Gen.:	**cōnsulum**	**lēgum**	**flūminum**	**–um**	
Dat.:	**cōnsulibus**	**lēgibus**	**flūminibus**	**–ibus**	
Acc.:	**cōnsulēs**	**lēgēs**	**flūmina**	**–ēs**	**–a**
Abl.:	**cōnsulibus**	**lēgibus**	**flūminibus**	**–ibus**	

Compare the following case endings:

DECLENSION	I	II	III
Accusative singular:	**–am**	**–um**	**–em**
Genitive plural:	**–ārum**	**–ōrum**	**–um**
Accusative plural:	**–ās**	**–ōs**	**–ēs**

95. Third Conjugation. — Compare the conjugation of **dūcere** and that of **capere.**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
		Present Infinitive	
dūcere	**capere**	**dūcī**	**capī**
		Present Indicative	
dūcō	**capiō**	**dūcor**	**capior**
dūcis	**capis**	**dūceris**	**caperis**
dūcit	**capit**	**dūcitur**	**capitur**
dūcimus	**capimus**	**dūcimur**	**capimur**
dūcitis	**capitis**	**dūciminī**	**capiminī**
dūcunt	**capiunt**	**dūcuntur**	**capiuntur**
		Past	
dūcēbam	**capiēbam**	**dūcēbar**	**capiēbar**
dūcēbās	**capiēbās**	**dūcēbāris**	**capiēbāris**
dūcēbat	**capiēbat**	**dūcēbātur**	**capiēbātur**
dūcēbāmus	**capiēbāmus**	**dūcēbāmur**	**capiēbāmur**
dūcēbātis	**capiēbātis**	**dūcēbāminī**	**capiēbāminī**
dūcēbant	**capiēbant**	**dūcēbantur**	**capiēbantur**
		Future (Tense sign **-ē-**; not **-bi-**)	
dūcam	**capiam**	**dūcar**	**capiar**
dūcēs	**capiēs**	**dūcēris**	**capiēris**
dūcet	**capiet**	**dūcētur**	**capiētur**
dūcēmus	**capiēmus**	**dūcēmur**	**capiēmur**
dūcētis	**capiētis**	**dūcēminī**	**capiēminī**
dūcent	**capient**	**dūcentur**	**capientur**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
		Perfect	
dūxī	cēpī	ductus, –a, –um sum	captus –a, –um sum
dūxistī	cēpistī	es	es
dūxit	cēpit	est	est
dūximus	cēpimus	ductī, –ae, –a sumus	captī, –ae, –a sumus
dūxistis	cēpistis	estis	estis
dūxērunt	cēpērunt	sunt	sunt
		Past Perfect	
dūxeram	cēperam	ductus, –a, –um eram	captus, –a, –um eram
dūxerās	cēperās	erās	erās
dūxerat	cēperat	erat	erat
dūxerāmus	cēperāmus	ductī, –ae, –a erāmus	captī, –ae, –a erāmus
dūxerātis	cēperātis	erātis	erātis
dūxerant	cēperant	erant	erant

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Translate into English the following words:

1. *Nouns*

A. First Declension

rīpa

B. Second Declension

vērum

C. Third Declension

altitūdō	caput	cīvitās	eques
amor	celeritās	cōnsul	flūmen
Caesar	Cicerō	corpus	genus

homō	mīles	pedes	tempus
iter	obses	prīnceps	virtūs
lēx	pāx	rēx	vulnus
lībertās			

2. *Adjectives*

altus varius

3. *Verbs*

A. First Conjugation

mūtāre

B. Third Conjugation

accipere	dīcere	gerere	pōnere
capere	discēdere	iacere	praecēdere
cēdere	dūcere	interficere	scrībere
contendere	ēripere	mittere	tribuere
dēfendere	facere	ostendere	vincere
dēligere	fugere	petere	

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

per prō

5. *Idioms*

arma capere	iter facere
bellum gerere	magnīs itineribus contendere
castra pōnere	vērum dīcere

(*b*) Divide all the words in (*a*) into syllables, indicating which one must be accented, and telling why.

(*c*) Point out in (*a*): (1) the masculine nouns; (2) the feminine nouns; (3) the neuter nouns.

(*d*) Give (1) the base and stem (see § 77 *a*) of all the nouns in (*a*); (2) their genitive singular.

(*e*) Point out in (*a*) 3 the verbs which are conjugated like **capere**.

(*f*) Give (1) the principal parts; (2) the three stems of all the verbs in (*a*) 3.

(*g*) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

i. Nouns.

1. How can you tell that a noun belongs to the third declension?

2. What is a noun with a consonant stem?

3. What is the difference between the base and the stem of a noun with a consonant stem?

4. What is the ending of the nominative singular of all nouns of the third declension with consonant stems?

5. What is the ending of the genitive singular of all nouns of the third declension?

6. Why must we learn the genitive singular of nouns of the third declension along with the nominative singular?

7. What is the ending of the accusative singular (*a*) of all masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension; (*b*) of all neuter nouns with consonant stems?

8. What is the ending of the dative singular of all nouns of the third declension?

9. What is the ending of the ablative singular of all nouns of the third declension with consonant stems?

10. What is the common ending of the nominative and accusative plural (*a*) of all masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension; (*b*) of neuter nouns with consonant stems?

11. What is the ending of the genitive plural of nouns of the third declension with consonant stems?

12. What is the common ending of the dative and ablative plural of all nouns of the third declension?

ii. Verbs.

1. (*a*) What is the ending of the present infinitive, active voice, of the third conjugation? (*b*) How does it differ from that of the second conjugation?

2. What is the ending of the present infinitive passive of the third conjugation?

3. (*a*) How is the present indicative active formed? (*b*) How is the present indicative passive formed?

4. (*a*) How is the past (active and passive) formed? (*b*) How does it differ from that of the second conjugation?

5. (*a*) How is the future (active and passive) formed? (*b*) How does it differ from that of the second conjugation?

6. How are the perfect tenses of the third conjugation (active and passive voices) formed?

7. How does the conjugation of **capere** and a few other verbs ending in **–ere** differ from that of the model verb **dūcere**?

8. What does the **a** of **capere**, **facere**, and **rapere** become in composition?

II. **Written.**

(*a*) Translate into Latin the following words, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns*

bank	head	liberty	soldier
body	hostage	love	sort
Caesar	infantryman	man	state
cavalryman	kind	manliness	time
Cicero	king	peace	truth
consul	law	quickness	way
depth	leader	river	wound

2. *Adjectives*

high various

3. *Verbs*

to ask for	to change	to depart	to excel
to attribute	to choose	to display	to fight
to capture	to defend	to do	to flee

to kill	to receive	to send	to throw
to lead	to say	to take (a person)	to vanquish
to make	to seek	to take out	to write
to put	to seize	to tell	to yield

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

for through

5. *Idioms*

to hasten by forced marches	to speak the truth
to march	to take up arms
to pitch camp	to wage war

(*b*) Derivation. Make a list of the English derivatives of **dūcere**, **scrībere**, and **vincere**, according to Type I (see page 178); of **gerere**, **petere**, and **pōnere**, according to Type II; of **dīcere** and **mittere**, according to Type III.

COLLATERAL READING

Travel under the Early Empire

The roads were safe. Piracy ceased from the seas, and trade flourished as it was not to flourish again until the days of Columbus. The ports were crowded with shipping, and the Mediterranean was spread with happy sails. One Roman writer exclaims that there are as many men upon the waves as upon land. . . .

From end to end of the Empire, *travel was safe and rapid.* The grand military roads ran in trunk-lines — a thousand miles at a stretch — from every frontier toward the central heart of the Empire, with a dense network of branches in every province. Guide books described routes and told distances. Inns abounded. The imperial couriers that hurried along the great highways passed a hundred and fifty milestones a day.

Private travel, from the Thames to the Euphrates, was swifter, safer, and more comfortable than ever again until the days of railroads in the nineteenth century. Much of this travel was in wheeled and cushioned carriages, which rolled smoothly along the perfectly faced stones of the Roman roads. But many people chose instead luxurious litters, each swung along by its eight even-paced Cappadocian slaves at a swift trot, with a motion so easy that reading or writing within was a pleasant employment. . . .

A Luxurious Litter.

And men traveled for pleasure as well as for business. There was a keen desire in each great quarter of the Empire to see the other regions which Rome had molded into one world. It seems to have been at least as common a thing for the gentleman of Gaul or Britain to visit the wonders of Rome and of the Nile as for the modern American to spend a summer in England and France.

One language answered all needs from London to Babylon. Families took pleasure trips in a body; and, quite in modern

fashion, they sometimes defaced precious monuments of the past with their scrawls. One of the most famous statues of Egypt bears a scratched inscription that it has been visited by a certain Roman gentleman, " Gemellus," with " his dear wife, Rufilla " and their children.

LESSON XLV

REVIEW

READING LESSON

Familia (The Household)

Familia antīqua societās religiōsa erat. Familiae deōs variōs habēbant. Familia Rōmāna ē parentibus et līberīs [1] et servīs compōnēbātur.

Parentēs pater et māter sunt. Līberī fīliī et fīliae sunt. Patrem, mātrem, frātrēs et sorōrēs habēmus. Pater noster multōs servōs habet. Māter nostra multās servās habet.

Līberī parentēs amant. Līberī ā patre et mātre amantur. Amor patris magnus sed amor mātris pūrus et dīvīnus est. Pater dominus familiae est.

Līberī industriā mātris docentur. Frāter sorōrem parvam iuvat. Frātrēs sorōrēs amant. Frātrēs sorōribus dōna saepe dant. Soror frātrem parvum iuvat. Dōna crēbra frātrī ā sorōre dantur.

Avī parentēs patris et mātris sunt. Avunculī frātrēs mātrum, patruī frātrēs patrum sunt. Amita soror patris, mātertera soror mātris est. Coniugēs marītus et uxor sunt.

Parentēs līberīs exempla bona dare dēbent.

EXERCISES

Answer the following questions, based on the preceding text:

1. Quid familia antīqua erat? 2. Habēbantne familiae antīquae eōsdem deōs? 3. Ē quibus familia Rōmāna

[1] **Līberī**, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *children* (never used in the singular) means the children of Roman citizens; while **puerī**, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *children*, is used for the children of all others.

compōnēbātur? 4. Quī parentēs sunt? 5. Quī līberī sunt? 6. Habētisne patrem, mātrem, frātrēs et sorōrēs? 7. Habetne pater vester multōs servōs? 8. Habetne māter vestra multās servās? 9. Quōs līberī amant? 10. Ā quibus līberī amantur? 11. Suntne īdem amor patris et amor mātris? 12. Quis dominus familiae est?

13. Quōmodo liberī docentur? 14. Quem frāter iuvat? 15. Cui frātrēs dōna saepe dant? 16. Quid soror agit? 17. Quī avī, avunculī, patruī, amitae et māterterae sunt? 18. Quī coniugēs sunt? 19. Quid parentēs līberīs dare dēbent?

One of the pupils may read the above questions and his classmates answer them in complete sentences.

COLLATERAL READING

A Roman Father's Power

The Roman father had complete authority over his sons and grandsons as long as he lived, even when they were grown men and perhaps in the ruling offices of the city. When his son took a wife, she, too, leaving her own family, came under his control. His own daughters passed by marriage from his hand under that of some other house-father.

The father ruled his household, *and the household of his male descendants*, as priest, judge, and king. He could sell or slay his wife, unmarried daughter, grown-up son, or son's wife; and all that was theirs was his.

No appeal lay from him to any higher judge. In practice, however, the father was influenced somewhat by near relatives and by public opinion.

It is a curious fact that, despite the legal slavery of women, the Roman matrons had a dignity and public influence unknown in Greece.

LESSON XLVI

THIRD DECLENSION (*-I* STEMS). FOURTH CONJUGATION

96. *-I* Stems. — We have seen (§ 77 *a*) that nouns with consonant stems have the stem like the base.

Īnsula in Tiberī.

In nouns with **-i** stems, the stem is formed by adding **i** to the base. Their declension differs from that of consonant stems of the third declension only in having the genitive plural in **-ium**, and the nonminative and accusative neuter plural in **-ia**.[1]

[1] A few nouns have kept the old accusative in **-im** and the ablative in **-ī**. **Tiberis, -is,** m., *the Tiber (river)*; acc.: **-im**; abl.: **-ī**.

Nouns with **–i** stems are the following:

(*a*) Nouns ending in **–ēs** and **–is**, not increasing in the genitive, that is, of which the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables.

Compare Nom.: **vulpēs**, *fox;* gen., **vulpis** (**–i** stem, not increasing);

Nom.: **obses**, *hostage;* gen., **obsidis** (consonant stem, increasing).

(*b*) Nouns ending in **–ns** and **–rs**: **cohors, –ortis**, f., *cohort.*

(*c*) Monosyllables ending in **–s** or **–x**, preceded by a consonant: **urbs, urbis**, f., *city.*

(*d*) Neuter nouns ending in **–e, –al, –ar.**

97. The Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns with **–i** stems is like that of masculine and feminine nouns with consonant stems.

SINGULAR

	cīvis, m., *citizen*	**urbs**, f., *city*	
Base:	**cīv–**	**urb–**	
Stem:	**cīvi–**	**urbi–**	*Endings*
Nom.:	**cī'vis**	**urbs**	**–s**
Gen.:	**cī'vis**	**urbis**	**–is**
Dat.:	**cī'vī**	**urbī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**cī'vem**	**urbem**	**–em** (**–im**)
Abl.:	**cī've**	**urbe**	**–e** (**–ī**)

98. The Fourth Conjugation (**–īre**; **–īrī**). The present infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in **–īre**, active voice, and **–īrī**, passive voice: **audīre**, to hear; **audīrī**, to be heard. The present stem is **audī–**.

The present indicative of verbs of the fourth conjugation varies very slightly from that of the verbs in **–iō** of the third conjugation (see § 95).

The quantity of the stem vowel **i** differs in certain persons, and the second person singular, passive voice, ends in **–īris**, not **–eris**.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **audīre** AND **audīrī**

ACTIVE VOICE (I hear the master, etc.)	PASSIVE VOICE (I am heard by the master, etc.)
Dominum au′diō	**Ā dominō au′dior**
Dominum au′dīs	**Ā dominō audī′ris**
Dominum au′dit	**Ā dominō audī′tur**
Dominum audī′mus	**Ā dominō audī′mur**
Dominum audī′tis	**Ā dominō audī′minī**
Dominum au′diunt	**Ā dominō audiun′tur**

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
cī′vis, –is, m.	*citizen*	civic, civil
hos′tis, –is, m.	*enemy (in war)*	hostile, hostility
or′bis, –is, m.	*circle*	orb, orbit
urbs, urbis, f.	*city, town*	urban, urbane
Rō′mulus, –ī, m.	*Romulus*	
prī′mus, –a, –um	*first*	prime
ni′hil (indeclinable)	*nothing*	nihilism
au′diō, –ī′re, audī′vī, audī′tus	*hear, listen to*	audit, audition, audible
pū′niō, –ī′re, pūnī′vī, pūnī′tus	*punish*	punitive
sci′ō, –ī′re, scī′vī, scī′tus	*know*	science, scientist
ve′niō, –ī′re, vē′nī, ven′tus	*come*	advent, convene
inve′niō, –ī′re, invē′nī, inven′tus	*find*	invent, invention
orbis terrārum	*the world*	

THE FINDING OF ROMULUS AND REMUS.
From a painting by Rubens.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

pūnīmus, pūnīminī, sciunt, scītur, venītis, venīs, invenit, inveniuntur, audīris, audīmur.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Eō tempore urbs Rōma caput orbis terrārum erat.
2. Rōmulus prīmus rēx urbis Rōmae fuit.
3. Hostis ad urbem Rōmam venit.

4. Equitēs hostem in urbe inveniunt.
5. Incolae hostī frūmentum nōn dedērunt.
6. Cīvis bonus sum; cīvitātem dēfendō.
7. Verba bonī cīvis audīmus.
8. Prīnceps mīlitēs malōs pūnit.
9. Cūr (*why*) numquam audior? Cūr semper pūnior?
10. Quid scīs? Nihil sciō.
11. Quid dē prīmīs rēgibus eius urbis scītis? Nihil dē eīs scīmus; nihil scītur.
12. Verba prīncipis ā mīlitibus audiuntur.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*) all the nouns with **–i** stems of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular:

cīvis bonus **urbs aeterna**

(*b*) Give the present indicative of:

1. Ad urbem venīre. **2. Ā magistrō pūnīrī.**

(*c*) Review. Supply the singular endings:

1. Cīv— (subject) malus urb— (direct object) nōn dēfendit. 2. Cīv— (direct object) bonum nōn pūniō. 3. Host— (subject) in urb— est. 4. Host— (direct object) in urb— invenīmus. 5. Cum host— pugnāvērunt. 6. Host— (indirect object) frūmentum nōn damus.

(*d*) Review. Put in the singular:

1. Quid scīmus? 2. Mīlitēs veniunt. 3. Rosae in silvīs nōn inveniuntur. 4. Cīvem malum pūnīmus. 5. Nihil audītis.

(*e*) Review. Add the verb endings (present indicative):

1. Vōs verba nostra nōn aud—. 2. Ego ad urbem ven—. 3. Puella saepe pūn— (passive). 4. Mīlitēs

nostrī hostem in campō inven—. 5. Cūr nōs numquam aud— (passive)?

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) You hear, they are heard, I know, it is known, he does not punish, we are punished, we come, you (sing.) do not find, you are always found.

(*b*) 1. We are not heard by the enemy.

2. The enemy is found in the city.

3. Why are you always punished?

4. We do not hear the teacher's words.

5. Teachers do not punish good pupils; they praise them.

6. The Gauls are coming to the city of Rome.

7. He fights in the city with the enemy.

8. We know nothing about (dē) the first kings of the capital of the world.

9. What is known about the first consuls of the city of Rome?

10. Are you a good citizen? The city is always defended by a good citizen.

READING LESSON

I. Taurus et Musca (The Bull and the Fly)

In dorsō taurī musca parva erat. "Sī tē nimis gravō," inquit, "statim āvolābō." Taurus eī respondit, "Ubi es? Nihil sentiō."

II. Servus Piger (The Lazy Slave)

Dominus verberibus servum pigrum castīgābat. Servus exclāmāvit, "Cūr, domine, mē percutis? Nihil fēcī." Et dominus, "Propter id ipsum," inquit, "tē percutiō quod (*because*) nihil fēcistī."

III. Magister Scelestus (The Wicked Teacher)

In bellō quod Rōmānī contrā Vēientēs gerēbant, Fūrius Camillus urbem Falēriōs oppugnābat. Magister lūdī litterārīī fīliōs prīncipum ex urbe ad castra Rōmānōrum dūxit.

Camillus id dōnum nōn accēpit, sed hominem scelestum pūnīre statuit; prōditōrem puerīs trādidit et discipulī magistrum in urbem virgīs quās Camillus eīs dederat ēgērunt.

Permōtī tantā nōbilitāte animī, incolae Falēriōrum Rōmānīs urbem trādidērunt.

Dictation. — These stories may be used as material for dictation.

COLLATERAL READING

The Roman Citizen

The descendants of the original three tribes (Latin, Sabine, Etruscan) formed "the Roman people," in a strict sense. They were *patricians* (men "with fathers"). They alone could vote, or hold office, or sue in courts.

But, like Greek cities, Italian cities contained many non-citizens. . . . These non-citizens were *plebeians* (or the *plebs*). Some of them were rich; but none of them had any part in the religion, or law, or politics of the city. They could not intermarry with citizens. Policy required the city to protect their lives and property, but they had no absolute security against an unscrupulous patrician. . . .

The secession of 497 B.C. gave the plebs the right to choose *tribunes*, with power to protect oppressed plebeians against cruel laws. . . . About 460 B.C. the plebeians began to demand written laws. The patricians opposed the demand furiously; but after a ten-year contest a board of ten men (*Decemvirs*) was elected to put the laws into writing. These "Laws of the Twelve Tables" *applied to plebeian and patrician alike*. . . .

In 377 the final campaign began. The whole body of plebeians united firmly on a group of measures, of which the two most important were: (1) that *at least one consul* each year should be *a plebeian;* (2) that no citizen *should hold more than 300 acres* (*500 iugera*) *of the* PUBLIC *lands.*

After ten years of bitter wrangling, the Senate gave way and the plebeian demands became law.

Then the distinction between the classes died out. Plebeian consuls nominated plebeians for praetors and censors; and since appointments to the Senate were made from those who had held office, that body itself gradually became plebeian.

LESSON XLVII

THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION

99. The Plural of Masculine and Feminine Nouns with **–i** stems is like the plural of masculine and feminine nouns with consonant stems, except that the genitive plural ends in **–ium**, not in **–um**.[1]

	fīnis, f., *end*	**mōns**, m., *mountain*	**vīs**,[2] f., *force*	
		SINGULAR		
Base:	**fīn-**	**mont-**	**vī-**	
Stem:	**fīni-**	**monti-**	**vī-**	*Endings*
Nom.:	**fī′nis**	**mons**	**vīs**	**–s**
Gen.:	**fī′nis**	**mon′tis**	**vīs**	**–is**
Dat.:	**fī′nī**	**mon′tī**	**vī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**fī′nem**	**mon′tem**	**vim**	**–em** (**–im**)
Abl.:	**fī′ne**	**mon′te**	**vī**	**–e** (**–ī**)
		PLURAL		
Nom.:	**fī′nēs**, *territory*	**mon′tēs**	**vī′rēs** (*forces, strength*)	**–ēs**
Gen.:	**fī′nium**	**mon′tium**	**vī′rium**	**–ium**
Dat.:	**fī′nibus**	**mon′tibus**	**vī′ribus**	**–ibus**
Acc.:	**fī′nēs**	**mon′tēs**	**vī′rēs**	**–ēs** (**–īs**)
Abl.:	**fī′nibus**	**mon′tibus**	**vī′ribus**	**–ibus**

100. The Past of the fourth conjugation is formed exactly like that of verbs in **–iō** of the third conjugation. (See § 92.)

[1] A few nouns have kept the old accusative plural in **–īs**.

[2] Note that the noun **vīs**, *force*, is somewhat irregular.

Past of **audīre** and **audīrī**

Active Voice (I used to hear, I was hearing or I heard the enemy, etc.)	Passive Voice (I was or used to be heard by the enemy, etc.)
Hostēs audiē′bam	**Ab hostibus audiē′bar**
Hostēs audiē′bās	**Ab hostibus audiēbā′ris**
Hostēs audiē′bat	**Ab hostibus audiēbā′tur**
Hostēs audiēbā′mus	**Ab hostibus audiēbā′mur**
Hostēs audiēbā′tis	**Ab hostibus audiēbā′minī**
Hostēs audiē′bant	**Ab hostibus audiēban′tur**

Mōns.

This view of Vesuvius is taken across the Forum at Pompeii.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
fī′nis, –is, f.	*end*	final, finish
fī′nēs, –ium, f. pl.	*territory*	confines
mōns, mon′tis, m.	*mountain*	mount
pars, par′tis, f.	*part*	partial
vāl′lum, –ī, n.	*rampart*	wall

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
vīs, vīs, f.	*force, strength, violence*	vim
vī′rēs, –ium, f. pl.	*forces, strength*	
prope (with acc.)	*near*	propinquity
conve′niō, –ī′re, convē′nī, conven′tus	*assemble*	convention
perve′niō, –ī′re, pervē′nī, perven′tus	*arrive, penetrate, reach*	
impe′diō, –ī′re, impedī′vī, impedī′tus	*hinder*	impede, impediment
mū′niō, –ī′re, mūnī′vī, mūnī′tus	*fortify*	ammunition
in (acc.) **per vim pervenīre**	*force one's way into*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the base and stem of each noun in the vocabularies of Lessons XLVI and XLVII; divide each noun into syllables, indicating which syllable is accented.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

pūnit, pūniēbāmus, pūniēbāminī, mūniunt, mūniēbātur, convenītis, conveniēbant, perveniō, perveniēbās, impedit, impediēbāmur, impediēbātis.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Erant multae urbēs in Ītaliā.
2. Montēs Ītaliae altī sunt.
3. Numerus urbium et montium in Ītaliā magnus est.
4. Hostēs in fīnēs Gallōrum per vim perveniēbant.
5. Prope castra hostium conveniēbāmus.
6. Vīs flūminis iter nostrum impediēbat.
7. Oppidum vāllō mūniēbātur.

8. Castra vāllō altō mūniēbātis.
9. Caesar in fīnibus Gallōrum bellum gerēbat.
10. Pars magna urbis dēlēta est.
11. Ā cīvibus bonīs vidēbāminī et audiēbāminī.

(*d*) Indicate in (*c*) all the plural nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. **Oral and Written.**

(*a*) Give (1) the singular of **pars magna**; (2) both numbers of **mōns altus**; (3) the plural of **vīrēs integrae.**

(*b*) Give the present and past of:

1. **Castra mūnīre.** 2. **Vāllō impedīrī.**

(*c*) Review. Replace the italicized singular nouns by the plural, and make all necessary changes:

1. *Cīvis urbis novae* sum. 2. Altitūdō *montis* magna est. 3. *Hostis* in *urbe* erat. 4. Cum *hoste* pugnō. 5. *Cīvī malō praemium* nōn dabimus.

(*d*) Review. Replace the dash by (1) the present; (2) the past of the italicized infinitive:

1. *Impedīre:* Montēs altī iter hostium ——.
2. *Mūnīre:* Caesar castra ——.
3. *Pervenīre:* Tū in fīnēs hostium per vim ——.
4. *Mūnīrī:* Oppida vāllō altō ——.
5. *Impedīrī:* Vōs bellō nōn ——.
6. *Pūnīrī:* Malī ā Deō ——.

III. **Written.**

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I used to arrive, you were assembling, he did not hinder, they were hindered, I was punishing, we were punished, she was never heard, we used to fortify, it was fortified.

(*b*) 1. They were forcing their way into Gaul.

2. The camp was being fortified by a high rampart.

3. We were assembling near a mountain.

4. The lieutenant was leading his soldiers through the territory of the enemy (pl.).

5. We often praise the strength and swiftness of the horse.

6. Many towns were destroyed by Caesar's troops.

7. We are not citizens of a town, we are citizens of the world.

8. A large part of our territory was destroyed by the enemy (pl.).

9. He inquires about the height of the mountains of the world.

10. The number of good citizens is large; they will save (snatch away) the state from danger.

11. The general was saved by the swiftness of his horse.

12. The march of the enemy through Gaul was hindered by many rivers, forests, (and) mountains.

READING LESSON

I. Corvus et Vulpēs (The Crow and the Fox)

Corvus alicunde cāseum rapuerat et cum eō in arborem altam subvolāverat.

Vulpēs, cāseum in rōstrō corvī vidēns, avī verba blanda dīxit. Fōrmam eius pennārumque[1] nitōrem laudāvit. "Pol," inquit, "tū rēx avium es, sī vōx tua tam pulchra quam fōrma est."

Tum corvus, laudibus vulpis īnflātus, vōcem mōnstrāre voluit et rōstrum aperuit. Ita vērō cāseus ē rōstrō apertō dēcidit, quem vulpēs dēvorāvit.

Verba blanda audīre numquam dēbēmus.

---

[1] **pennārumque = et pennārum.**

II. (The same story in the form of a monologue)

Vulpēs, praedam quaerēns, dīcit. — Quid videō? Quae avis in arbore altā est? Nigra est. Certē corvus est. Quid in rōstrō habet?

Pol, cāseum! Corvus eum rapuit et cum eō in arborem altam subvolāvit. Cāseus magnus est. Famēlica sum. Eum cāseum habēre dēbeō. (Corvum salūtāns) Avē,[1] mī cāre amīce; quam pulcher es!

Pennās pulchrās habēs. Quam bene fulgent! Quam nigrae sunt!

Sī vōx tua tam pulchra quam fōrma est, certē rēx avium es. (Corvus, laudibus vulpis īnflātus, vōcem mōnstrāre voluit et rōstrum aperuit. Ita cāseus ē rōstrō apertō dēcidit.)

Vulpēs, cāseum dēvorāns, dīcit. — Tibi, amīce, grātiās agō; cāseus tuus bonus est. Stulta avis es; id cōnsilium (in) memoriā tenē: verba blanda audīre numquam dēbēs. Valē!

III. Sīc Vōs NŌN Vōbīs[2] (Thus [Do] Ye [Work but] Not for Yourselves)

Once public festivities, organized by order of Emperor Augustus, were spoiled by a storm, but the very next morning the weather was such that they could be resumed, and Vergil wrote the following distich on the gate of the imperial palace:

"Nocte pluit tōtā, redeunt spectācula māne;
Dīvīsum imperium cum Iove Caesar[3] habet."

The Emperor wanted to know the author of those lines. Vergil out of modesty did not reveal his identity, but an obscure rhymester, Bathyllus, claimed the authorship, and received many praises and a liberal reward. Very much dis-

[1] Avē, *hail*, a greeting, is not to be confused with a form of avis, *bird*.

[2] This Latin phrase meaning "Thus you work but it is not for yourselves" is used when somebody else is rewarded for the work you have done.

[3] *Caesar* here means the Emperor.

pleased, Vergil wrote again the distich on the walls of the palace and added this line:

"Hōs ego versiculōs fēcī, tulit alter honōrēs"

followed by four identical half lines: "Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs."

Augustus being very desirous of seeing them completed, Bathyllus tried in vain to do it, and Vergil completed them in the following way:

"Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs nīdificātis, avēs.
Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs vellera fertis, ovēs.
Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs mellificātis, apēs.
Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs fertis arātra, bovēs."

COLLATERAL READING

Augustus, 31 B.C.–14 A.D.

Octavius Caesar was a grand-nephew and adopted son of Julius Caesar. At the death of the latter, he formed the second triumvirate with Anthony and Lepidus. After the battle of Philippi in Macedonia (42 B.C.) in which the old Pompeiian forces, led by Brutus and Cassius, were defeated, Octavius and Anthony set aside Lepidus and divided the Roman world between themselves. Soon each was plotting for the other's share. In 31, the naval battle of Actium, off the coast of Greece, made Octavius sole master.

In 27 he laid down his office of triumvir (which had become a *sole* dictatorship), and declared *the Republic restored.* The act really showed that *the Empire was safely established.*

Octavius kept the office of Imperator, — master of the legions, and the Senate now added to it the new title *Augustus*, which had before been used only of gods. It is by this name that he is thenceforth known. . . .

Augustus ruled forty-five years after Actium, and gave that long rule to unremitting toil in strengthening the Empire

and in improving the condition of the people throughout the Roman world. . . .

Order was everywhere established. Industry revived and throve. Marshes were drained. Roads were built. A postal system was organized. . . . The chief cities of the Empire were adorned with noble buildings—temples, theaters, porticoes, baths. Augustus tells us in a famous inscription that in one year he himself began the rebuilding of eighty-two temples; and of Rome he said, "I found it brick and have left it marble."

AUGUSTUS.

The Emperor was also a generous and ardent patron of literature and art. The *Augustan Age* is the "golden age" of Latin literature.

At the death of Augustus, the Senate decreed him divine honors. Temples were erected in his honor, and he was worshipped as a god. . . . It was a way of recognizing the Emperor as "the father of all his people."

LESSON XLVIII

THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION

101. The Singular of Neuter Nouns with –i stems is like that of neuter nouns with consonant stems, except that the ablative ends in –ī (like the dative), not in –e.

SINGULAR

	mare, n., *sea*	**cubīle**, n., *bed*	**animal**, n., *animal*	
Base:	**mar–**	**cubīl–**	**animāl–**	
Stem:	**mari–**	**cubīli–**	**animāli–**	*Endings*
Nom.:	**ma′re**	**cubī′le**	**a′nimal**	(various)
Gen.:	**ma′ris**	**cubī′lis**	**animā′lis**	**–is**
Dat.:	**ma′rī**	**cubī′lī**	**animā′lī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**ma′re**	**cubī′le**	**a′nimal**	(like nom.)
Abl.:	**ma′rī**	**cubī′lī**	**animā′lī**	**–ī**

102. The Future of the Fourth Conjugation is formed exactly like that of verbs in –iō of the third. (See § 92.)

FUTURE OF **audīre** AND **audīrī**

ACTIVE VOICE (I shall or will hear the judge, etc.)	PASSIVE VOICE (I shall or will be heard by the judge, etc.)
Iūdicem au′diam	**Ā iūdice au′diar**
Iūdicem au′diēs	**Ā iūdice audiē′ris**
Iūdicem au′diet	**Ā iūdice audiē′tur**
Iūdicem audiē′mus	**Ā iūdice audiē′mur**
Iūdicem audiē′tis	**Ā iūdice audiē′minī**
Iūdicem au′dient	**Ā iūdice audien′tur**

MARE.

This view of Carthage is taken from the citadel across the two harbors to the Bay of Tunis. Compare it with the pictures on pages 82, 145, 191, and 241.

VOCABULARY

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH MEANINGS	RELATED ENGLISH WORDS
a′nimal, –ā′lis, n.	*animal*	
au′ris, –ris, f.	*ear*	auricle, auricular
cubī′le, –ī′lis, n.	*bed*	cubicle
iū′dex, –icis, m.	*judge*	judicial
ma′re, –′ris, n.	*sea*	marine, maritime
nūn′tius, –tī, m.	*messenger*	announce
tribū′nal, –ā′lis, n.	*tribunal*	
ti′midus, –a, –um	*timid, shy*	timidity
vās′tus, –a, –um	*vast, huge*	
cūstō′diō, –ī′re, cūstōdī′vī, cūstōdī′tus	*guard, watch*	custodian, custody
dor′miō, –ī′re, dormī′vī, dormī′tus	*sleep*	dormant, dormitory

terrā marīque (= **terrā et marī**) *on land and sea, everywhere, in all directions.*

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

mūniam, mūniunt, mūnient, mūnītur, mūniētur, dormiō, dormiēbāmus, dormiēs, cūstōdīmus, cūstōdiēmus, cūstōdiēbar, cūstōdiuntur, cūstōdientur, venītis, veniēbātis, veniētis.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Mare vāstum et altum est.
2. Altitūdinem maris nōn scīmus.
3. Hostēs terrā marīque vincentur.
4. Nūntiī ad mare pervenient.
5. In cubīlī vāstō dormiam.
6. Ad tribūnal bonī iūdicis convenient.
7. Animal parvum cūstōdiēbātur.
8. Caput animālis timidī vidēbimus.
9. Ā iūdice bonō audiēmur.
10. Oppida hostium vāllīs altīs mūnientur.
11. Mare novum ā nautīs perītīs inveniētur.
12. Oculōs habent et nōn vidēbunt; aurēs habent et nōn audient.

(*c*) Point out in (*b*) all the neuter nouns of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular:

mare vāstum, animal timidum, cubīle parvum.

(*b*) Give (1) the first persons singular and plural of the present indicative; (2) the second persons singular and plural of the past; (3) the complete future of:

1. **Ā mīlite cūstōdīrī.** 2. **In cubīlī vāstō dormīre.**

(*c*) Review. Supply the proper singular endings:

1. Altitūdō mar— (possessive case) magna est. 2. Mar— (direct object) altum vidēbimus. 3. Cubīl— (subject) bonum grātum est. 4. Corpus in mar— iactum erat. 5. Iūdex in tribūnāl— est.

(*d*) Review. Put the verb

(*a*) in the singular: **Ad mare novum perveniēmus.**
(*b*) in the plural: **Rīpīs altīs impediēris.**
(*c*) in the future: **Saepe pūniēbāminī.**
(*d*) in the present: **Iūdex ad tribūnal veniet.**
(*e*) in the past: **Urbem nostram cūstōdient.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I shall hear, he will not be heard, we shall fortify, the towns will be fortified, they will guard, you will be guarded, you (singular) will sleep, you will sleep, we shall not be hindered.

(*b*) 1. This small animal is shy; it will be terrified and will flee.

2. I shall give nothing to that animal.

3. He killed the animal and threw the body into the sea.

4. Sailors do not fear the dangers of the sea.

5. The enemy will be defeated by the Romans everywhere (on land and sea).

6. The hostages will be guarded by cavalrymen.

7. Who will sleep in that large bed?

8. The camp of the enemy will be fortified.

9. The judge will hear you in his tribunal.

10. You have ears and you will not hear; you have eyes and you will not see.

11. A messenger will come to the judges.

12. The judges will not listen to (**audīre**) him.

READING LESSON

I. Lupus et Grūs (The Wolf and the Crane)

In faucibus lupī os haeserat. Lupus, magnō dolōre victus, gruem vocāvit; avis vēnit et longitūdine collī facile os extrāxit.

Tum grūs mercēdem postulāvit. Sed animal scelestum, subrīdēns et īnfrendēns dentibus, "Ingrāta es," inquit; "ōre nostrō caput intāctum extrāxistī et mercēdem postulās!"

II. Naufragium Simōnidis (Simonides' Shipwreck)

Homō doctus in sē semper dīvitiās habet. Poēta Simōnidēs in Cēā īnsulā nātus erat. Peragrāns Asiam, marī in patriam redīre statuit. Nāvem ascendit sed tempestās magna eam in mediō marī frēgit. Vectōrēs opēs pretiōsās colligunt.

Quīdam poētam interrogat, "Simōnidēs, tū nihil ex opibus tuīs colligis?" — "Mēcum," inquit, "mea cūncta sunt."

Paucī ex perīculīs maris ēvādunt; multī, gravitāte oneris impedītī, pereunt. Praedōnēs in lītore adsunt; opēs quās quisque collēgit, rapiunt.

Forte urbs antīqua prope erat; eam naufragī[1] petīvērunt.

Incola urbis quī carmina Simōnidis saepe lēgerat, et admīrātor magnus poētae erat, eum in casam suam recēpit; vestēs et pecūniam eī dedit.

Intereā cēterī tabulam[2] suam portābant et cibum rogābant. Simōnidēs eōs vīdit. "Dīxī," inquit, "mēcum mea cūncta esse[3]; quod vōs in nāve collēgistis, periit."

---

[1] **naufragī**, *the shipwrecked men.*

[2] **tabulam**: Each one carried a sign with an inscription appealing to public charity. Compare with modern blind beggars.

[3] The verb of an indirect quotation is put in the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

Direct quotation: *All my things are with me,* **Mēcum mea cūncta sunt.**

Indirect quotation: *I said that all my things were with me,* **Dīxī mēcum mea cūncta esse.**

COLLATERAL READING

Pompeian[1] Rooms

The elegant Julia sat in her chamber, with her slaves around her; like the cubiculum[2] which adjoined it, the room was small, but much larger than the usual apartments appropriated to sleep, which were so diminutive, that few who have not seen the bed-chambers, even in the gayest mansions, can form any notion of the petty pigeon-holes in which the citizens of Pompeii evidently thought it desirable to pass the night. But, in fact, "bed" with the ancients was not that grave, serious, and important part of domestic mysteries which it is with us.

The couch itself was more like a very narrow and small sofa, light enough to be transported easily, and by the occupant himself,[3] from place to place; and it was, no doubt, constantly shifted from chamber to chamber, according to the caprices of the inmate, or the changes of the season; for that side of the house which was crowded in one month, might, perhaps, be carefully avoided in the next. There was also among the Italians of that period a singular and fastidious apprehension of too much daylight; their darkened chambers, which first appear to us the result of a negligent architecture, were the effect of the most elaborate study. In their porticoes and gardens they courted the sun whenever it so pleased their luxurious tastes. In the interior of their houses they sought rather the coolness and the shade. — From *The Last Days of Pompeii* by Sir Edward Bulwer-Lytton.

---

[1] Pompeii was destroyed A.D. 79; first discovered A.D. 1750.

[2] Cubiculum, *bed-room.*

[3] "Take up thy bed and walk," was no metaphorical expression.

LESSON XLIX

THIRD DECLENSION. FOURTH CONJUGATION

103. Plural of Neuter Nouns with *-i* Stems. — The nominative and accusative plural of neuter nouns with **-i** stems end in **-ia**, not in **-a**; the genitive plural in **-ium**, not in **-um**; the dative and ablative plural have the regular ending **-ibus.**

SINGULAR

	animal, n., *animal*	**calcār**, n., *spur*	**īnsigne**, n., *badge*	
Base:	**animāl-**	**calcār-**	**īnsign-**	
Stem:	**animāli-**	**calcāri-**	**īnsigni-**	*Endings*
Nom.:	a′nimal	cal′car	īnsig′ne	(various)
Gen.:	animā′lis	calcā′ris	īnsig′nis	**-is**
Dat.:	animā′lī	calcā′rī	īnsig′nī	**-ī**
Acc.:	a′nimal	cal′car	īnsig′ne	(like nom.)
Abl.:	animā′lī	calcā′rī	īnsig′nī	**-ī**

PLURAL

Nom.:	animā′lia	calcā′ria	īnsig′nia	**-ia**
Gen.:	animā′lium	calcā′rium	īnsig′nium	**-ium**
Dat.:	animā′libus	calcā′ribus	īnsig′nibus	**-ibus**
Acc.:	animā′lia	calcā′ria	īnsig′nia	**-ia**
Abl.:	animā′libus	calcā′ribus	īnsig′nibus	**-ibus**

104. The Perfect and Past Perfect of the fourth conjugation are formed regularly in both voices.

Perfect of audīre and audīrī

Active Voice	Passive Voice
(I heard or have heard it, etc.)	(I was or have been heard by him, etc.)
Id audī'vī	**Ab eō audī'tus, –a, –um sum**
Id audīvis'tī	**Ab eō audī'tus, –a, –um es**
Id audī'vit	**Ab eō audī'tus, –a, –um est**
Id audī'vimus	**Ab eō audī'tī, –ae, –a sumus**
Id audīvis'tis	**Ab eō audī'tī, –ae, –a estis**
Id audīvē'runt	**Ab eō audī'tī, –ae, –a sunt**

Past Perfect

Active Voice	Passive Voice
(I had heard her, etc.)	(I had been heard by her, etc.)
Eam audī'veram	**Ab eā audī'tus, –a, –um e'ram**
Eam audī'verās, etc.	**Ab eā audī'tus, –a, –um e'rās**, etc.

Note. Most verbs of the fourth conjugation have their perfect and participial stems modeled after those of **audīre**. (Perfect stem: **audīv–**; participial stem: **audīt–**.)

The only exception met so far is **venīre**, *to come*, **vēnī**, **ventus**, and its compounds.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
cal'car, –ā'ris, n.	*spur*	
īnsig'ne, –ig'nis, n.	*badge, standard*	insignia
le'ō, –ō'nis, m.	*lion*	leonine
pis'cis, –is, m.	*fish*	piscatory, pisciculture
ven'tus, –ī, m.	*wind*	ventilate
tur'bō, –ā're, –ā'vī, –ā'tus	*disturb*	turbid
vul'nerō, –ā're, –ā'vī, –ā'tus	*wound*	vulnerable

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

dormīverat, vēnērunt, mūnīvistī, impedīvī, scīverātis, vulnerāvērunt, pūnītī sunt, cūstōdītum est, impedītus erat, vulnerātī estis, mūnīta erant, turbātae erāmus.

LEŌ.

This is the famous lion of Chaeronaea.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Leōnēs animālia sunt; rēgēs animālium sunt.
2. Frūmentum animālibus nōn datur.
3. In maribus varia genera piscium sunt.
4. Piscēs marium magnī et multī sunt.
5. Maria vī ventōrum turbāta erant.
6. Dominus servōs pigrōs pūnīvit.
7. In cubīlibus vāstīs dormīverāmus.
8. Arma et īnsignia mīlitum vīdimus et tubās audīvimus.
9. Tardī nōn fuimus; ā magistrō nōn pūnītī sumus.
10. Equī calcāribus equitum vulnerātī erant.
11. Quis dīxit, "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī"?

(*c*) Indicate in (*b*) all the neuter nouns of the third declension and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in both numbers:

īnsigne pulchrum, calcar novum, leō magnus.

(*b*) Give (1) the perfect; (2) the past perfect of:

1. **Venīre, vidēre, vincere.** 2. **Ab hoste cūstōdīrī.**

(*c*) Review. Replace the singular of the italicized nouns by the plural, and make the necessary changes:

1. *Mare* vāstum et altum est. 2. Altitūdō *maris* magna est. 3. Est in casā *cubīle* parvum. 4. Equus *calcārī* vulnerātus est. 5. *Calcar* equum vulnerat.

(*d*) Review. Put the verb

(1) in the plural: **Nihil scīvī.**
(2) in the singular: **Ventī maria turbāvērunt.**
(3) in the future: **Animālia audiuntur.**
(4) in the present: **In fīnēs hostium convēnerāmus.**
(5) in the perfect: **Numquam audior.**
(6) in the past: **Castra mūniunt.**
(7) in the past perfect: **Equitēs equōs calcāribus vulnerant.**

(*e*) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive:

1. Hostēs oppidum mūnīvērunt. (*Model:* Oppidum ab hostibus mūnītum est.) 2. Ventī mare turbāverant. 3. Calcāria equōs vulnerāvērunt. 4. Puerī animālia vīdērunt. 5. Leōnēs audīvimus.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) We have punished, they have been punished, we had heard, she had been heard, you had hindered, I have been hindered, it has been known, they had assembled, she has

been wounded, you (singular) were disturbed, he had guarded, we had been guarded.

(*b*) 1. We came, we saw, we conquered.

2. The trumpets of the enemy (pl.) had been heard.

3. There are many fish in the seas and in the rivers.

4. We caught various kinds of fish.

5. The violence of the winds had disturbed the seas.

6. The children slept in small beds; they do not like large beds.

7. Cavalrymen have spurs; they often wound their horses with their spurs.

8. Our standards had been captured by the enemy.

9. There are various kinds of animals in the forests.

10. She did not sleep; she was disturbed by the violence of the wind.

11. The town had been fortified by the enemy but we took it.

READING LESSON

I. Leō Aeger et Vulpēs (The Sick Lion and the Fox)

Senex leō morbum simulābat. Ad rēgem aegrum multa animālia vēnērunt quae prōtinus dēvorāvit. Sed vulpēs cauta ante spēluncam leōnis procul stetit et rēgem salūtāvit.

Leō, "Cūr," inquit, "nōn intrās?" Respondit vulpēs, "Quod vestīgia eōrum animālium quae intrāvērunt videō, sed nōn eōrum quae exiērunt."

II. Dīluvium (The Deluge)

Deus, hominum vitiīs offēnsus, genus hūmānum dīluviō perdere voluit. Tamen Nōam et puerōs eius servāvit quod virtūtem colēbant.

Nōa, ā Deō admonitus, arcam magnam in modum nāvis exstrūxit; eam bitūmine linīvit et in eam paria singula cūnctōrum animālium indūxit.

Conversational Exercise.

One of the pupils may read the following questions, and his classmates answer them in complete sentences.

Questions based on I

1. Quid senex leō simulābat? 2. Quid multa animālia fēcērunt? 3. Quid leō prōtinus fēcit? 4. Ubi vulpēs stetit? 5. Quem salūtāvit? 6. Quid leō quaesīvit? 7. Cūr vulpēs cauta nōn intrāvit?

Questions based on II

1. Cūr Deus genus hūmānum perdere voluit? 2. Quōmodo? 3. Quōs servāvit? 4. Cūr? 5. Quis Nōam admonuit? 6. Quid Nōa exstrūxit? 7. Quid deinde fēcit? 8. Cūnctane animālia in arcam indūxit?

COLLATERAL READING

Shipping — Trade — "The Good Roman Peace"

Roman ships were much like the sailing vessels used in the Mediterranean coasting trade to-day, and not very unlike those with which Columbus crossed the Atlantic. An immense traffic flowed ceaselessly between Europe and central Asia along three great arteries: (1) by the Black Sea and by caravan, along the line of the present Russian Transcaspian railway; (2) by Suez and the Red Sea; and (3) between these, by caravan across Arabia, where, amid the sands, arose white-towered Palmyra, Queen of the Desert, daughter of this trade. . . .

The products of one region of the Empire were known in every other part. . . . One merchant of Phrygia (in Asia Minor) asserts on his gravestone that he had sailed "around Greece to Italy seventy-two times."

There was also a vast commerce with regions *beyond* the boundaries of the Empire. . . . A Latin poet speaks of

MARCUS AURELIUS ABOUT TO SACRIFICE.

"many merchants" who reaped "immense riches" by venturesome voyages over the Indian Ocean "to the mouth of the Ganges."

. . . This widespread, happy society rested in "the good Roman peace" for more than two hundred years — from the reign of Augustus Caesar through that of Marcus Aurelius, or from 31 B.C. to 180 A.D. . . .

Trade and travel, peace and prosperity, and the mild and just Roman law made the world one in feeling. Rome won allegiance from the hearts and minds of men. Briton, Dacian, Gaul, African, Greek, Cappadocian, knew one another only as Romans. An Egyptian of the fourth century, the poet Claudian, celebrated this world-wide patriotism in a noble ode:

"Rome, Rome alone, has found the spell to charm
The tribes that bowed beneath her conquering arm;
Has given one name to the whole human race,
And clasped and sheltered them in fond embrace, —
Mother, not mistress. . . .
This to her peaceful scepter all men owe, —
That through the nations, wheresoe'er we go
Strangers, we find a fatherland. Our home
We change at will; we count it sport to roam
Through distant Thule,[1] or with sails unfurled
Seek the most drear recesses of the world.
Though we may tread Rhone's or Orontes'[2] shore,
Yet are we all one nation evermore."

[1] Ultima Thule, perhaps Iceland, a Roman expression for the most distant known land.

[2] A river in Syria.

LESSON L

REVIEW LESSON

105. Third Declension Summarized. — Compare the inflection of third declension consonant stems with that of **–i** stems.

	Nouns with Consonant Stems		Nouns with –i Stems	
	Masculine and Feminine			
	Singular			
	cōnsul, m.	*Endings*	**urbs**, f.	*Endings*
Nom.:	**cōnsul**	(various)	**urbs**	**–s**
Gen.:	**cōnsulis**	**–is**	**urbis**	**–is**
Dat.:	**cōnsulī**	**–ī**	**urbī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**cōnsulem**	**–em**	**urbem**	**–em** (**–im**)[1]
Abl.:	**cōnsule**	**–e**	**urbe**	**–e** (**–ī**)
	Plural			
Nom.:	**cōnsulēs**	**–ēs**	**urbēs**	**–ēs**
Gen.:	**cōnsulum**	**–um**	**urbium**	**–ium**
Dat.:	**cōnsulibus**	**–ibus**	**urbibus**	**–ibus**
Acc.:	**cōnsulēs**	**–ēs**	**urbēs**	**–ēs** (**–īs**)[2]
Abl.:	**cōnsulibus**	**–ibus**	**urbibus**	**–ibus**

[1] A few nouns with **–i** stems have kept the old accusative in **–im** and the ablative in **–i**.

[2] A few nouns have kept the old accusative plural in **–īs**.

Neuter

SINGULAR

		Endings		*Endings*
Nom.:	**flūmen**	(various)	**mare**	(various)
Gen.:	**flūminis**	**–is**	**maris**	**–is**
Dat.:	**flūminī**	**–ī**	**marī**	**–ī**
Acc.:	**flūmen**	like nom.	**mare**	like nom.
Abl.:	**flūmine**	**–e**	**marī**	**–ī**

PLURAL

Nom.:	**flūmina**	**–a**	**maria**	**–ia**
Gen.:	**flūminum**	**–um**	**marium**	**–ium**
Dat.:	**flūminibus**	**–ibus**	**maribus**	**–ibus**
Acc.:	**flūmina**	**–a**	**maria**	**–ia**
Abl.:	**flūminibus**	**–ibus**	**maribus**	**–ibus**

106. Verbs in *–iō̄*. — Compare the conjugation of verbs of the third conjugation in **–iō** and that of the verbs of the fourth.

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT INFINITIVE			
capere	**audīre**	**capī**	**audīrī**
PRESENT INDICATIVE			
capiō	**audiō**	**capior**	**audior**
capis	**audīs**	**caperis**	**audīris**
capit	**audit**	**capitur**	**audītur**
capimus	**audīmus**	**capimur**	**audīmur**
capitis	**audītis**	**capiminī**	**audīminī**
capiunt	**audiunt**	**capiuntur**	**audiuntur**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
		Past	
capiēbam	audiēbam	capiēbar	audiēbar
capiēbās	audiēbās	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
capiēbat	audiēbat	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
capiēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
capiēbant	audiēbant	capiēbantur	audiēbantur
		Future	
capiam	audiam	capiar	audiar
capiēs	audiēs	capiēris	audiēris
capiet	audiet	capiētur	audiētur
capiēmus	audiēmus	capiēmur	audiēmur
capiētis	audiētis	capiēminī	audiēminī
capient	audient	capientur	audientur
		Perfect	
cēpī, etc.	audīvī, etc.	captus, –a, –um sum, etc.	audītus, –a, –um sum, etc.
		Past Perfect	
cēperam, etc.	audīveram, etc.	captus, –a, –um eram, etc.	audītus, –a, –um, eram, etc.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Translate into English the following words:

1. *Nouns*

A. Second Declension

nihil nūntius Rōmulus vāllum ventus

B. Third Declension

animal	**fīnis**	**leō**	**piscis**
auris	**fīnēs**	**mare**	**tribūnal**
calcar	**hostis**	**mōns**	**urbs**
cīvis	**īnsigne**	**orbis**	**vīs**
cubīle	**iūdex**	**pars**	**vīrēs**

2. *Adjectives*

prīmus **vāstus**

3. *Verbs*

A. First Conjugation

turbāre **vulnerāre**

B. Fourth Conjugation

audīre	**dormīre**	**mūnīre**	**scīre**
convenīre	**impedīre**	**pervenīre**	**venīre**
cūstōdīre	**invenīre**	**pūnīre**	

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

prope

5. *Idioms*

in (acc.) **per vim pervenīre** **orbis terrārum** **terrā marīque**

(*b*) Divide all the words in (*a*) into syllables, indicating which one must be accented, and telling why.

(*c*) Point out in (*a*): (1) the masculine nouns; (2) the feminine nouns; (3) the neuter nouns.

(*d*) Give (1) the base and the stem of all the nouns in (*a*); (2) their genitive singular.

(*e*) Point out in (*a*) all the verbs which are regularly conjugated on the model of **audīre**.

(*f*) Give (1) the principal parts; (2) the three stems of all the verbs in (*a*).

(*g*) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

i. Nouns.

1. How do nouns with –i stems differ from those with consonant stems?

2. How do you know the nouns with –i stems?

3. What does "increasing in the genitive" mean?

4. How are the masculine and feminine nouns with –i stems declined in the singular?

5. How does the plural of masculine and feminine nouns with –i stems differ from that of masculine and feminine nouns with consonant stems?

6. What noun with –i stem is somewhat irregular? Decline it.

7. How do the singular and plural of neuter nouns with –i stems differ from the singular and plural of neuter nouns with consonant stems?

8. What is the ending of the genitive plural (*a*) of nouns with consonant stems; (*b*) of nouns with –i stems?

9. What are the endings of the ablative singular and the nominative plural (*a*) of neuter nouns with consonant stems; (*b*) of neuter nouns with –i stems?

ii. Verbs.

1. How do we distinguish verbs of the fourth conjugation from others?

2. What are the endings of the present infinitive of the fourth conjugation (active and passive)? Do they differ from those of the third conjugation?

3. How is the present indicative, active and passive, of the fourth conjugation formed? How does it differ from that of verbs of the third, ending in –iō?

4. How are the past, the future, the perfect tenses, active and passive, of the fourth conjugation formed?

II. Written.

(*a*) Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns*

animal	end	forces	spur
badge	enemy (war)	mountain	strength
bed	fish	nothing	territory
circle	force	part	town
citizen	judge	rampart	tribunal
city	lion	Romulus	wind
ear	messenger	sea	

2. *Adjectives*

first	huge	vast

3. *Verbs*

to arrive at	to fortify	to hinder	to reach
to assemble	to find	to know	to sleep
to come	to guard	to listen to	to wound
to disturb	to hear	to punish	to watch

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

near

5. *Idioms*

to force one's way into on land and sea the world

(*b*) Derivation. (1) From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

hostile, vulnerable, dormitory, wall, audible, ammunition, urban, maritime, turbid, invention.

(2) Make a list of the English derivatives of **audīre**, according to Type I (see page 178); of **scīre**, according to Type II; of **venīre**, according to Type III.

LESSON LI

READING LESSON

Urbis Rōmae Orīgō (Origin of the City of Rome)

(Ante Iēsum Chrīstum 753; Annō Urbis Conditae 1)[1]

Rōma urbs antīqua et nōta in historiā est. Orīgō eius urbis incerta et obscūra est.

Duo frātrēs, Rōmulus et Remus, urbem parvam in Palātīnō monte, in rīpīs Tiberis flūminis condidērunt, et Rōmulus eam ā suō nōmine vocāvit.

Prīmō urbs Rōma ā septem rēgibus gesta est. Prīmus rēx urbis Rōmulus fuit (A. C. 753; Annō U. C. 1); secundus Numa Pompilius (A. C. 716; Annō U. C. 38); tertius Tullus Hostīlius (A. C. 672; Annō U. C. 82); quārtus Ancus Mārtius (A. C. 640; Annō U. C. 114); quīntus Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus (A. C. 616; Annō U. C. 138); sextus Servius Tullius (A. C. 578; Annō U. C. 176); Rōmānōrum rēx septimus et ultimus Tarquinius Superbus fuit (A. C. 553; Annō U. C. 201).

---

[1] Later Romans counted time from the year of the legendary foundation of Rome (753) by Romulus, as we do from the birth of Christ. — Note the construction **annō urbis conditae**. Instead of saying "*the year of the foundation of the city*," the Romans preferred to use the past participle "*the year of the founded city*."

RŪPĒS TARPEIA.

PRŌDITIŌ TARPEIAE (Tarpeia's Treason)

Rēgnante Rōmulō,[1] Sabīnī, gēns vīcīna, urbem novam oppugnāvērunt, sed Rōma arce [2] bene dēfendēbātur, et hostēs eam expugnāre nōn poterant.

---

[1] **Rēgnante Rōmulō**, *Romulus reigning, during the reign of Romulus.* In Latin a noun with attached participle in an independent phrase is put in the ablative, and the construction is called "ablative absolute." See page 316, line 2: **tempore cōnstitūtō**, *the time (having been) determined,* that is, *at the appointed hour.*

[2] **arce**: it was built on the northwest summit of the Capitoline hill.

Tarpeia, fīlia praefectī arcis, cui dux Sabīnōrum ānulōs et armillās prōmīserat, mediā nocte, tempore cōnstitūtō, portās aperuit, et hostēs in arcem intrāvērunt.

Tum Tarpeia mercēdem prōditiōnis postulāvit sed Sabīnī eam interfēcērunt et corpus virginis ē rūpe quae ex eō tempore Rūpēs Tarpeia [1] vocātur, iēcērunt. Sīc impia prōditiō prōmptā poenā vindicāta est.

Prōditōrēs patriae pūnīrī dēbent.

COLLATERAL READING

The Seven Kings of Rome

According to the legend, Rome was ruled by seven kings.

The first was Romulus (753–716), the founder of "the squared Rome" (**Rōma quadrāta**) on the Palatine Mount. He gathered about him outlaws from all quarters, and these men seized the daughters of a Sabine tribe for wives. This led to war and finally to the union of the Romans and the Sabines, after which the kings of Rome were selected alternately from both tribes.

The second king was Numa Pompilius (716–672), who was a Sabine. He established religious rites and gave laws and arts of peace which he claimed had been taught him by the nymph Egeria in a sacred grove by night. He founded the shrine of Janus [2] which remained open in war time and was closed in peace time. He added two months, January and February, to the year which before began in the month of March.

The third king, Tullus Hostilius (672–640), was a warlike conqueror. He destroyed Alba Longa and brought its inhabitants to Rome.

---

[1] The Tarpeian Rock. Malefactors used to be thrown over it.

[2] In all Roman history up to the time of Augustus the gates of the shrine of Janus were closed only twice — and one of the times was in the legendary reign of King Numa.

The fourth king was a Sabine, Ancus Martius (640–616), who extended the territory of Rome to the sea and founded at the mouth of the Tiber the port of *Ostia*, the start of Roman maritime trade.

The fifth was Tarquin the First (616–578), an Etruscan adventurer, who built a large drain (**Cloāca Maxima**), established various distinctions for high offices, such as the

Cloāca Maxima.

curule chair [1] for the senators, the lictors, who carried the fasces [2] and preceded the king, the augurs or soothsayers, who predicted the future by signs drawn from the flight of birds, or from the entrails of animals.

The sixth king was also an Etruscan, Servius Tullius (578–553). He was the son of a slave and the son-in-law

[1] The curule chair: the ivory "throne" of the old kings.

[2] The fasces were "a bundle of rods with an ax, carried before the highest magistrates, as an emblem of authority."

of Tarquin. He enlarged Rome so that the seven hills, the Palatine, the Capitoline, the Quirinal, the Viminal, the Esquiline, the Aventine, and the Caelian were parts of the city, and he surrounded it by a massive wall whose remains are still shown; he also reorganized the government, dividing all landowners, plebeian as well as patrician, into six classes, armed according to their wealth; each of these classes was divided into a fixed number of companies or centuries.

The seventh and last king was Tarquin the Proud (553–509), whose oppression led to his expulsion and to the establishment of a republic.

LESSON LII

THIRD DECLENSION. IMPERATIVE

107. Adjectives of the Third Declension are divided into three groups:

(*a*) Adjectives of three endings (**–er**, m.; **–is**, f.; **–e**, n.) of which the nominative singular has a special ending for each gender;

(*b*) Adjectives of two endings (**–is**, m. and f.; **–e**, n.) of which the nominative singular has one and the same ending for the masculine and feminine, and a different ending for the neuter;

(*c*) Adjectives of one ending (**–ns**, **–ar**, **–x**) of which the nominative singular is alike in the three genders.

108. Adjectives of Three Endings (*–er*, *–is*, *–e*). — The masculine and feminine of adjectives with three endings are declined like masculine and feminine nouns with **–i** stems (see § 105), but with the ablative singular in **–ī**. The neuter is declined like **mare** (see § 105).

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

SINGULAR

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*	*Endings*		
	ācer, *sharp*	**ācris**	**ācre**	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Base:	**ācr–**	**ācr–**	**ācr–**			
Stem:	**ācri–**	**ācri–**	**ācri–**			
Nom.:	**ā′cer**	**ā′cris**	**ā′cre**	**–er**	**–is**	**–e**
Gen.:	**ā′cris**	**ā′cris**	**ā′cris**		**–is**	
Dat.:	**ā′crī**	**ā′crī**	**ā′crī**		**–ī**	
Acc.:	**ā′crem**	**ā′crem**	**ā′cre**	**–em**	**–em**	**–e**
Abl.:	**ā′crī**	**ā′crī**	**ā′crī**		**–ī**	

	Plural					
	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*	*Endings*		
				M.	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.:	ā′crēs	ā′crēs	ā′cria	**–ēs**	**–ēs**	**–ia**
Gen.:	ā′crium	ā′crium	ā′crium		**–ium**	
Dat.:	ā′cribus	ā′cribus	ā′cribus		**–ibus**	
Acc.:	ā′crēs (–īs)	ā′crēs (–īs)	ā′cria	**–ēs (–īs)**	**–ēs (–īs)**	**–ia**
Abl.:	ā′cribus	ā′cribus	ā′cribus		**–ibus**	

109. Imperative. — The second person singular of the present imperative active is like the present stem, and the second person plural, like the present stem plus **–te** (§ 45), except in the third conjugation where it ends in **–ite**. The second person singular of the present imperative passive is like the present infinitive active, and the second person plural, like the same person of the present indicative passive.

Present Imperative

Active Voice	Passive Voice
First Conjugation	
lau′dā, *praise (thou)*	**laudā′re**, *be (thou) praised*
laudā′te, *praise (you)*	**laudā′minī**, *be (you) praised*
Second Conjugation	
mo′nē, *warn (thou)*	**monē′re**, *be (thou) warned*
monē′te, *warn (you)*	**monē′minī**, *be (you) warned*
Third Conjugation (Verbs in **–ō**)	
mit′te,[1] *send (thou)*	**mit′tere**, *be (thou) sent*
mit′tite, *send (you)*	**mitti′minī**, *be (you) sent*
Third Conjugation (Verbs in **–iō**)	
ca′pe, *take (thou)*	**ca′pere**, *be (thou) taken*
ca′pite, *take (you)*	**capi′minī**, *be (you) taken*

[1] The second person singular of the imperative active of **dīcere**, **dūcere**, and **facere** is shortened to **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**.

Active Voice	Passive Voice
Fourth Conjugation	
au′dī, *hear* (*thou*)	**audī′re**, *be* (*thou*) *heard*
audī′te, *hear* (*you*)	**audī′minī**, *be* (*you*) *heard*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
an′nus, –ī, m.	*year*	annual, annuity
le′pus, –oris, m.	*hare*	
ā′cer, ā′cris, ā′cre	*sharp, eager, bitter*	acrid, acrimony
ce′leber, –bris, –bre	*celebrated, famous*	
ce′ler, –eris, –ere	*swift, quick*	celerity
cognōs′cō, –ere, cognō′vī, co′gnitus	*become acquainted with, learn*	recognize, cognizance
cōnser′vō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus	*keep intact*	conserve

EXERCISES

I. Orāl.

(*a*) Give the present stem of:

vocāre, movēre, mōnstrāre, dēligere, iacere, tenēre, pūnīre, fugere, parāre, impedīre, terrēre, mūnīre, cōnservāre.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

nūntiā, vidēte, iace, es, cūstōdīte, habē, venīte, dūc, dūcere, nārrāte, mūnī, cognōscite, timēminī, fac, facite, invenī.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Fuga annōrum celeris est.
2. Laudā, bone domine, celerem servum.
3. Celer es, cōnsul; monē Caesarem, fac bellum, dūc mīlitēs ācrēs, victōriam glōriamque [1] pete.

[1] **glōriamque = et glōriam.**

4. Audīte, Gallī, verba mea, amōre patriae dūciminī, lēgātōs mittite, obsidēs date, pācem petite, patriam servāte.

5. Dīc semper vērum, mī amīce, et memoriam virōrum celebrium cōnservā.

6. Lepus animal celere et timidum est.

7. Mīlitēs ācrēs ā prīncipe celebrī dūcuntur.

8. Proelia ācria ā mīlitibus ācribus nōn timentur.

9. Praemium celerī nūntiō datum est.

10. Rōma, celebris urbs, nōn mūnīta est.

11. Leporēs celerēs in silvīs et campīs inveniuntur.

12. Caesar ab nūntiīs celeribus (*or* per nūntiōs celerēs) victōriam cognōvit.

(*d*) Indicate in (*c*) the adjectives of three endings of the third declension, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in the singular and plural:

mīles ācer, urbs celebris, animal celere.

(*b*) Put in the plural:

1. Flūmen nōn celere est. 2. Bellum ācre ā cōnsule parābitur. 3. Praemium nūntiō celerī datur. 4. Lepus animal celere et timidum est.

(*c*) Review. Supply the proper endings:

1. Cōnsul celeb—. 2. Prīncipēs ācr—. 3. Nūntiōrum celer—. 4. Bellīs ācr—. 5. Animālia celer—. 6. Flūmen celeb—.

(*d*) Give the present imperative singular and plural of the following phrases, and translate both forms:

1. Bellum parāre. 2. Arma capere. 3. Malōs timēre. 4. Dōna accipere. 5. Cōpiās ācrēs dūcere. 6. Amōre patriae dūcī. 7. Virum celebrem cognōscere. 8. Perīculō impedīrī.

(*e*) Review. Put the verb

1. in the singular: **Bellum ācre geritis.**
2. in the plural: **Animal parvum inveniō.**
3. in the perfect: **Victōria ab nūntiīs celeribus nūntiābitur.**
4. in the past: **Cōnsulem nōn cognōscis.**
5. in the present: **Captīvōs cūstōdīvērunt.**
6. in the past perfect: **Memoria iniūriārum cōnservātur.**
7. in the future: **Verba magistrī audīmus.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) Take (sing.), help (sing.), ask (sing.), lead (sing. and plur.), find (plur.), tell (sing. and plur.), be praised (sing.), be saved (plur.), disturb (sing. and plur.).

(*b*) 1. Swift messengers are sent to Caesar.

2. Hares are timid but swift.

3. Fish also are swift and timid animals.

4. Eager soldiers like sharp battles.

5. You will become acquainted with famous leaders.

6. We had pitched our camp in a famous plain.

7. I shall announce the victory to the famous chief.

8. Boys, listen to your teacher's words and work with diligence.

9. Oh teacher, praise the good pupils, help the slow (ones),[1] warn the lazy (ones),[1] punish the bad (ones),[1] but be fair.

10. Soldiers, wage a bitter war, never fear danger, be good citizens, fight with the enemy, (and) save the state.

11. The glorious deeds of famous generals will be kept in the memory of men.

READING LESSON

HORĀTĪ ET CŪRIĀTĪ (The Horatii and the Curiatii)

Rēgnante Tullō Hostīliō[2] (A. C. 672; Annō U. C. 82), Rōmānī Albānīs bellum indīxērunt. Tullus Hostīlius et

[1] Omit.

[2] See footnote 1, page 315.

Fufētius, rēgēs Rōmānōrum et Albānōrum, necem multōrum fortium virōrum vītāre voluērunt. Utraque urbs trēs dēfēnsōrēs dēlēgit: Rōma trēs frātrēs Horātiōs, Alba trēs frātrēs Cūriātiōs.

Tempore cōnstitūtō, sex fortēs iuvenēs arma capiunt et in medium campum prōcēdunt. Omnēs incolae utrīusque urbis adsunt. Mox signum proelī datur et cōram populīs Rōmānō et Albānō pugnant.

Proelium ācre fuit. Statim duo Rōmānī exspīrantēs cecidērunt; trēs Albānī vulnerātī sunt. Sōlus ūnus Horātiōrum integer erat.

Horror magnus Rōmānōs perstrīnxit. Albānī gaudiō conclāmāvērunt. Trēs Cūriātiī ūnum Horātium circumstābant. Is, quod integer erat, celer fuit, itāque fugam simulāvit, singulōs trēs Cūriātiōs, vulneribus fessōs, interfēcit et victor fuit.

Nōmina eōrum quī patriae vītam dant, (in) memoriā tenēre dēbēmus.

Camilla

Rōmānī alacrēs Horātium accipiunt et domum [1] dēdūcunt.

Prīmus ībat Horātius, spolia frātrum Cūriātiōrum super umerōs gerēns.

Camilla, Horātī soror, quae dēspōnsa ūnī Cūriātiōrum erat, super umerōs celebris frātris palūdāmentum spōnsī quod ipsa cōnfēcerat, cognōvit, et flēre et crīnēs solvere coepit.

Complōrātiō sorōris in tantō gaudiō pūblicō animum ācris iuvenis mōvit. Itaque gladiō puellam trānsfīxit, simul eam increpāns, "Abī hinc cum immātūrō amōre spōnsī, oblīta patriae, oblīta frātrum. Sīc pereat [2] quaecumque Rōmāna hostem lūgēbit."

Patria cārior quam familia esse dēbet.

---

[1] **domum**: the preposition **ad** is omitted before the noun **domum**, *home*. Compare with English.

[2] **pereat**: third person singular of the present subjunctive. Translate: *Thus perish . . .*

THE OATH OF THE HORATII.
From a painting by the great French painter David.

THE SO-CALLED TOMB OF THE HORATII AND CURIATII.

COLLATERAL READING

Rivalry of Rome and Alba Longa

The Latins called their district *Latium*. . . . The straggling village Alba Longa (The Long White Town) was the recognized leader of the Latin tribes in war against the robber bands of Sabines from the mountains and against the powerful Etruscans across the Tiber. . . .

The Alban Lake.

Alba Longa probably occupied the ridge seen across the lake.

About twelve miles up the Tiber from its mouth, the river could be crossed by a ford at the foot of an island. . . . At some early date the Etruscans improved the river-crossing by building a bridge there. This was welcome to the Latins for trade, but they feared lest the Etruscans use it for armed invasion, and so they guarded their end of it by building a square fort about the top of the Palatine, the steepest hill

close by. Here a permanent Latin town at once grew up. This "square town" (see page 316) dates back at least to 1200 B.C.; and in places solidly built walls may still be traced.

Early settlements were made also on at least two others of the seven hills. Roman tradition says that one of these towns was founded by an invading tribe of Sabines, and the other by a conquering Etruscan tribe. No doubt, there was a long period of war between the three hill-forts, but, finally, the three settlements were united into one state, with the three tribes on an equal footing, one with the other. . . .

About 750 B.C., the old kings gave way to "tyrants" like those who seized power in Greek cities at about the same time. . . . These new kings made Rome mistress of a third of all Latium. . . . Before the year 500, several conquered Latin towns had been razed *and their inhabitants brought to Rome.* Even Alba Longa had been destroyed, and Rome had succeeded to the *headship of the Latin confederacy.*

LESSON LIII

THIRD DECLENSION

110. Adjectives of Two Endings and One Ending. — Adjectives of the third declension of two endings are declined in the masculine and feminine like **urbs**, except that the ablative singular ends in **–ī** (not **–e**) (see § 105). The neuter is declined like **mare** (see § 105).

Adjectives of one ending only are declined in the masculine and feminine like **urbs** (see § 105), except that in the ablative singular they have the ending **–ī** (not **–e**) and in the genitive plural, **–ium** (not **–um**). The neuter is declined like **mare** (see § 105).

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

fortis, –e, *brave*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER
	Base: **fort–**			
	Stem: **forti–**			
Nom.:	for'tis	for'te	for'tēs	for'tia
Gen.:	for'tis	for'tis	for'tium	for'tium
Dat.:	for'tī	for'tī	for'tibus	for'tibus
Acc.:	for'tem	for'te	for'tēs	for'tia
Abl.:	for'tī	for'tī	for'tibus	for'tibus

Note that in each case, except the nominative and accusative, one form serves in each number for all three genders.

Adjectives of One Ending[1]

fēlīx, *happy*

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter
	Base: **fēlīc–**			
	Stem: **fēlīci–**			
Nom.:	**fē′līx**	**fē′līx**	**fēlī′cēs**	**fēlī′cia**
Gen.:	**fēlī′cis**	**fēlī′cis**	**fēlī′cium**	**fēlī′cium**
Dat.:	**fēlī′cī**	**fēlī′cī**	**fēlī′cibus**	**fēlī′cibus**
Acc.:	**fēlī′cem**	**fē′līx**	**fēlī′cēs**	**fēlī′cia**
Abl.:	**fēlī′cī**	**fēlī′cī**	**fēlī′cibus**	**fēlī′cibus**

Note that the forms for all genders are alike except in the accusative singular and nominative and accusative plural.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
ars, ar′tis, f.	*art*	artist, artistry
Grae′cia, –ae	*Greece*	
au′dāx (gen. **–ā′cis**)	*audacious, bold*	audacity
bre′vis, –e	*short*	brevity, brief
diffi′cilis, –e	*difficult*	
fē′līx (gen. **–ī′cis**)	*happy*	felicitate, felicity
for′tis, –e	*brave*	force, fortitude
lēn′is, –e	*soft, gentle*	lenience
om′nis, –e	*all, whole*	omnibus
pār (gen. **pa′ris**)	*equal*	parity, par
po′tēns (gen. **–en′tis**)	*powerful*	omnipotent

[1] Present participles as such (**–āns, –antis**, first conjugation; **–ēns, –entis**, 2d, 3d, and 4th conjugations) and a few adjectives of one ending have **–e** in the ablative singular.

Present participles, used as adjectives, have **–ī** in ablative singular.

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
prū'dēns (gen. **–en'tis**)	*prudent, cautious*	
re'cēns (gen. **–en'tis**)	*recent*	
in'ter (with acc.)	*between, among*	interchange
incen'dō, –ere, incen'dī, incēn'sus	*set on fire*	incense, incendiary

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) (1) Give the base and stem of every noun and adjective, and the three stems of every verb in the vocabularies of Lessons LII and LIII; (2) divide them into syllables, pointing out which one must be accented.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

incendite, incendent, incēnsum erat, incendēbantur, cognōveram, cognitī sunt, permovēbantur.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Ars longa, brevis vīta est.
2. Graecia māter (*mother*) omnium artium fuit.
3. Mare vāstum lēnī ventō nōn turbātur.
4. Hostēs ā prīncipe ācrī et audācī victī erant.
5. Quandō hominēs parēs erunt?
6. Brevī sed ācrī bellō commovēbiminī.
7. Mīlitēs fortēs ā prīncipibus prūdentibus dūcēbantur.
8. Cīvitās ab omnibus cīvibus fortibus dēfendētur.
9. Est iter difficile inter montem altum et flūmen celere.
10. Homō potēns et fēlīx multōs amīcōs habet.
11. Audācēs hostēs omnēs agrōs nostrōs vāstant et omnia oppida nostra incendunt.
12. Memoria recentium iniūriārum ā potentī populō Rōmānō cōnservāta erat.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*) all the adjectives of the third declension, indicating the group to which they belong (the group with three endings, with two endings, or with one ending), and explain each case.

II. **Oral and Written.**

(*a*) Decline (1) in the singular: **omnis Graecia**;

(2) in the plural: **omnēs cīvēs, omnia oppida**;

(3) in both numbers: **vir fortis, ventus lēnis, puella audāx, bellum recēns, iter difficile.**

(*b*) Put every plural form in the singular:

1. Audācēs fortūna iuvat. 2. Populōs potentēs timēbimus. 3. Artibus difficilibus sē dabat. 4. Bellīs brevibus nōn commōtī estis. 5. Virtūtem virōrum fortium et prīncipum audācium laudā. 6. Proelia ācria nōn timent.

(*c*) Review. Add the proper endings:

1. Omn— hominibus. 2. Agricolam fēlī—. 3. Arma par—. 4. Ars difficil—. 5. Iniūriās recen—. 6. Amīcīs poten—. 7. Omn— familia. 8. Bella brev—.

(*d*) Give the second persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of:

1. Urbem incendere. 2. Prīncipēs prūdentēs cognōscere. 3. Bellō recentī commovērī.

(*e*) Review. Put the verb

1. in the present: **Multōs sociōs potentēs habuērunt.**
2. in the plural: **Quid dīcis? Quid facit? Quid sciō?**
3. in the singular: **Breve sed ācre bellum gessistis.**
4. in the past: **Ad flūmen celere conveniunt.**
5. in the past perfect: **Ab hostibus omnēs casae incenduntur.**
6. in the perfect: **Verba amīcī prūdentis audīmus.**
7. in the future: **Gallī fortēs ā prīncipe audācī victī sunt.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) I shall not set on fire, the house was set on fire, she leads, you were led, he was not hindering, we guarded, she was not defended.

(*b*) 1. Soft winds do not disturb the vast sea.

2. The Romans were powerful and brave.

3. At that time all men were not equal.

4. All the houses of the large town had been set on fire by the enemy.

5. A recent and bitter war disturbed the whole state.

6. Your audacious soldiers will wage a short war.

7. You are giving yourself up to a difficult art.

8. All the good citizens will defend and save the state.

9. If you are prudent, your dear friends will be happy.

10. She will not be happy if you do not listen to (**audīre**) her.

11. Our march was difficult because (**quod**) we were hindered by high mountains and swift rivers.

READING LESSON

I. Dē Amīcitiā (A Distich on Friendship)

Dōnec eris fēlīx, multōs numerābis amīcōs;
Tempora sī fuerint [1] nūbila, sōlus eris.

II. Ēn Ea Ōrnāmenta Mea! (Behold, here are my jewels!)

Amīca Cornēliae, mātris Gracchōrum celebrium, eī ōrnāmenta pretiōsa sua ostendēbat. Cornēlia, quae nūlla tālia habēbat, līberōs suōs vocāvit et eōs amīcae exhibēns, dīxit, "Ēn ea ōrnāmenta mea!"

[1] **fuerint**, *are*.

III. Agricola et Anguis (The Farmer and the Snake)

Agricola anguem frīgore paene exstīnctum repperit. Misericordiā mōtus, eum pectore fōvit. Mox anguis recreātus vīrēs recēpit et agricolae prō beneficiō vulnus lētāle īnflīxit.

Malī tālem mercēdem prō beneficiīs reddere solent.

IV. Asinus Leōnis Pelle Indūtus (The Donkey Wearing a Lion's Skin)

Asinus leōnis pelle indūtus per campōs currēbat et omnia alia animālia terrēbat. Hominēs etiam et mulierēs et puerī fugiēbant. Sed subitō auris ingēns ē pelle leōnis ēminet. Tum omnēs agricolae rīdent et eum verberibus castīgant et ad stabulum agunt.

EXERCISES

(*a*) Point out all the adjectives of the third declension, indicating to what group they belong, and explain each case.

(*b*) Review. The above stories may be used as material for dictation.

COLLATERAL READING

The Gracchi (133–121 B.C.)

Notable efforts at reform had been made, but the older statesmen were too selfish, too narrow, or too timid; and the great attempt at reform fell to two youths, the Gracchi brothers, throbbing with noble enthusiasm and with the fire of genius.

Their father had been a magnificent aristocrat. Their mother, *Cornelia*, is as famous for her fine culture and noble nature as for being the "Mother of the Gracchi." Tiberius himself was early distinguished in war and marked by his

uprightness and energy. *This was the first man to strike at the root of the industrial, moral, and political decay of Italy, by trying to rebuild the yeoman class.*

Tiberius obtained the tribuneship for the year 133, and at once brought forward an agrarian law. It was the obsolete land clause of the Licinian law in a gentler but more effective form. It was passed in spite of the opposition of the Senate and the wealthy men.

Tiberius next proposed to extend Roman citizenship to all Italy. . . . A riot broke out, and the more violent of the Senators and their friends murdered Gracchus and some three hundred of his adherents. . . . But the work of Tiberius lived on. . . . The land commission (composed of the friends of Tiberius) did its work zealously, and in 125 B.C. *the citizen list of Rome had increased by eighty thousand farmers.* . . . After a few years the Senate abolished the commission. . . . Just nine years after his brother's death, *Caius Gracchus* took up the work. . . . Now he was Rome's greatest orator, a dauntless, resolute, clear-sighted man, long brooding on personal revenge and on patriotic reform. . . .

First the land commission was reëstablished, and its work was extended *to the founding of Roman colonies in distant parts of Italy.* Still more important, Caius *introduced the plan of Roman colonization outside Italy. The colonists were to keep full Roman citizenship.*

Then by various laws Caius took away power from the senate, and himself ruled in its place. He had tried to provide against his brother's fate by a law expressly legalizing reëlection to the tribuneship, and he served two terms, virtually as dictator. . . .

When Gracchus stood for a third election he was defeated. Now that he was no longer protected by the sanctity of the tribuneship, the nobles were bent upon his ruin. The chance was soon found. The Senate tried to repeal the law for the colony at Carthage. . . . A bloody battle followed in

the streets. Gracchus, taking no part in the conflict himself, was slain. . . .

The victorious Senate struck hard. It resumed its sovereign rule. The proposed colonies were abandoned, *the peasants were permitted to sell their land, and the commission was abolished.* The old economic decay began again, and soon the work of the Gracchi was but a memory.

LESSON LIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

111. Formation of Comparatives. — The nominative of comparatives is formed by adding to the base of the positive the suffix **–ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **–ius** for the neuter.

Positive	Base	Comparative
altus, –a, –um	**alt–**	**altior** (m. and f.), **altius** (n.), *higher, rather high*
fortis, –e	**fort–**	**fortior** (m. and f.), **fortius** (n.), *braver, rather brave*

112. Declension of Comparatives. — Comparatives are declined on the model of nouns with consonant stems of the third declension (see § 94), that is, the ablative singular ends in **–e**, the genitive plural in **–um**, the nominative and accusative neuter plural in **–a**.

	Singular		Plural	
	Base and stem: **altior–**			
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter
Nom.:	**al′tior**	**al′tius**	**altiō′rēs**	**altiō′ra**
Gen.:	**altiō′ris**		**altiō′rum**	
Dat.:	**altiō′rī**		**altiō′ribus**	
Acc.:	**altiō′rem**	**al′tius**	**altiō′rēs**	**altiō′ra**
Abl.:	**altiō′re**		**altiō′ribus**	

Exception: Adjectives having a vowel before the ending **–us** form the comparative by the use of **magis**, *more*.

necessārius, *necessary* **magis necessārius**, *more necessary*

CAVĒ CANEM — LOOK OUT FOR THE DOG!
A mosaic pavement at the entrance to a house in Pompeii.

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
ca'nis, –is, m.	*dog*	canine
ci'bus, –ī, m.	*food*	
mēns, men'tis, f.	*mind, thought*	mental
pā'nis, –is, m.	*bread*	pannier, pantry
cē'terī, –ae, –a, pl.	*the other*	et cetera, etc.
doc'tus, –a, –um	*learned*	doctor
necessā'rius, –a, –um	*necessary*	necessity
vē'lōx (gen. **–ōcis**)	*swift, fast*	velocity
ma'gis	*more*	magistrate
quam	*than*	

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the base of the following adjectives:

longus, fortis, cārus, vēlōx, potēns, brevis, laetus, piger, celer, audāx.

(*b*) Identify and translate the following comparatives:

altior (*Model:* **altior**, nominative singular masculine and feminine of the comparative formed from the adjective **altus, –a, –um**); **longiōris, lēnius, celeriōra, tardiōrem, fortiōrēs, doctiōribus, fīdiōrī, vēlōciōre.**

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Pedes tardior quam eques est.
2. Amīcōs fīdiōrēs dēligō.
3. Bellum brevius ā prīncipe audāciōre parātur.
4. Cantā, poēta, glōriam virī fortiōris.
5. Belgae (the *Belgians*) fortiōrēs quam cēterī Gallī erant.
6. Maria altiōra quam flūmina sunt.

7. Lepus animal celerius quam canis est.
8. Nihil est vēlōcius quam mēns.
9. Magister doctior quam discipulus esse dēbet.
10. Iter per Sēquanōs (*Sequanians*, a Gallic tribe on the Rhone) difficilius quam iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam erat.
11. Pānis magis necessārius est quam cētera genera cibī.

(*d*) Point out every comparative in (*c*), explaining its ending, and giving the positive form of the adjective from which it is derived.

(*e*) Give the comparative (masculine, feminine, and neuter forms, nominative singular and plural) of the following adjectives:

doctus, lēnis, celeber, incertus, prūdēns, ācer, vērus.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in both numbers:

puella pulchrior, animal celerius, mīles audācior, templum antīquius.

(*b*) Review. Put the italicized words in the plural:

1. *Fīlius meus prūdentior est.* 2. *Glōriam virī fortiōris cantō.* 3. *Proelium brevius parābitur.* 4. *Canem fīdiōrem* habēo. 5. *Artī difficiliōrī* sē dabat.

(*c*) Review. Put the italicized words in the singular:

1. *Puellae impigriōrēs* quam *puerī sunt.* 2. Glōria *mīlitibus ācriōribus* datur. 3. *Canēs tardiōrēs* quam *leporēs sunt.* 4. *Montibus altiōribus* impedīmur.

(*d*) Review. Give the first persons singular and plural of: (1) the present; (2) the perfect; (3) the future of:

1. Amīcōs fīdiōres dēligere. 2. Bellum brevius parāre. 3. Canem vēlōciōrem habēre. 4. Flūmine altiōre impedīrī.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. I am happier than my friend.
2. The girl is more diligent than the boy.
3. Dogs are more faithful than all other animals.
4. Dogs are slower than hares.
5. Cavalrymen are faster than infantrymen.
6. We were in a more bitter fight.
7. Who is preparing a longer war?
8. What is quicker than the mind?
9. We like good bread; what is more necessary than bread?
10. Your rampart is higher but it will not hinder us.
11. Our soldiers are led by bolder chiefs.
12. The other teachers are more learned.
13. Listen to the words of a more prudent friend.
14. Roads through the mountains are shorter but more difficult than roads through the plains.

READING LESSON

I. Respōnsum Lacōnicum (A Laconic Answer)

Nūntius Lacōnī dīxit, "Magnus numerus hostium est." Lacō respondit, "Tantō[1] illūstrior glōria nostra erit."

II. Rēx Ēsuriēns (A Hungry King)

Ptolemaeus rēx, peragrāns Aegyptum sine comitibus, ēsuriēbat. Cibārius pānis ā rūsticō eī datus est. "Nihil umquam mihi vīsum est," ait, "eō pāne[2] iūcundius."

---

[1] **Tantō** (*by*) *so much.* Ablative of degree of difference with a comparative.

[2] **eō pāne = quam is pānis.** The ablative may be used to replace **quam** followed by a nominative or an accusative case.

III. Vacca, Capella, Ovis, Leō (The Cow, the Goat, the Sheep, and the Lion)

Vacca et capella et ovis cum leōne sociae erant. Cervum vāstī corporis cēpērunt. Leō quattuor partēs fēcit. "Ego prīmam," ait, "tollō quod nōminor leō; mihi secundam tribuētis quia fortior sum; tertia mea est quod potentior sum; quīcumque quārtam tanget, ā mē necābitur." Sīc tōtam praedam sibi tribuit.

Haec fābula docet humilēs cum potentibus sociōs numquam esse dēbēre.

IV. Anserēs et Gruēs (The Geese and the Cranes)

Quondam ānserēs et gruēs herbam prātī ēdēbant. Dominus prātī vēnit. Gruēs, leviōrēs et celeriōrēs quam ānserēs, facile āvolāvērunt, sed ānserēs, impeditī gravitāte corporis, captī et necātī sunt.

Sīc saepe humilēs, cum potentibus in eōdem maleficiō sociī, sōlī poenās dant, dum aliī salvī ēvādunt.

V. Ego Mē Ipse Cūrō (I take Care of Myself)

Scīpiō Nāsīca, cēnsor factus, sē gravem et sevērum praebuit. Quondam numerum equitum cēnsēbat. Equitem ōbēsum et pinguem, equum vērō[1] eiusdem macrum et strigōsum vīdit. "Cūr," inquit cēnsor, "pinguior es quam equus tuus?" — "Quod," respondit eques, "ego mē ipse cūrō, equum vērō servus."

Respōnsum nōn verēcundum vīsum est et eques graviter obiūrgātus et multā damnātus est.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Censors

The officers of chief dignity in the Roman Republic, from least to greatest, were: *Aediles* (two), with oversight over

[1] **vērō**, *but* (literally, *in truth*), never starts a clause.

police and public works; *Praetors* (two), with the chief judicial power; *Consuls* (two), leaders in war and foreign policy; *Censors* (two); *Dictator* (one, and in critical times only).

These five were called *curule offices*, because the holders, dividing among themselves the old royal power, kept the right to use the curule chair — the ivory "throne" of the old kings. There were also the two *inferior aediles*, the eight *quaestors* (in charge of the treasury and with some judicial power), and the ten *tribunes*.

. . . In 443 B.C., a new office, the *censorship*, was created, to take over the religious part of the consul's duty and his most important powers. To this office, *only patricians* could be elected. Every fifth year two censors were chosen, with power to revise the lists of the citizens and of the Senate. By their mere order they could deprive any man of citizenship, or degrade a senator. They also exercised a general moral oversight over the state. Either censor could veto action by the other. Their tremendous power was used commonly with moderation, and not for partisan ends.

LESSON LV

THE SUPERLATIVE

113. Formation of Superlatives (*–issimus, –a, –um*). — The Latin superlative is formed by adding the suffix **–issimus** (m.), **–issima** (f.), **–issimum** (n.) to the base. It is declined like **bonus, –a, –um.**

Positive	Base	Superlative
altus, –a, –um	**alt–**	**altissimus, –a, –um** *the highest, very high*
fortis, –e	**fort–**	**fortissimus, –a, –um** *the bravest, very brave*

(*a*) *Slightly Irregular Superlatives.* — (1) All adjectives ending in **–er** form the superlative by adding the suffix **–rimus, –a, –um** to the nominative masculine singular.

Positive			Superlative
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neuter*	
pĭger	**pigra**	**pigrum**	**pigerrimus, –a, –um** *the laziest, very lazy*
ācer	**ācris**	**ācre**	**ācerrimus, –a, –um** *the most eager, very eager*

(2) Five adjectives, ending in **–ilis**, form the superlative by adding **–limus, –a, –um** to the base.

They are

facilis, –e, *easy* — **similis, –e** *similar*
difficilis, –e, *difficult* — **dissimilis, –e,** *different*
humilis, –e, *humble*

Positive	Base	Superlative	
facilis, –e	**facil–**	**facillimus, –a, –um**	*the easiest, very easy*

Note that the same adjectives which form the comparative by the use of **magis**, *more*, form the superlative by the use of **maximē**, *most*.

necessārius **magis necessārius** **maximē necessārius**

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
dissi'milis, –e	*different*	dissimilar
fa'cilis, –e	*easy*	facility
nō'bilis, –e	*noble*	nobility
pau'per (gen. **–eris**) [1]	*poor*	pauper, poverty
si'milis, –e	*similar*	similitude
ma'ximē	*most*	maximum

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give the base of the adjectives in the vocabulary.

(*b*) Read carefully and translate:

cārus, cārior, cārissimus
nōbilis, nōbilior, nōbilissima
facile, facilius, facillimum
ācer, ācrior, ācerrimus
longa, longior, longissima
necessārium, magis necessārium, maximē necessārium

(*c*) Identify:

faciliōrī, difficiliōra, fortiōribus, longissimīs, miserrimōrum, facillima, ācerrimōs.

(*d*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Canis fīdissimum omnium animālium est.
2. Pānis maximē necessārius cibus est.

[1] **Pauper**, an adjective of the third declension with one ending, is declined like a noun with a consonant stem (see § 94).

3. Vir pauperrimus nōn semper miserrimus est.
4. Facillimum nōn difficillimum iter dēligunt.
5. Causae nostrae nōn similēs sunt; dissimillimae sunt.
6. Bella ācerrima brevissima sunt.
7. Oppidum vāllō altissimō mūnītum est.
8. Belgae fortissimī omnium Gallōrum erant.
9. Lēgātōs virōs nōbilissimōs cīvitātis ad Caesarem mittunt.

(*e*) Point out all the superlatives in (*d*), and explain their formation and endings.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in both numbers:

amīcus cārissimus, rosa pulcherrima, iter facillimum.

(*b*) Put the italicized words (1) in the plural:

1. *Canem fīdiōrem* dēligunt; *canem fīdissimum* dēligunt. 2. *Bellum brevius* parāmus; *bellum brevissimum* parāmus. 3. *Monte altiōre* impediuntur; *monte altissimō* impediuntur.

(2) In the singular:

1. *Doctiōrēs sunt; doctissimī sunt.* 2. *Puerōs pauperiōrēs* iuvāmus; *puerōs pauperrimōs* iuvāmus. 3. *Itinera faciliōra* dēligō; *itinera facillima* dēligō.

(*c*) Review. Give the third persons singular and plural of the present, perfect, and future of:

1. Itineribus difficillimīs in Galliam contendere. 2. Montibus altissimīs impedīrī. 3. Rēgem superbissimum vincere.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. Your brother is my dearest friend.
2. Our teachers are very learned.
3. We are helping the poorest and the most unhappy.

4. The hostages were the most noble citizens.
5. Bread is the most necessary of all foods.
6. The longest rivers are not always the deepest.
7. I shall give the most beautiful books to the most diligent pupils.
8. Wars have often very similar causes.
9. The bravest soldiers are led by the boldest chiefs.
10. The shortest way is through the mountains, but it is the most difficult.

READING LESSON

I. Orīgō Obscūrissima Eurīpidis et Dēmosthenis (The Very Obscure Origin of Euripides and Demosthenes)

Illūstrissimī virī saepe humillimō locō nātī sunt. Eurīpidēs, nōtissimus poēta tragicus, mātrem habuit quae olera vēndēbat, et pater Dēmosthenis, ēloquentissimī ōrātōrum Graecōrum, cultellōs vēndēbat.

II. Gorgiās Leontīnus, Vir Doctissimus (Gorgias of Leontini, a Very Learned Man)

Graecī Gorgiae Leontīnō, virō ēloquentissimō et doctissimō aetātis suae, in templō Apollinis Delphicī statuam auream collocāvērunt.

III. Vīpera et Līma (The Viper and the File)

Vīpera praedam quaerēbat. Forte in officīnam fabrī vēnit, līmam vīdit et momordit. Rīsit līma. "Stultissima es," ait, "improba; tē nōn timeō; dūrissima sum; ferrum rōdō et malitiam tuam contemnō."

IV. Helvētia (Switzerland)

Undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte, flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte, monte Iūrā altis-

simō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū[1] Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. (From *Caesar.*)

COLLATERAL READING

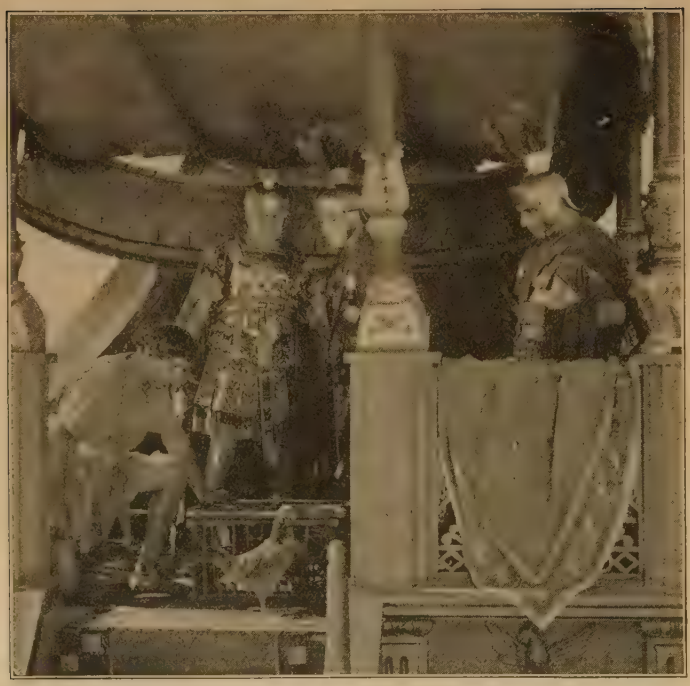
Greek Oracles and Roman Augurs

Apollo, the sun god, was also the god of prophecy among the Greeks. One of his chief temples was at Delphi, far up the

The Ruins of Delphi.

slopes of Mount Parnassus, amid wild and rugged scenery. From a fissure in the ground, within the temple, volcanic gases poured forth. A priestess would inhale the gas until she passed into a trance (or seemed to do so); and, while in this state, she was supposed to see into the future, by the aid

[1] **lacū**, ablative singular of **lacus** (gen. **lacūs**), *lake*, fourth declension.



AUGUR OBSERVING THE SACRED CHICKENS.

of the god. *The advice of this "oracle" was sought by men and by governments throughout all Hellas* (Davis' *Readings*, I, Nos. 41–43).

The gods at Rome manifested their will not by oracles but by omens, or *auspices*. These auspices were sought especially in the conduct of birds, and in the color and size of the entrails of animals. The interpretation of such signs became a kind of science, in the possession of a "college" (*collection*) of augurs. Their "science" came from the Etruscans, and seems to have been related to old Babylonian customs.

Religion became a mighty political instrument. No public act (vote, election, or battle) could be begun without

divine approval. If the gods were properly consulted concerning a proposed measure and had manifested their approval, then the Romans felt they were under obligation to see it carried through. And the thrifty Roman drove hard bargains with his gods. The augurs, or soothsayers, called for fresh animals until the entrails gave the signs desired by the ruling magistrate, and then the gods were as much bound as if they had shown favor at the first trial. The sky was watched until the desired birds did appear, and in the later periods tame birds were kept to give the required indications.

LESSON LVI

ADVERBS

114. Formation of Adverbs (*-ē* and *-iter*). — We have seen (§ 60) how adverbs are derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions (**-us, -a, -um**).

Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding **-iter** to the base.

Note that **-iter** is replaced (*a*) by **-ter** in the case of a few adjectives of one ending; (*b*) by **-er** when the adjective ends in **-āns, -ēns** (base, **ant-, ent-**).

Adjectives	Base	Adverbs	
lentus, -a, -um	**lent-**	**lentē**	*slowly*
ācer, ācris, ācre	**ācr-**	**ācriter**	*eagerly*
fortis, -e	**fort-**	**fortiter**	*bravely*
audāx	**audāc-**	**audācter**	*boldly*
prūdēns	**prūdent-**	**prūdenter**	*prudently*

115. Comparison of Adverbs. — The comparative of adverbs derived from adjectives is like the neuter singular form of the comparative of the adjective.

The superlative is formed regularly (see § 60).

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
lentē	**lentius**	**lentissimē**
ācriter	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**
fortiter	**fortius**	**fortissimē**
audācter	**audācius**	**audācissimē**
prūdenter	**prūdentius**	**prūdentissimē**

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
multitū′dō, –inis, f.	*great number*	multitude
dī′ligēns (gen. **–en′tis**)	*diligent, careful*	
gra′vis, –e	*heavy*	gravity
ve′hemēns (gen. **–en′tis**)	*impetuous*	vehemence
ā′criter	*sharply*	
cele′riter	*quickly*	
dīligen′ter	*diligently, carefully*	
fa′cile [1]	*easily*	
for′titer	*bravely*	
glōriō′sē	*gloriously*	
gra′viter	*heavily, hard*	
prūden′ter	*prudently, with prudence*	
vehemen′ter	*impetuously*	
coe′pī,[2] **coep′tus**	*begin*	inception
iū′dicō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus	*judge*	judicature, adjudicate
pre′mō, –ere, pres′sī, pres′sus	*press hard*	pressure, oppression
prōcē′dō, –ere, –ces′sī, —	*advance*	process, proceed
resis′tō, –ere, re′stitī, —	*resist*	
longē lātēque	*far and wide*	

[1] Some adverbs are not formed regularly; they are like the accusative or ablative neuter singular of the adjective.

Adjectives	Adverbs
facilis, –e	**facile**, *easily*
prīmus, –a, –um	**prīmum, prīmō**, *first, at first, for the first time*
brevis, –e	**brevī** (understood, **tempore**), *shortly*

[2] This verb is used only in the perfect tenses.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Give (1) the base of each of the following adjectives:

doctus, vehemēns, superbus, gravis, lātus, pulcher, ācer, dīligēns, similis, fēlīx, vēlōx, tardus, celer;

(2) The positive, the comparative, and the superlative of the adverb derived from each of them.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

iūdicant, premēbam, resistimus, iūdicāverāmus, pressistī, resistent, iūdicārī, pressī erāmus, restitit, prōcessērunt.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Lentē prōcēdere dēbētis.
2. Sī vehementer pugnābis, glōriōsē vincēs.
3. Animālia timidissima celerrimē fugiunt.
4. Id facile et celeriter faciēmus.
5. Omnēs casae longē lātēque incēnsae sunt.
6. Prūdenter iūdicāre, rēctē facere, dīligenter labōrāre dēbēmus.
7. Cīvēs bonī fortiter patriam dēfendent.
8. Mīlitēs ācrius resistere et fortius pugnāre coeperant.
9. Ā multitūdine hostium graviter premuntur.
10. Tum omnēs ācerrimē et fortissimē restitērunt.

(*d*) Indicate in (*c*) (1) every adverb used in its positive form; (2) every adverb used in the comparative or superlative form.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) (1) Conjugate and (2) give the past perfect of: **ācriter pugnāre coepī.**

(*b*) Review. Give the first persons singular and plural of (1) the present; (2) the past; (3) the future; (4) the perfect of:

1. **Prūdenter iūdicāre.** 2. **Graviter premī.** 3. **Celerrimē fugere.** 4. **Lentē prōcēdere.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. A great number of slaves were working most diligently.
2. Our allies are advancing quickly, more quickly than the enemy.
3. You (singular) do not always judge with prudence.
4. The Romans will easily defeat all their enemies.
5. They fight impetuously and win gloriously.
6. Our fields are laid waste far and wide.
7. Work more diligently, and you will always be praised.
8. We fought sharply and resisted courageously.
9. He was very hard pressed by a great number of cavalrymen, and he began to flee slowly.

READING LESSON

I. Somnium Vērum Ēvāsit (The Dream Came True)

Eudēmus, vir Cyprius, Aristotelis familiāris, peragrāns Macedoniam, ad urbem pervēnit quae ab Alexandrō tyrannō crūdēliter et iniūstē administrābātur.

In eā urbe Eudēmus aegerrimus fuit. In somnō iuvenem vīdit quī eī dīxit, "Mox tū convalēscēs et Alexander tyrannus perībit."

Atque ita quidem omnia ēvēnērunt. Eudēmus convaluit et tyrannus ā frātribus uxōris interfectus est.

II. Fortitūdō Arriae (Arria's Bravery)

Caecīna Paetus, marītus Arriae, aegerrimus erat. Fīlius eōrum quoque aegrōtābat. Puer dēcessit. Fīliō māter fūnus

parāvit et exsequiās dūxit sed marītō mortem fīlī nōn nūntiāvit.

Quotiēns in cubiculum intrābat, marītus interrogābat, "Quid puer agit?" Arria fortiter respondēbat, "Bene quiēvit, libenter cibum sūmpsit."

A Roman Matron.

Deinde, cum diū prohibitae lacrimae prōrumpēbant, ē cubiculō celeriter exībat. Tum sē dolōrī dabat.

COLLATERAL READING

Women's Condition under the Empire

Woman became the equal of man in law, and his companion instead of his servant in the family. . . .

The English historian, Lecky, says:

"Intellectual culture was much diffused among them, and we meet with noble instances of large and accomplished minds united with all the gracefulness of intense womanhood and all the fidelity of the truest love. . . . When Paetus, a noble Roman, was ordered by Nero to put himself to death, his friends knew that his wife Arria, with her love and her heroic fervor, would not survive him. Her son-in-law tried to dissuade her from suicide by saying: 'If *I* am called upon to perish, would you wish your daughter to die with

me?' She answered, 'Yes, if she has then lived with you as long and happily as I with Paetus.'

Paetus for a moment hesitated to strike the fatal blow, but Arria, taking the dagger, plunged it deeply into her breast, and, dying, handed it to her husband, exclaiming, 'My Paetus, it does not pain.'"

LESSON LVII

REVIEW

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Compare the declensions of **parvus, –a, –um**; **noster, –tra, –trum** (§ 46) with those of **ācer, ācris, ācre**; **fortis, –e**; **fēlīx** (§§ 108, 110).

(*b*) Compare the declensions of the adjectives **ācer, ācris, ācre**; **fortis, –e**; **fēlīx** with those of the nouns **urbs** and **mare** (§ 105).

(*c*) Compare the declension of the comparative **altior, altius** (§ 112) with that of **cōnsul** and **flūmen** (§ 105).

(*d*) Review the present imperative, active and passive, of the four conjugations (§ 109).

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Translate into English the following words:

1. *Nouns*

A. First Declension

Graecia

B. Second Declension

annus **cibus**

C. Third Declension

ars	**lepus**	**multitūdō**
canis	**mēns**	**pānis**

2. *Adjectives*

A. First and Second Declensions

cēterī	doctus	necessārius

B. Third Declension

(1) *Adjectives of Three Endings*

ācer	celeber	celer

(2) *Adjectives of Two Endings*

brevis	facilis	lēnis	omnis
difficilis	fortis	nōbilis	similis
dissimilis	gravis		

(3) *Adjectives of One Ending*

audāx	pār	prūdēns	vehemēns
dīligēns	pauper	recēns	vēlōx
fēlīx	potēns		

3. *Adverbs*

ācriter	dīligenter	graviter	prūdenter
audācter	facile	magis	quam
brevī	fortiter	maximē	vehementer
celeriter	glōriōsē	prīmum	prīmō

4. *Verbs*

A. First Conjugation

cōnservāre	iūdicāre

B. Third Conjugation

coepī	incendere	prōcēdere	resistere
cognōscere	premere		

5. *Other Parts of Speech*

inter

6. *Idiom*

longē lātēque

(*b*) Divide all the words in (*a*) into syllables, indicating which one must be accented, and tell why.

(*c*) Point out in (*a*) : (1) the masculine nouns ; (2) the feminine nouns ; (3) the neuter nouns.

(*d*) Give (1) the base of all the nouns in (*a*) ; (2) their genitives, singular and plural.

(*e*) Give (1) the base of all the adjectives in (*a*) ; (2) their feminine and neuter forms, nominative singular ; (3) their genitives, singular and plural ; (4) their comparatives and superlatives, nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter.

(*f*) Answer the following questions, and illustrate :

1. What are the nominative endings of the adjectives of the first and second declensions?
2. Into how many groups are the adjectives of the third declension divided?
3. What do we mean by (*a*) adjectives of three endings ; (*b*) of two endings ; (*c*) of one ending?
4. Give the endings of the third declension adjectives.
5. How is the comparative of a Latin adjective formed?
6. How are Latin comparatives declined?
7. How is the superlative of a Latin adjective formed?
8. How is the superlative of an adjective (*a*) ending in **–er**, (*b*) ending in **–ilis**, formed?
9. What adjectives form their comparatives and superlatives by using respectively **magis** and **maximē**?
10. How are superlatives declined?
11. How are adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions formed?
12. How are adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension formed?
13. When is the ending **–iter** replaced in an adverb (*a*) by **–ter** ; (*b*) by **–er**?

14. What forms of the adjective are sometimes used adverbially?

15. How are the comparative and superlative of an adverb formed?

16. How are the second person singular and the second person plural of the present imperative active of the four conjugations formed?

17. How are the same persons of the present imperative passive of the four conjugations formed?

III. Written.

(*a*) Decline in both numbers:

vir celebris; **vulnus grave**; **nauta audāx**; **canis vēlōcior**; **bellum brevius**; **ars difficillima**.

(*b*) Translate the following words into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns*

art	food	Greece	mind
bread	great number	hare	thought
dog			year

2. *Adjectives*

all	diligent	heavy	prudent
audacious	eager	impetuous	quick
bitter	easy	learned	recent
bold	equal	necessary	sharp
brave	famous	noble	short
cautious	fast	the other	similar
celebrated	gentle	poor	soft
different	happy	powerful	swift
difficult			whole

3. *Adverbs*

bravely	gloriously	more	very quickly
very bravely	heavily	most	sharply
diligently	very hard	prudently	very sharply
easily	impetuously	quickly	than

4. *Verbs*

to advance	I began	to learn	to resist
to become acquainted with	to judge	to press (hard)	to set on fire

5. *Other Parts of Speech*

among between

6. *Idiom*

far and wide

(*c*) Derivation. — (1) From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

fortitude, canine, gravity, velocity, omnipotent, celerity, brevity, annual.

(2) Make a list of the English derivatives and cognates of **premere** according to Type I (see p. 178); of **cognōscere** according to Type II; of **iūdicāre** according to Type III.

LESSON LVIII

READING LESSON

I. L. Iūnius Brūtus, Rōmānōrum Cōnsul Prīmus (A. C. 509; Annō U. C. 245)

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmae, et fīliī eius pessimī et prāvissimī erant. Itaque odium populī suscēpērunt et Rōmā expulsī sunt. Duo cōnsulēs creāti sunt: L. Iūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātīnus.

Erant in urbe paucī nōbilēs adulēscentēs amīcī Tarquiniōrum. Inter eōs adulēscentēs ipsī fīliī Brūtī cōnsulis erant. Contrā cōnsulēs coniūrāvērunt et Tarquinium rēgem nocte in urbem accipere statuērunt.

Unus ex servīs sermōnem eōrum excēpit et coniūrātiōnem ad cōnsulēs celerrimē dētulit. Scriptae ad Tarquinium litterae manifestum facinus fēcērunt. Prōditōrēs in vincula coniectī sunt, deinde damnātī. Stābant ad pālum dēligātī adulēscentēs nōbilissimī, sed līberī cōnsulis omnium in sē oculōs convertēbant. Līctōrēs iuvenēs virgīs caedunt, secūrīque feriunt. Supplicī nōn spectātor modo, sed etiam exāctor erat Brūtus, quī fīliīs suīs veniam negāverat. "Mihi fīliī meī cārissimī sunt," inquit, "sed lībertās patriae meae cārior est."

II. C. Mūcius Scaevola (A. C. 507; Annō U. C. 247)

Porsenna, nōtissimus rēx Etrūscōrum et socius Tarquinī Superbī, ultimī Rōmānōrum rēgis, urbem obsidēbat. Rōma in maximō perīculō erat. Trecentī iuvenēs nōbilissimī contrā Porsennam coniūrāvērunt et rēgem interficere et patriam servāre statuērunt.

Inter eōs Gāius Mūcius erat. In castra Porsennae vēnit. Ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope rēgium tribūnal[1] cōnstitit. Stīpendium tunc forte mīlitibus dabātur et scrība cum rēge similī ferē ōrnātū[2] sedēbat. Mūcius dēceptus scrībam prō rēge occīdit.

Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem dētractus, dextram[3] accēnsō ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit. "Cūr dextram ūris?" rēx eum interrogāvit. Adulēscēns respondit, "Eam pūniō quod in caede peccāvit."

Porsenna, incrēdibilī fortitūdine attonitus, iuvenem fortissimum līberārī[4] iussit. Cognōmen Scaevola Gāiō Mūciō datum est.

Quam pulchrum exemplum fortitūdinis et amōris patriae!

III. Cloelia Virgō
(A. C. 507; Annō U. C. 247)

Porsenna, incrēdibilī fortitūdine C. Mūcī Scaevolae territus, cum Rōmānīs pācem celeriter fēcit et obsidēs accēpit. Inter eōs Cloelia, virgō nōbilissima, erat. Castra rēgis nōn procul ā rīpā Tiberis posita erant. Cloelia, dēceptīs cūstōdibus,[5] nocte equum arripuit et flūmen celere trāiēcit.

Ubi fuga virginis fortissimae nūntiāta est, rēx, prīmō[6] īrā incēnsus, Rōmam[7] lēgātōs mīsit et Cloeliam obsidem repetīvit. Rōmānī eam restituērunt.

Tum Porsenna, virginis virtūte permōtus, eam laudāvit

---

[1] **tribūnal**: a platform made of turf from which the commander in chief rendered justice to the soldiers or addressed them.

[2] **similī ferē ōrnātū**, *dressed almost like* (*the king*).

[3] **dextram**, *right hand.*

[4] See footnote 3, page 298.

[5] This is another use of the *ablative absolute* which was discussed in footnote 1, on page 315.

[6] **prīmō** or **prīmum**; see footnote 1, page 351.

[7] **Rōmam**, *to Rome.* See footnote 1, on page 324.

MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA.
From a painting by Rubens.

et līberāvit, et eī partem obsidum dedit. Cloelia virginēs puerōsque ēlēgit et cum eīs in patriam rediit.

Rōmānī novam in fēminā virtūtem novō genere honōris, statuā equestrī, dōnāvērunt. In summā [1] viā Sacrā est posita statua virginis celebris, īnsidentis in equō.

[1] **In summā**, *At the highest point of;* see footnote 2, page 232.

COLLATERAL READING

I. The Tiber

The Tiber flows through Rome from north to south in a channel which in classical times varied from 60 to 100 metres. So great is the amount of sand and mud which the river has always carried down that the seashore at its mouth has steadily advanced, and the site of the original town of Ostia is now 6600 metres inland. . . . The inundations of the Tiber have always been a source of great danger to large sections of the city, not only near the river, where the water actually overflows, but as far as the Pantheon, where the water sets back through underground channels. One hundred and thirty-two of these inundations have been recorded since the traditional one when Romulus and Remus were exposed to the flood, one hundred and six of them since the Christian era. . . . Where the river approaches most nearly to the Capitoline, it divides and flows around an island about 270 metres in length and 70 metres in greatest breadth. . . .

II. The Sacra Via

The Sacra via, the oldest and most famous street in Rome, began near the present site of the Colosseum, and ran northwest to the summit of the Velia, which it crossed near the arch of Titus. This was the *summa Sacra via*, and from here the street curved towards the north and extended to the east end of the Forum. Its continuation passed through the Forum valley to the foot of the Capitoline. . . . Originally the name Sacra via was given only to that part of the street which was between the Velia and the Forum, but it was soon made to include the whole extent from the Colosseum to the Forum, and in modern times even the part within the Forum.

— *The Topography and Monuments of Ancient Rome* by Platner.

LESSON LIX

DEMONSTRATIVES. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

116. **Hic, Haec, Hoc** may be used as a demonstrative adjective or a demonstrative pronoun, meaning *this, this one*, and is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.:	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.:	**hu'ius**	**hu'ius**	**hu'ius**	**hō'rum**	**hā'rum**	**hō'rum**
Dat.:	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.:	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.:	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

117. **Indirect Discourse.** An indirect statement or quotation, after a verb meaning *say, know, think*, and the like, is said to be in indirect discourse. The verb is put in the infinitive and the subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case. Compare English, *I know him to be right.*

Direct Statement

Hic puer bonus est. *This boy is good.*

Direct Quotation

Dicō, "Hic puer bonus est." *I say, "This boy is good."*

Indirect Quotation

Dīcō hunc puerum bonum esse. *I say that this boy is good.*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
sa'lūs, –ū'tis, f.	*safety*	salute, salutary
trīs'tis, –e	*sad*	
tur'pis, –e	*shameful*	turpitude
addū'cō, –ere, addū'xī, adduc'tus	*lead to, prompt*	
in'colō, –ere, inco'luī, —	*inhabit*	colony

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Tell which of the following English sentences are (1) direct statements; (2) direct quotations; (3) indirect quotations:

1. I am diligent. 2. I said, "I am diligent." 3. He knows that I am diligent. 4. I thought, "It is shameful." 5. Do you think that it is shameful? 6. You were working. 7. He told me that you were working.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

hic, is, eam, eius, hunc, id, huius, eā, hīs, eōrum, eīs, hārum, hōc, hās, eōs, eī, hōrum, hī, hae.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Hic puer trīstis est; haec puella laeta est.
2. Putō hunc puerum trīstem esse.
3. Hoc templum antīquum est.
4. Dīcunt hoc templum antīquum esse.
5. Hunc cīvem laudāmus.
6. Scit nōs hunc cīvem laudāre.
7. Huic puellae praemium dedī.
8. Audīmus incolās huius oppidī bellum timēre.

9. Ad hanc īnsulam nāvigābimus.
10. Erant hae causae bellī ācris.
11. Haec praemia nōbīs data sunt.
12. Nūntiāmus hīs militibus signum proelī darī.
13. Numquam fugā salūtem petere dēbēs: hoc enim turpe est; exīstimō hoc turpe esse.
14. Hostēs hīs factīs adductī sunt.
15. Omnem Galliam incolunt trēs (*three*) populī: hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.
16. Caesar dīxit Belgās fortissimōs omnium Gallōrum esse.

(*d*) (1) Indicate and explain all the uses of **hic**, **haec**, **hoc** in (*c*); (2) explain the use of the subject accusative in sentences 2, 4, 6, 8, 12, 13 and 16.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in both numbers:

hoc factum, hic mīles, haec rēgīna.

(*b*) Put all the italicized words in the plural:

1. *Haec lēx.* 2. *Hoc signum* videō. 3. *Huic puellae rosam* dedī. 4. Altitūdō *huius flūminis* nōn magna est. 5. *Hunc discipulum* laudō. 6. *Hanc puellam* nōn laudō.

(*c*) Make all the italicized words singular:

1. *Haec nōmina* audiō. 2. *Sunt hae causae* bellī. 3. *Hī servī tardī sunt.* 4. Virtūs *hōrum mīlitum* magna est. 5. Ab *hīs nautīs* servātus sum. 6. *Hās rosās* amō.

(*d*) Review. Replace the italicized infinitive by (1) the present; (2) the perfect; (3) the future; (4) the past:

1. *Incolere:* Tū Galliam nōn ——.
2. *Petere:* Vōs salūtem ——.

3. *Addūcī:* Nōs hīs causīs nōn ——.
4. *Scīre:* Amīcus meus hoc nōn ——.
5. *Dīcere:* Quis haec verba ——?
6. *Darī:* Tibi hoc praemium ——.

(*e*) Change the following direct statements into indirect discourse by using such verbs as **putāre, dīcere, scīre, audīre, nūntiāre**:

1. Belgae Galliam incolunt. 2. Rīpae flūminis altae sunt. 3. Haec puella rosās amat. 4. Rōmānī fugā salūtem nōn petunt.

(*f*) Change the following direct quotations into indirect discourse:

1. Dīcit, "Hic vir patriam dēfendit." 2. Respondunt, "Hoc turpe est." 3. Dīcō, "Ego hīs praemiīs nōn addūcor."

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. These little girls are sad; I hear that these little girls are sad.

2. This good man is helping his friends; we know that this good man is helping his friends.

3. The enemy (plural) is hindered by the depth of this river; they say that the enemy is hindered by the depth of this river.

4. The bravery of these soldiers is saving the country; it is known that the bravery of these soldiers is saving the country.

5. We are not prompted by these shameful causes; we say that we are not prompted by these shameful causes.

6. These people used to live in Italy; I know that these people are now living in Gaul.

7. The victory was announced to the consul by this swift messenger.

8. I shall give a reward to this good boy.

9. You ought to praise these skillful sailors.

10. You sought safety in flight; this was shameful.

READING LESSON

I. Dēcepta Aviditās (Disappointed Greediness)

Canis, per flūmen natāns, carnem in ōre tenēbat. Imāginem suam in aquā vīdit. Putāns alterum canem praedam in ōre habēre, eam ēripere statuit; carnem quam tenēbat dīmīsit, sed hanc praedam quam petēbat, nōn attigit.

Is, quī aliēnum bonum petit, proprium meritō āmittit.

II. Fabia Gēns (The Fabian Clan)
(A. C. 479; Annō U. C. 275)

Rōmānī incursiōnibus Vēientium vexābantur. Huic populō bellum indīxērunt, sed Fabia gēns sōla hoc bellum suscipere cōnstituit. Omnēs Rōmānī Fabiōs laudāvērunt. Hī arma cēpērunt et per urbem incessērunt. Erant trecentī sex nōbilissimī virī. Hōrum dux M. Fabius cōnsul erat.

Prīmō[1] Fabiī hostēs vīcērunt. Audācia Fabiōrum crēvit. Tum in rīpā Cremerae flūminis castra posuērunt. Ibi Vēientēs eōs in īnsidiās ēlicuērunt. In hōc proeliō omnēs Fabiī periērunt. Ūnus superfuit ex hāc tantā gente quī propter aetātem puerīlem ad pugnam nōn ductus erat.

Hic puer prōgenitor erat dictātōris Q. Fabī Maximī cui cognōmen Cūnctātōris datum est quod Hannibalem morā frēgit.

Porta quā Fabiī exierant *Scelerāta* est appellāta.

---

[1] See footnote 1, page 351.

COLLATERAL READING

The "Fabian Policy"

After the defeat of a Roman army of 40,000 men near *Lake Trasimene*, Quintus Fabius Maximus was named dictator to save Rome. That wary old general adopted the wise policy of delay (" Fabian Policy ") to wear out Hannibal and gain breathing time for Rome. He would not give battle; but he followed close at the Carthaginian's heels, from place to place. Even Hannibal could not catch Fabius unawares; and he did not dare to attack the intrenched Roman camps. But he had to draw the Italian " allies " from Rome, or he would have to flee from Italy. So far, not a city in Italy had opened its gates to him as a shelter.

But in Rome many of the common people murmured impatiently, nicknaming Fabius *Cunctator* (the Laggard). Popular leaders, too, began to grumble that the Senate protracted the war in order to gain glory for the aristocratic generals; and the following summer the new consuls were given 90,000 men — by far the largest army Rome had ever put in the field, and several times Hannibal's army — with orders to crush the invader.

The result was the battle of Cannae — " a carnival of cold steel, a butchery, not a battle." Hannibal lost 6000 men. Rome lost 60,000 dead and 20,000 prisoners. A consul, a fourth of the senators, nearly all the officers, and over a fifth of the fighting population of the city perished. Hannibal sent home a bushel of gold rings from the hands of fallen Roman nobles.

Rome learned from disaster . . . and fell back upon iron constancy and steadfast caution. She risked no more pitched battles with Hannibal. The policy of Fabius was again adopted, varied by sudden telling blows from the vigorous soldier, Marcellus, who was called the " Sword " of Rome, as Fabius was called her " Shield."

LESSON LX

DEMONSTRATIVES

118. Ille, Illa, Illud is used as a demonstrative adjective or a demonstrative pronoun, meaning *that, that one.* It is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	
Nom.:	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	
Gen.:	**illī'us**	**illī'us**	**illī'us**	(The plural is like that of
Dat.:	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**bonus, –a, –um.**)
Acc.:	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	
Abl.:	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	

119. Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum is used as an intensive adjective or pronoun, meaning *self, himself, herself,* etc. It is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	
Nom.:	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	
Gen.:	**ipsī'us**	**ipsī'us**	**ipsī'us**	(The plural is like that
Dat.:	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	of **bonus, –a, –um.**)
Acc.:	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	
Abl.:	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
dux, du'cis, m.	*leader*	
nā'vis, –is, f.	*ship*	navigation
pōns, pon'tis, m.	*bridge*	pontoon
me'dius, –a, –um	*middle*	medium
aut . . . aut	*either . . . or*	
quod	*because*	
prohi'beō, –ē're, –hi'buī, –hi'bitus	*prevent, keep off*	prohibition
ve'ho, –ere, ve'xī	*carry*	vehicle, inveigh
ve'hor, ve'hī, vec'tus	*be carried, sail*	

Pōns Rōmānus.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

is, hic, ille, ipse, hās, illud, ipsīus, eās, ipsō, id, illīus, hōrum, illā, huic, hōc, ipsōrum, illī, huius.

(*b*) Identify and translate:

vehimus, vehuntur, vehētis, vecta erat, vectī sumus, prohibēbāmus, prohibuistī, prohibitum est, prohibēbō.

(*c*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Hic puer impigrior quam ille est; sciō hunc puerum impigrum esse.
2. Illīus bellī haec causa fuit.
3. Hoc turpius quam illud est.
4. Hī librī illī puellae dabuntur.
5. Verba tua ab hīs, nōn ab illīs audientur.
6. Quis nūntiat rēgem ipsum in illā nāve vehī?
7. Putāmus illa animālia vēlōciōra quam haec esse.
8. Nāvēs nostrae ad illās īnsulās nāvigābant.
9. Mīlitēs audīvērunt rīpās hōrum flūminum altiōrēs quam illōrum esse.
10. Tū ipsa, amīca mea, illud facere dēbēs.
11. Illī omnēs hominēs, magnō perīculō adductī, in fugā salūtem pōnunt.
12. Praesidium prope illum pontem ā duce ipsō positum erat.
13. Mediam partem Galliae incolunt quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī vocantur.
14. Helvētiī cum Germānīs saepe contendunt quod aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

(*d*) Point out in (*c*) all the cases of (1) **ille, illa, illud**; (2) **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline in both numbers:

illud flūmen, illa nāvis, ille pōns, rēx ipse, rēgīna ipsa, oppidum ipsum.

(*b*) Put in the plural all italicized words:

1. *Ille magister* et *hic discipulus.* 2. *Illa domina* et *haec serva.* 3. *Illud templum* et *hoc oppidum.* 4. Fuga

illīus mīlitis. 5. Sciō multōs nautās in *illā nāve* esse. 6. *Illī puellae,* nōn *huic,* rosās dabō.

(*c*) Make singular all the italicized words:

1. Dā mihi *illōs pulchrōs librōs.* 2. *Hās rosās* nōn dēligō. 3. Virtūs *illōrum prīncipum.* 4. *Illae nāvēs pulcherrimae sunt;* putō *illās nāvēs pulcherrimās* esse. 5. *Illa perīcula* nōn timēs.

(*d*) Review. Replace each dash by the proper form of **ille**:

1. —— puer laetus erat. 2. —— viam mōnstrō. 3. In —— nāvibus vectī sunt. 4. Dux —— mīlitum audāx est. 5. In —— flūmine pōns erat. 6. Dā mihi —— librōs.

(*e*) Review. Replace each dash by the proper form of **ipse**:

1. Rēgēs —— interfectī sunt. 2. Ab suīs —— amīcīs nōn laudātus est. 3. Rēgīna —— trīstis est. 4. Caesarī —— victōriam nūntiāvī. 5. Mīles ācer perīculum —— amat.

(*f*) Review. Put

(1) in the plural: **In quā nāve vehor?**
(2) in the singular: **Nāvēs eōs vehent.**
(3) in the present: **Bellum gessērunt.**
(4) in the past: **Cum Germānīs contendimus.**
(5) in the future: **Suīs fīnibus illōs prohibent.**
(6) in the perfect: **Dux prope pontem praesidium pōnēbat.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. This messenger is swifter than that one; I say that this messenger is swifter than that one.

2. The causes of those wars are shameful; we know that the causes of those wars are shameful.

3. Those ships carry wheat to our allies; it is announced that those ships carry wheat to our allies.

4. We shall not sail on those ships, but on these.

5. Your soldiers will keep off those people from your territory.

6. That bridge was defended by brave soldiers.

7. The leader himself does not know that.

8. Those ambassadors were sent to (**ad**) Caesar himself.

9. The city will be saved by the citizens themselves.

10. The queen herself knows that we do not fear those dangers.

READING LESSON

Menēnius Agrippa
(A. C. 494; Annō U. C. 260)

Menēnius Agrippa concordiam inter patriciōs plēbemque restituit. Plēbs misera, tribūtīs mīlitiāque exhausta, sēditiōnem fēcit. Magna pars populī urbem relīquit et in montem trāns Aniēnem sēcessit.

Tum senātōrēs ad plēbem Menēnium Agrippam, virum ēloquentissimum, mīsērunt. Hic illīs fābulam dē ventre et membrīs corporis hūmānī nārrāvit.

Membra quondam ventrī dīxērunt, "Nōs tē semper ministeriō nostrō alimus, dum tū turpiter ōtiōsus es. Illud nōn diūtius faciēmus." Dum igitur ventrī cibum subtrahunt, corpus dēbilitātur, membra ipsa quoque dēficiunt, tandem intellegunt ventrem nōn ōtiōsum esse. Sīc patriciī et plēbs, quasi ūnum corpus, discordiā dēficiunt et pereunt, concordiā valent.

Hāc fābulā Menēnius mentēs hominum flēxit: plēbs in urbem rediit. Tum prīmum tribūnī plēbis creātī sunt, et illī

lībertātem populī contrā superbiam nōbilitātis dēfendere coepērunt.

COLLATERAL READING

Patricians and Plebeians

Livy, an old Roman historian, gives a graphic account of the first great clash between the classes (497 B.C.). Probably the story is essentially correct, and certainly it illustrates the methods by which the plebeians made their gains.

Bridge over the Anio.
This road leads to the Sacred Mount.

The plebs, driven to despair by the cruelty of patrician creditors, refused to serve in a war against the Volscians, until the consul won them over by freeing all debtors from prison. But when the army returned victorious, the other consul refused to recognize his colleague's acts: he arrested the debtors again, and enforced the law with merciless cruelty. On a renewal of the war, the betrayed plebs again declined to fight; but finally Manius Valerius (of the

great Valerian house " that loved the people well ") was made dictator, and him they trusted. Victory again followed; but Valerius was unable to get the consent of the Senate to his proposed changes in the law. So the plebeian army, still in battle-array outside the gates, marched away to a hill across the Anio, some three miles from Rome, where, they declared, they were going to build a Rome of their own. The " strike " brought the patricians to some real concessions, and the plebs returned from the " Sacred Mount."

The secession of 497 B.C. gave the plebs the right to choose *tribunes* (see footnote, page 192). . . .

About 460 B.C., the plebeians began to demand written laws. . . . and after a ten-year contest a board of ten men (*Decemvirs*) was elected to put the laws into writing. . . . The new thing about the " Laws of the Twelve Tables " (see page 15) was that they were now known to all, and that *they applied to plebeian and patrician alike.*

LESSON LXI

RELATIVE PRONOUN — INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

120. The Relative Pronoun, which we have met several times in this book, is declined as follows:

Quī, quae, quod, *who, which, that*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.:	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.:	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**quō'rum**	**quā'rum**	**quō'rum**
Dat.:	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**
Acc.:	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.:	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**

121. Agreement of the Relative Pronoun. — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

1. **Iuvā mē, quī amīcus tuus sum.** — *Help me who am your friend.*
2. **Servōs quī pigrī sunt, nōn līberō.** — *I do not free slaves who are lazy.*
3. **Serva quam līberō nōn pigra est.** — *The slave-girl whom I free is not lazy.*

In 1, **quī** is masculine gender, singular number, first person, like its antecedent **mē**, but it is *nominative* case because it is the subject of the verb **sum**.

In 2, **quī** is masculine gender, plural number, third person, like its antecedent **servōs**, but it is *nominative* case because it is the subject of the verb **sunt**.

In 3, **quam** is feminine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent **serva**, but *accusative* case because it is the direct object of the verb **līberō**.

122. The Interrogative Adjective Quī, Quae, Quod, is declined like the relative pronoun.

Quī puer bonus est?	*What boy is good?*
Cui puerō praemium dabō?	*To what boy shall I give a reward?*
In quā īnsulā sumus?	*On what island are we?*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
lit′tera, –**ae**, f.	*letter (of the alphabet)*	literature
lit′terae, –**ārum**, f. pl.	*letter, epistle*	
le′gō, –**e′re**, **lē′gī**, **lēc′tus**	*read, choose*	lecture, election
me′reō, –**ē′re**, –**uī**, –**itus**	*deserve*	merit, demerit
hodiē	*to-day*	hodiernal

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

quī, quibus, quārum, quem, quod, cuius, quās, quō, quae, cui, quā.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Populī quī Galliam incolunt fortissimī sunt.
2. Bellum quod parāmus longum erit.
3. Tē quae amīca cāra mea es, iuvābō.
4. Litterās quās ad mē mīsistī, lēgī.
5. Quod ego fuī, id tū hodiē es.
6. Agricolae quōrum agrī vastābantur miserī erant.

7. Verba quibus permovēbāmur audīvimus.

8. Nūntius ā quō (*or* per quem) victōria nūntiātur vēlōx est.

9. Puella cui praemium datum est id nōn merēbat.

10. Quae rosa pulcherrima est? Quās litterās lēgistī? Quī discipulus praemium meret? Cui discipulō id datur? Quod dōnum accēpit? Quae verba audīvistis? In quā nāve vehuntur?

(*c*) Point out in (*b*) all the relative pronouns and the interrogative adjectives, and explain each case.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Replace the dash by the proper form of the relative pronoun:

1. Vir —— patriam dēfendit cīvis bonus est.
2. Vir —— laudāmus patriam dēfendit.
3. Vir ā —— patria dēfenditur cīvis bonus est.
4. Litterās —— Cicerō ad Caesarem mīsit lēgimus.
5. Litterae —— ā Cicerōne ad Caesarem missae sunt nōn longae erant.
6. Incola —— casa incenditur miser est.
7. Incolae —— casae incendentur miserī erunt.

(*b*) Replace the dash by the proper form of the interrogative adjective:

1. —— puer praemium meret? 2. —— puerī praemia merent? 3. — puella pulcherrima est? 4. —— puellae pulcherrimae sunt? 5. —— librum legis? 6. —— librōs legis? 7. —— litterās legis? 8. —— discipulō librum dedistī? 9. —— discipulīs librōs dedistī?

(*c*) Put in the plural:

1. Librum quem mihi dedistī lēgī. 2. Puella quam vīdī pulchra est. 3. Nauta ā quō servātus sum fortis erat.

4. Amīcus cui pecūniam dēbeō īrātus est. 5. Dux cuius victōria nūntiātur audāx est. 6. Quod templum vīdistī? 7. In quā nāve vehitur?

(*d*) Put in the singular:

1. Servī quōs līberāvimus bonī erant. 2. Oppida quae occupātis antīqua sunt. 3. Nunc sociī quibus frūmentum dedimus, tūtī sunt. 4. Quōs populōs vīcistis?

(*e*) Give the second person, singular and plural, of all the tenses you know, of: 1. **Id merēre.** 2. **Litterās Cicerōnis legere.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

(*a*) He deserves, I am reading, they were reading, we shall not read, you (singular) had deserved, you have read, they will deserve, the letter was read, the rewards are deserved.

(*b*) 1. To-day I shall read the book which she gave me.

2. The boys who received the rewards did not deserve them.

3. The danger in which we are to-day does not frighten us.

4. The grain which we sent saved them.

5. He did not read the letter which you wrote him.

6. The soldiers whose courage was praised had been wounded.

7. The boat on which we shall sail is fast.

8. They will not defend me who have always been their faithful ally.

9. Caesar, to whom the victory of the enemy was announced, was angry.

10. What soldier is brave? What letter shall we read? What gifts have you received? By what messenger was the victory announced? To what consul was it announced?

READING LESSON

Cicerōnis Iocus (Cicero's Joke)

Cicerō, cuius ōrātiōnēs et litterās grātissimē legimus, facētissimus erat. Ōrātor magnus cui mulier dīcēbat sē trīgintā annōs habēre, "Vērum est," inquit, "nam hoc iam vīgintī annōs ante audīvī."

Respōnsum Lacōnicum (A Laconic Answer)

Leōnidās quī Lacedaemoniōrum rēx erat, et cui Xerxēs, Persārum rēx, scrīpserat, "Mitte arma," eī respondit, "Venī et ea cape."

Leōnidae Aliud Respōnsum (Another Answer of Leonidas)

Īdem Leōnidās, cui nūntius dīcēbat, "Hostēs prope nōs sunt," eī respondit, "Et nōs prope illōs sumus."

Ennī Poētae Imāgō (The Wax Mask of the Poet Ennius)

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō Āfricānus, ā quō Hannibal, Poenōrum dux celeberrimus, ad Zamam victus est, Ennī poētae imāginem in sepulcrō gentis Cornēliae collocārī iussit, quod Scīpiōnum gesta carminibus suīs illūstrāverat.

COLLATERAL READING

A Roman Funeral

When a prominent Roman died, the members of the family bewailed him (*conclāmāre*); hence the expression "conclāmātum est," "all is over." The death of a person had to be reported at the temple of Venus Libitīna (the goddess of corpses), where it was recorded.

After the body was washed, perfumed, and dressed in a toga, it lay in state from three to seven days in the hall (*ātrium*). On the day of the funeral, there was a procession,

led by flutists and trumpeters, and two hired female mourners, singing the funeral song (*nēnia*). They were followed by men (clients, freedmen or heirs of the deceased), carrying the litter on which the corpse was. Then came the chief mimic (*archimīmus*), who reproduced the features, the attitude, the way of talking, and even the funny traits of the dead person. If he belonged to the nobility, hired mourners would carry the *imāginēs* (wax masks of the ancestors). Behind them walked the family, the male relatives wearing black clothes (*toga pulla*), the women's garments being disarranged, and their hair dishevelled.

Finally the body was cremated outside the city walls with things and even animals of which the deceased was fond. A few days later the relatives, barefooted, would go and gather the ashes in an urn, which was then placed in the family grave. Near Rome, the highways, and especially the Via Appia, were lined with tombs.

But all the poor, and some rich people were not cremated, but buried, the former in a common ditch, the latter in stone coffins, which were laid in more or less sumptuous graves.

The funeral ended with a banquet, and a sacrifice which was offered to purify the house. — After *Rome et les Romains*, by Bornecque and Mornet.

LESSON LXII

FOURTH DECLENSION

123. Fourth Declension. — Nouns of which the genitive singular ends in **–ūs** belong to the fourth declension.

CORNŪ.

Gender. 1. Nouns of the fourth declension, ending in **–us**, are masculine except a few, such as **manus**, *hand*, **domus**, *house*, which are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in **–ū** are neuter.

	exercitus, m., *army*		**cornū**, n., *horn, wing* (of an army)	
Base:	**exercit–**		Base: **corn–**	
	SINGULAR	*Endings*	SINGULAR	*Endings*
Nom.:	**exer′citus**	**–us**	**cor′nū**	**–ū**
Gen.:	**exer′citūs**	**–ūs**	**cor′nūs**	**–ūs**
Dat.:	**exerci′tuī**	**–uī**	**cor′nū**	**–ū**
Acc.:	**exer′citum**	**–um**	**cor′nū**	**–ū**
Abl.:	**exer′citū**	**–ū**	**cor′nū**	**–ū**
	PLURAL		PLURAL	
Nom.:	**exer′citūs**	**–ūs**	**cor′nua**	**–ua**
Gen.:	**exerci′tuum**	**–uum**	**cor′nuum**	**–uum**
Dat.:	**exerci′tibus**	**–ibus**	**cor′nibus**	**–ibus**
Acc.:	**exer′citūs**	**–ūs**	**cor′nua**	**–ua**
Abl.:	**exerci′tibus**	**–ibus**	**cor′nibus**	**–ibus**

Note. All the masculine and feminine nouns are declined like **exercitus**, and all neuter nouns, like **cornū**.

124. Ablative of Time. — The time at which or within which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Adventū cōnsulis.	*On the arrival of the consul.*
Eō annō.	*In that year.*
Paucīs annīs.	*Within a few years.*

125. Ablative of Cause. — Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.

Inopiā auxilī victī sumus. *We were defeated for lack of help.*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
adven'tus, –ūs, m.	*arrival*	advent
exer'citus, –ūs, m.	*army*	exercise
frūc'tus, –ūs, m.	*fruit, reward*	fructify
por'tus, –ūs, m.	*port, harbor*	
senā'tus, –ūs, m.	*senate*	
do'mus, –ūs, f.	*house*	domestic, domicile
ma'nus, –ūs, f.	*hand, band* (of men)	manual, manufacture
cor'nū, –ūs, n.	*horn, wing* (of an army)	cornet, cornucopia
aes'tās, –ā'tis, f.	*summer*	
auxi'lium, –i'lī, n.	*help*	auxiliary
cer'vus, –ī, m.	*stag*	cervine
hi'ems, –emis, f.	*winter*	
ino'pia, –ae, f.	*lack*	
nox, noc'tis, f.	*night*	nocturnal, nocturne
dex'ter, –tra, –trum	*right* (side)	dexterous, dexterity
sinis'ter, –tra, –trum	*left*	sinister
pel'lō, –ere, pe'pulī, pul'sus	*drive, defeat*	pulse, repel, repulse

Note. **Domus** is of the fourth declension, but it also has the following forms of the second:

domī — genitive
domō — ablative } singular
domōs — accusative plural

CORNUA.

A celebration in which many horns furnished the music.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

pellunt, commovēbāmus, dēfendet, cūstōdiam, pulsus es, commovēmur, dēfenditur, cūstōdiminī, ēreptum erat, pepulērunt, dedistis, timēbunt.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Brevī tempore hostēs exercitum Rōmānum pepulērunt.
2. Adventū Caesaris sign[illegible]roelī in dextrō cornū datur.

3. Sinistrum cornu inopiā auxilī pulsum est.

4. Cervī cornibus sē dēfendunt; dīcō cervōs cornibus sē dēfendere.

5. Hieme et aestāte multitūdō nāvium in portibus Ītaliae erat.

6. Senātus populusque Rōmānus inopiā frūmentī et frūctuum commōtī sunt.

7. Fugā mīlitum sociōrum Rōmānī ab hostibus pulsī sunt.

8. Nocte canis fīdus domum cūstōdit; scīmus canēs fīdōs domōs (*or* domūs) cūstōdīre.

9. Cassius amīcum suum ē manibus praemium ēripere vīdit.

(*c*) Indicate in (*b*) all nouns of the fourth declension, and explain each case.

(*d*) Point out in (*b*) the ablatives of cause and the ablatives of time.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline (1) in the singular: **adventus noster**; (2) in both numbers: **manus parva, frūctus bonus, cornū longum.**

(*b*) Replace (1) the singular by the plural:

1. Puella manum parvam habet. 2. Nāvis in portū est. 3. Domus cōnsulis incēnsa est. 4. Exercitum dūcō.

(2) the plural by the singular:

1. Canēs domōs cūstōdiunt. 2. Prīncipēs exercituum fortēs sunt. 3. Sunt portūs magnī in Ītaliā. 4. Frūctūs bonōs habēmus.

(*c*) Review. Supply the proper endings:

1. In dext— corn— erāmus. 2. Multōs frūct— habētis. 3. Cervus corn— sē dēfendit. 4. Cassius prīnceps in sinist— corn— erat. 5. Cer— corn— ācerrim— habent.

(*d*) Review. Give the second persons singular and plural of all the tenses you know of:

1. **Exercitum hostium pellere.** 2. **Ā dextrō cornū pellī.**

NĀVIS IN PORTŪ EST.

(*e*) Review. Replace the active voice by the passive:

1. Cassius sinistrum cornū dūcit. 2. Exercitus noster hostēs pepulit. 3. Canis domum cūstōdiēbat. 4. Puerī mihi frūctūs dant. 5. Mīlitēs amīcum ē manibus meīs ēripiunt.

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. Stags have pointed horns; we know that stags have pointed horns.

2. Within a few years there were many harbors in Italy; I think that there are many harbors in Italy.

3. The lack of fruit (plural) and of other foods that year alarmed the Roman Senate and people; we hear that the lack of fruit and other foods alarms the Roman Senate.

4. (Because of) the difficult roads our right wing advanced slowly.

5. We defeated the left wing of the enemy in a short time.

6. The enemy fought impetuously but was defeated by the Roman army for lack of help.

7. On your arrival the victory will be announced to the Roman Senate and people.

8. Faithful dogs every night watch their masters' houses, winter and summer.

READING LESSON

I. Horātius Cocles (Horatius the One-eyed) (A. C. 507; Annō U. C. 247)

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rēx Rōmae, expulsus erat. Sociōs suōs convocāvit et Rōmānīs bellum indīxit.

Porsenna, rēx Etrūscōrum, auxilium eī dedit et cum magnō exercitū contrā Rōmānōs prōcessit. Prīmō impetū montem Iāniculum cēpit. Metus magnus Rōmānōs invāsit.

Eō tempore in flūmine Tiberī pōns ligneus, dictus Pōns Sublicius, erat. Hic pōns ab Horātiō Coclite et aliīs mīlitibus cūstōdiēbātur. Horātiō cognōmen Coclitis datum erat, quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmīserat.

Hostēs ad Pontem Sublicium prōcessērunt. Horātius sōlus prō ponte stetit et impetum hostium sustinuit. Exercitūs Tarquinī et Porsennae cōnspectū tantae virtūtis obstupefactī sunt.

Tandem pōns ā tergō ruptus est. Tum Horātius armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et integer ad Rōmānōs trānāvit.

Rōma servāta est. Grāta propter tantam virtūtem cīvitās fuit; itaque Horātiō ager magnus datus est. Statua eius quoque in forō posita est.

Virtūtem huius virī laudāre dēbēmus.

II. T. Mānlius Torquātus

(A. C. 361; Annō U. C. 393)

Eō tempore Gallī trāns Aniēnem flūmen castra posuērunt. Rōmānī in alterā rīpā flūminis cōnstiterant. Pōns in mediō flūmine erat.

Tunc Gallus, eximiā corporis magnitūdine, in vacuum pontem prōcessit et maximā vōce clāmāvit, "Ad pugnam fortissimum mīlitem Rōmānum vocō."

Diū in exercitū Rōmānō silentium fuit. Tunc T. Mānlius ex statiōne ad imperātōrem pergit. "Sī tū permittis," inquit, "cum illā bēluā pugnābō." Imperātor, "Macte virtūte," inquit, "estō; perge et nōmen Rōmānum invictum praestā."

Gallus illum exspectābat. Ubi signum proelī eīs datum est, Mānlius inter scūtum et corpus Gallī sēsē īnsinuāvit atque ūnō ictū ventrem interfōdit. Ipse torquem Gallī dētrāxit, quem cruōre respersum collō suō circumdedit.

Metus cum admīrātiōne Gallōs dēfīxerat; Rōmānī alacrēs, laudantēs mīlitem suum, ad imperātōrem eum perdūxērunt. Mānlius inde cognōmen Torquātī accēpit.

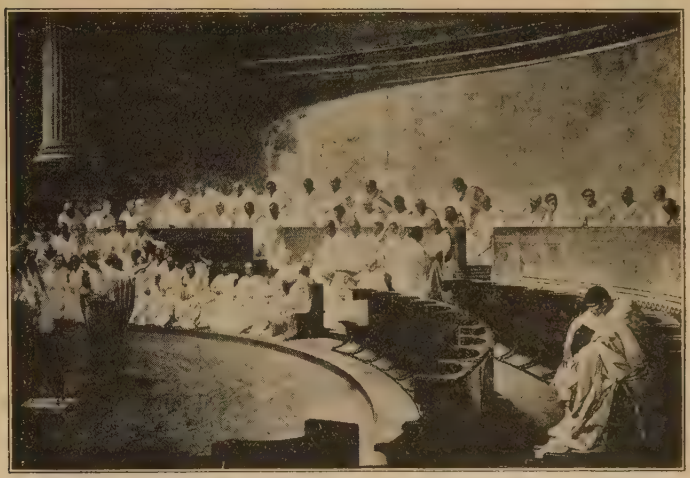
COLLATERAL READING

The Senate

Under the kings, the patrician government had three parts, — king, Senate, and Assembly. . . . The Senate seems to have been originally a council of the chiefs of the 300 clans (or gentes) that made up the three tribes (Latin, Sabine, Etruscan). It could *advise* the king, and it could *veto* any change in old custom. . . .

After the kings were expelled, the Senate gained power. Its relation to a one-year consul was very different from its old relation to a life-king. . . . Its advice became more and more like a command, until it grew to be the real "government."

. . . In 287, after a sharp clash, *the people took from the Senate its power to veto the plebiscites of the Assembly.*



CICERO DENOUNCING CATILINE IN THE SENATE.

Indirectly, too, the people now elected even the Senate. The censors, in filling vacancies in that body, were required first to appoint those who had held curule offices, and commonly it left them little choice.

None the less the Senate was really the guiding force in the government. It contained the wisdom and experience of Rome. . . . No consul would think of bringing a law before the people without the previous approval of the Senate (so that indirectly that body, rather than the Assembly, had become the real legislature). No officer could draw money

from the treasury without the Senate's consent. It declared and managed wars. It received ambassadors and made alliances. And certainly, for over a hundred years, by its sagacity and energy, this " assembly of kings " justified its usurpation, earning Mommsen's epithet, — the foremost political corporation of all time.

LESSON LXIII

FIFTH DECLENSION

126. The Fifth Declension. — Nouns ending in **–ēs**, genitive singular **–ēī**, belong to the fifth declension. They are feminine, except **diēs**, *day*, which is usually masculine in the singular and always in the plural. They are declined on the following models:

	diēs, m. or f., *day*	**rēs**, f., *thing, affair*
Base:	**di–**	**r–**

	Singular		
			Endings
Nom.:	**di′ēs**	**rēs**	**–ēs**
Gen.:	**diē′ī**	**re′ī**	**–ēī**
Dat.:	**diē′ī**	**re′ī**	**–ēī**
Acc.:	**di′em**	**rem**	**–em**
Abl.:	**di′ē**	**rē**	**–ē**
	Plural		
Nom.:	**di′ēs**	**rēs**	**–ēs**
Gen.:	**diē′rum**	**rē′rum**	**–ērum**
Dat.:	**diē′bus**	**rē′bus**	**–ēbus**
Acc.:	**di′ēs**	**rēs**	**–ēs**
Abl.:	**diē′bus**	**rē′bus**	**–ēbus**

Note. Only **diēs**, *day*, and **rēs**, *thing*, are fully declined in both numbers. Most other words are found only in the singular. Note that **rēs** has a short **ĕ** in the genitive and dative singular, because it is preceded by a consonant.

127. Accusative of Duration of Time, and Extent of Space. — Duration of time (answering the question

how long?) and extent of space (answering the question *how far?*) are both expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

Sex annōs labōrāvit. *He worked for six years.*
Vāllum sex pedēs altum erat. *The rampart was six feet high.*

VOCABULARY

Latin Words	English Meanings	Related English Words
a′ciēs, –ē′ī, f.	*line of battle*	
di′ēs, –ē′ī, m. or f.	*day*	diurnal
rēs, re′ī, f.	*thing*	republic
rēs mīlitā′ris	*military matters, warfare*	
rēs no′vae (plur.)	*revolution*	
rēs pū′blica	*republic, state*	
spēs, spe′ī,[1] f.	*hope*	desperate
pēs, pe′dis, m.	*foot*	pedal, impede
prae′da, –ae, f.	*plunder*	predacious, predatory
scien′tia, –ae, f.	*science, knowledge*	
mīlitā′ris, –e	*military*	militant, militarist
pos′terus,[2] –a, –um	*next*	posterior, posterity
quīnquāgintā (indeclinable)	*fifty*	
vīgin′tī (indeclinable)	*twenty*	
exspec′tō, –ā′re, –ā′vī, –ā′tus	*expect, await*	
īn′struō, –u′ere, īnstrū′xī, īnstrūc′tus	*draw up*	instruct, instruction

[1] See § 126, note. [2] Not used in the singular nominative masculine.

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Identify and translate:

īnstrūxērunt, exspectant, faciunt, exspectābimus, īnstrūctī estis, fēcerās, īnstruunt, exspectātus es, īnstruēbam, faciētis.

(*b*) Pronounce carefully and translate:

1. Brevī tempore Caesar aciem īnstrūxit.
2. Posterō diē hostēs castra mōvērunt.
3. Pōns quīnquāgintā pedēs longus erat.
4. Omnem spem salūtis in virtūte, nōn in fugā, pōnēmus.
5. Hieme diēs brevēs, longī aestāte sunt.
6. Rēs pūblica multōs annōs in magnō perīculō fuit.
7. Caesar vīgintī diēs iter fēcit.
8. Scientiam magnam reī mīlitāris habēbat.
9. Spē praedae adductī iter per prōvinciam per vim fēcerant.
10. Exercitus Rōmānus ā Germānīs paucōrum diērum iter aberat.
11. Paucōs annōs Rōmānī sociōs frūmentō et cēterīs rēbus iūvērunt.
12. Rēs novae ab omnibus cīvibus exspectābantur.

(*c*) In (*b*) point out (1) all the nouns of the fifth declension, and explain each case; (2) the accusatives of duration of time and the ablatives of time.

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline (1) in the singular: **omnis spēs, rēs pūblica, brevis diēs, prīma aciēs** (*the front line*);

(2) in the plural: **rēs novae, vīgintī diēs.**

(*b*) Supply (1) the proper singular endings:

1. Aci— īnstrūcta est. 2. Sp— salūtis in fugā posuērunt. 3. Salūs re— pūblicae in manibus cīvium bonōrum

erat. 4. Re— pūblicam in perīculō vidēmus. 5. Scientiam re— mīlitāris nōn habeō.

(2) the proper plural endings:

1. Omnēs rē— (direct object) parāmus. 2. Mult— ann— amīcum pecūniā et cēterīs rē— iūvī. 3. Diē— hieme brevēs sunt. 4. Mīlitēs vīgintī diē— iter fēcērunt.

(*c*) Give the present, perfect, and future of:

1. **Aciem īnstruere.** 2. **Spē praedae addūcī.**

(*d*) 1. Review. Put

(1) in the singular: **In virtūte, nōn in fugā, spem salūtis posuimus.**

(2) in the plural: **Spē praedae nōn adductus sum.**

(3) in the present: **Aciem īnstrūxerat.**

(4) in the perfect: **Reī pūblicae vītam dat.**

(5) in the past: **Rēs novās exspectāvērunt.**

(6) in the future: **Iter quīnquāgintā diēs fēcī.**

III. Written.

Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. Warfare is a science; they say that warfare is a science.

2. The line of battle is drawn up in a short time; it is announced that the line of battle is being drawn up.

3. The hope of a reward often prompts children; I think that the hope of a reward often prompts children.

4. Good soldiers are never prompted by the hope of plunder; we know that good soldiers are never prompted by the hope of plunder.

5. All men know that days are short in winter and long in summer.

6. The cottages were fifty feet long and twenty feet wide.

7. The next day we took up arms.

8. For many years they gave (to) their friends money and all the other things.

9. A revolution is expected within a few days; the safety of the republic is in our hands.

10. We have been many days in the territory of the enemy.

11. We shall make the journey in twenty days.

THE RHINE.

READING LESSON

PROELIUM ĀCRE CUM ARIOVISTŌ, RĒGE GERMĀNŌRUM
(A Desperate Battle with Ariovistus, King of the Germans)

Caesar ā dextrō cornū proelium commīsit. Signum datum est et Rōmānī ācriter in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Tum hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, et, reiectīs pīlīs,[1] comminus gladiīs pugnātum est.[2]

[1] **reiectīs pīlīs**: ablative absolute, see footnote 1, p. 315.

[2] **pugnātum est**: neuter form; literally, *it was fought;* freely, *they fought.*

Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalangem fēcērunt et impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Complūrēs nostrī in phalangem īnsiluērunt, et scūta manibus revellērunt et dēsuper Germānōs vulnerāvērunt.

Hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta est, sed ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine mīlitum Germānī nostram aciem premēbant. P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātum nostrum dūcēbat, perīculum animadvertit et tertiam aciem nostrīs subsidiō [1] mīsit.

Ita proelium restitūtum est atque hostēs terga vertērunt, neque fugere dēstitērunt priusquam ad flūmen Rhēnum circiter quīndecim mīlia [2] passuum ex eō locō pervēnērunt.

Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt, aut lintribus salūtem repperērunt. Ariovistus nāviculā profūgit; equitēs nostrī reliquōs omnēs interfēcērunt. Duae uxōrēs Ariovistī in eā fugā periērunt. — After Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, I, 52, 53.

COLLATERAL READING

Roman Daily Life

In the early period, Romans had hardly any other occupation than farming and war. The daily life we are going to describe is supposed to take place towards the end of the Republic or the beginning of the Empire.

At daybreak, at 4 o'clock in summer, at 6 in winter, the clients [3] would fill the hall (*ātrium*) to pay their respects to the patron, to talk business with him, to ask his advice, and at a later period, to receive the *sportula* (a little basket containing food or money). As soon as his clients had left him,

---

[1] Both **nostrīs** and **subsidiō** are in the dative; **nostrīs** is the indirect object, and **subsidiō** is the dative of purpose or end, *for help*.

[2] **mīlia**: extent of space is expressed by the accusative. See § 127.

[3] A client was one "who put himself under the protection of a man of distinction and influence, who was called his patron."

the master of the house had his breakfast, composed of bread dipped in wine, bread and honey, olives, dates, or cheese. Then he went out, followed or not by his clients, to pay visits of all kinds to important people, relatives, etc., to attend to his work, to listen to some public recitation, or to see a gladiatorial show or a wild beast fight in the amphitheater, which lasted the whole day.

CLIENTS LOITERING ABOUT THE STREETS.

If the clients had nothing to do, they loitered in the forum, on the via Sacra, in the basilicas,[1] under the porticoes which surrounded the *Campus Mārtius* (a public promenade lined with superb buildings), or in the public gardens and on the Appian Way where they might admire fine teams, and showy carriages and litters. People of the lower class filled the inns.

The streets of Rome were crowded till noon, which was

[1] A basilica was a public building used for a merchants' exchange and for the courts.

luncheon time, as with us. The luncheon consisted of fish, vegetables, and fruit, and was followed by the siesta. Then came the hour for bathing. Common people went to the public baths, which were very numerous; rich people had their own bathrooms.

The Romans of the earlier period had dinner at noon; it consisted then of vegetables and the national dish, the *puls* (porridge), which for a very long time supplied the place of bread. Later, on account of business pressure, the dinner took place at two or three instead of at twelve.

On entering the dining room (*triclinium*), the guests took off their sandals and their togas, and stretched out on couches, with the left elbow resting on a cushion. Dining rooms were very small, for the ancients rarely feasted more than nine persons at a time. Around the table were three couches on which were laid soft cushions. Table cloths were not used before the second century of the Christian era, but each guest had a napkin. There were neither forks nor knives; the guests had to use their fingers.

The meal, which lasted very long, consisted of side dishes (*gustātiō*), various courses (*cēna prīma, secunda, tertia*, etc.) and a dessert of cakes and fruit (*mēnsae secundae*). Before the dessert there was offered the sacrifice of a cake mixed with salt to the Lares (or Penates, the household gods). Toward the close of the dinner, the guests drank wine diluted with water. — After *Rome et les Romains*, by Bornecque and Mornet.

LESSON LXIV

REVIEW

EXERCISES

I. Oral.

(*a*) Review the declensions of **is, ea, id**, § 69; **hic, haec, hoc**, § 116; **ille, illa, illud**, § 118; **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, § 119.

(*b*) Review the declensions of **exercitus** and **cornū**, § 123; and of **diēs**, § 126.

(*c*) Translate into English the following words:

1. *Nouns*

A. First Declension

inopia	**littera**	**praeda**	**scientia**

B. Second Declension

auxilium	**cervus**

C. Third Declension

aestās	**nāvis**	**pēs**	**salūs**
hiems	**nox**	**pōns**	**dux**

D. Fourth Declension

adventus	**domus**	**frūctus**	**portus**
cornū	**exercitus**	**manus**	**senātus**

E. Fifth Declension

aciēs	**diēs**	**rēs**	**spēs**

F. Idioms

rēs mīlitāris	**rēs novae**	**rēs pūblica**

2. *Adjectives*

A. First and Second Declensions

dexter	**medius**	**posterus**	**sinister**

B. Third Declension

mīlitāris	**trīstis**	**turpis**

3. *Adjectives and Pronouns*

hic, haec, hoc	**ille, illa, illud**	**ipse, ipsa, ipsum**
quīnquāgintā	**quī, quae, quod**	**vīgintī**

4. *Verbs*

A. First Conjugation

exspectāre

B. Second Conjugation

merēre	**prohibēre**

C. Third Conjugation

addūcere	**īnstruere**	**vehere**
incolere	**pellere**	**legere**

5. *Other Parts of Speech*

aut . . . aut . . .	**hodiē**	**quod**

(*d*) Divide all the words in (*c*) into syllables, pointing out which one must be accented, and tell why.

(*e*) Point out in (*c*) 1: (1) the masculine nouns; (2) the feminine nouns; (3) the neuter nouns.

(*f*) Give (1) the base of all the nouns in (*c*) 1; (2) their genitives, singular and plural.

(*g*) Give (1) the base of all the adjectives in (*c*) 2; (2) their feminine and neuter forms, nominative singular; (3) their genitives, singular and plural; (4) the comparatives and superlatives, nominative singular, masculine, feminine, and neuter, of **trīstis** and **turpis**.

(*h*) Answer the following questions and illustrate:

1. How can you tell whether a noun ending in **-us** belongs to the second or the fourth declension?
2. What is the ending of the nominative singular of neuter nouns of the fourth declension?
3. What endings of the fourth declension are like (*a*) those of the second; (*b*) those of the third?
4. What are the peculiarities of the noun **domus**?
5. What are the endings of the nominative and genitive singular of nouns of the fifth declension?
6. What is the gender of the nouns of the fifth declension?
7. What endings of the fifth declension are like those of the third? (Compare with **cōnsul** and **urbs**, § 105.)
8. Make a direct statement in English.
9. Change it into indirect discourse.
10. Make a direct quotation in English.
11. Change it into indirect discourse.
12. In what mood do you put a Latin verb in the indirect discourse if it comes after such verbs as *say, think, know, perceive?*
13. In what case do you put the subject of such a verb?
14. By what cases do you express (*a*) time at which or within which; (*b*) cause; (*c*) duration of time; (*d*) extent of space?

II. Oral and Written.

(*a*) Decline (1) in the singular: **senātus ipse; aciēs ipsa;**

(2) in both numbers: **hic frūctus**; **illa manus**; **illud cornū**;

(3) in the plural: **cīvēs ipsī**; **hae rēs novae.**

(*b*) Change the indirect discourse into direct statements by dropping the first verb and putting the second in the proper mood:

1. Putō praedam magnam esse. 2. Dīcunt senātum populumque Rōmānum pācem petere. 3. Scīmus cornua cervōrum ācerrima esse. 4. Audīmus ā duce aciem īnstruī et signum proelī darī.

(*c*) Translate into Latin, marking all long vowels:

1. *Nouns*

army	help	night	senate
arrival	hope	plunder	ship
bridge	horn	port	stag
day	house	republic	summer
foot	knowledge	revolution	thing
fruit	lack	safety	wing (army)
hand	line of battle	leader	winter
harbor	military matters	letter	warfare

2. *Adjectives and Pronouns*

fifty	right	shameful	this one
left	sad	twenty	that
military	–self	this	that one
next	who	which	what

3. *Verbs*

to carry	to drive	to keep off	to prompt
to defeat	to expect	to live in	to sail
to draw up	to inhabit	to prevent	to read

4. *Other Parts of Speech*

either . . . or . . . because to-day

(*d*) Derivation. (1) From what Latin words are the following English words derived?

domestic, instruct, manual, pedal, repulse, colony, prohibition, pontiff, navigation, vehicle, diurnal, nocturnal.

(2) Make a list of English derivatives of **īnstruere**, according to Type I (see p. 178); of **pellere**, according to Type II; and of **vehere**, according to Type III.

LESSON LXV

READING LESSON

I. Cn. Mārtius Coriolānus
(A. C. 491; Annō U. C. 263)

Cn. Mārtius Coriolānus iuvenis gentis patriciae erat. Iniūstē damnātus, ad Volscōs concessit eōsque adversus Rōmānōs concitāvit. Imperātor ā Volscīs factus, ad quārtum ab urbe lapidem castra posuit et agrum Rōmānum vāstāvit. Rōma in maximō perīculō erat.

Lēgātī ad Coriolānum missī sunt sed in castra nōn receptī sunt. Sacerdōtēs supplicēs ad illum iērunt, sed animum illīus nōn flexērunt. Stupēbat senātus; trepidābat populus; metus maximus erat; mulierēs ac virī pariter mortem imminentem exspectābant.

Tum Veturia, Coriolānī māter, et Volumnia uxor cum duōbus parvīs fīliīs castra illīus petīvērunt. Ubi mātrem adspexit, Coriolānus, "Tū, māter," inquit, "īram meam vīcistī; tuīs precibus patriae iniūriam condōnō."

Ille castra mōvit et exercitum ex agrō Rōmānō abdūxit. Coriolānus posteā ā Volscīs, ut prōditor, occīsus est.

Parentēs amāre et colere dēbēmus.

II. L. Quīnctius Cincinnātus
(A. C. 458; Annō U. C. 296)

Aequī[1] cōnsulem Minucium atque exercitum eius circumsessōs tenēbant. Hoc ubi Rōmānīs nūntiātum est, metus maximus fuit. Senātus dictātōrem creāre voluit. L. Quīnc-

[1] **Aequī**: the *Aequi*, a warlike people of Latium.

tium Cincinnātum omnium cōnsēnsū dictātor creātus est. Ille, spēs ūnica reī pūblicae Rōmānae, trāns Tiberim agrum parvum colēbat.

Quīnctius igitur Rōmam[1] vēnit et togā purpureā indūtus est. Posterō diē hostēs vīcit et exercitum Rōmānum līberāvit. In urbem triumphāns rediit.

Sextō decimō diē, dictātūrā quam in sex mēnsēs accēperat sē abdicāvit et ad bovēs agricola quī rem pūblicam servāverat, rediit. Quam magnum exemplum probitātis et modestiae!

III. Virginia
(A. C. 449; Annō U. C. 305)

Annō trecentēsimō ab urbe conditā, decemvirī creāti sunt. Ūnus ex eīs, Appius Claudius, pessimus et prāvissimus fuit. Quondam Virginiam, virginem plēbēiam pulcherrimam, vīdit et eam in numerō servārum habēre voluit.

Pater huius puellae, L. Virginius, quī centuriō erat, cōram populō ab laniō cultrum arripuit et pectus Virginiae trānsfīxit, exclāmāns, "Accipe, mea cārissima fīlia, lībertātem tuam et mortem." Tum Appiō cultrum cruentum ostendit et dīxit, "Iūrō per hunc sanguinem innocentem, Appī; iniūriam fīliae cārissimae meae vindicābō."

Exercitus ā patre Virginiae concitātus montem Aventīnum occupāvit; decem tribūnōs mīlitum creāvit; decemvirōs omnēs aut morte aut exsiliō pūnīvit; ipse Appius Claudius in carcere occīsus est.

IV. M. Atīlius Rēgulus
(A. C. 267; Annō A. C. 487)

M. Atīlius Rēgulus ūnus ex ducibus celeberrimīs et cīvibus probissimīs Rōmae fuit.

---

[1] The preposition **ad** is omitted before names of towns. (See footnote 1, page 324.)

Ille, in proeliō ā Poenīs captus, in carcerem coniectus est. Quattuor post annōs, Poenī cum Rōmānīs captīvōs permūtāre et pācem facere voluērunt. Rēgulum Rōmam [1] lēgātum mīsērunt. Ille Carthāginem [1] redīre dēbēbat.

Rēgulus Rōmānīs bellum suāsit et negāvit esse ūtile captīvōs permūtārī. Carthāginem rediit ubi crūdelissimīs suppliciīs necātus est.

Fidem servāre semper dēbēmus.

V. Common Words, Phrases, and Proverbs [2]

A

Latin	English
Ab ūnō disce omnēs	*From one learn (understand) all*
Ad hoc	*To this effect* or *purpose*
Ad valōrem	*According to value*
Age quod agis	*Get at your work*
Ālea iacta est	*The die is cast* (See p. 234.)
Alma māter	*Foster mother* (name given by graduates to their college or university)
Alter ego	*Another self, bosom friend*
Ante merīdiem (abbreviated **A.M.**)	*Before noon*
Aurea mediocritās	*The golden mean*, that is, neither extreme
Aut Caesar aut nūllus	(*To be*) *either Caesar or nobody*

B

Bis dat quī citō dat	*He gives twice who gives quickly*
Bonā fidē	*In good faith*

[1] See footnote, p. 407.

[2] This list is composed of adjectives of the first and second declensions, and of the third; of personal pronouns; of demonstrative adjectives and pronouns; of adverbs; of nouns of the five declensions, and verbs of the four conjugations.

C

Latin	English
Carpe diem	*Make use of the day, seize the opportunity*
Cāsus bellī	*A cause for war*
Contrā bonōs mōrēs	*Contrary to good customs*
Corpus dēlictī	*The essential part of the offense*
Cum grānō salis	*With a grain of salt*

D

Dē iūre	*By right of law*
Dē propriō mōtū	*Of one's own motion, spontaneously*
Diem perdidī	*"I have lost a day"* (Emperor Titus' exclamation because he had failed to perform a good deed during the day)
Diēs īrae	*The day of wrath* (the first words of a well-known hymn)
Dīvide et imperā	*Divide and rule* (the motto of Louis XI, king of France)
Dominus vōbīscum	(*May*) *the Lord be with you*
Dūra lēx, sed lēx	*Harsh law, but* (*it is*) *the law*
Dum spīrō, spērō	*While I breathe, I hope* (part of the motto of South Carolina)

E

Ecce homō!	*Behold the man!* (especially applied to paintings of Jesus Christ, wearing a crown of thorns)
Ē plūribus ūnum	*Out of many, one* (the motto of the United States)

LATIN	ENGLISH
Et tū, Brūte	*And you, too, Brutus* (See p. 234.)
Ex tempore	*Without preparation, offhand*
	F
Fidēs Pūnica	*Punic faith, treachery*
	H
Hōc tempore	*At this time*
Hodiē mihi, crās tibi	*To-day my turn, to-morrow yours* (in old epitaphs)
	I
In articulō mortis	*At the point of death*
In hōc signō vincēs	*By this sign* (*i.e.*, the cross) *thou shalt conquer* (the motto of the Emperor Constantine)
In mediās rēs	*Into the midst of things*
In pāce	*In peace*
In rē	*In the matter of, concerning*
In statū quō	*In the condition at the time*
In tōtō	*Entirely, completely*
Inter alia	*Among other things*
Inter nōs	*Between ourselves*
Ipsō factō	*By the fact itself*
Iūre et factō	*By right and in fact*
Iūs dīvīnum	*Divine law*

Latin	English
	L
Lapsus calamī	*A slip of the pen*
Lapsus linguae	*A slip of the tongue*
Lapsus memoriae	*A slip of the memory*
Lūx et lēx	*Light and law* (the motto of the University of North Dakota)
Lūx et vēritās	*Light and truth* (the motto of Yale University)
	M
Magnum opus	*The chief work of an author*
Malā fidē	*In bad faith, treacherously*
Mēns sāna in corpore sānō	*A sound mind in a sound body*
	N
Nūlla diēs sine līneā	*Not a day without a line,* that is, without something done
	O
Ōrā prō nōbīs	*Pray for us*
Ō tempora! ō mōres!	*O the times! O the customs!*
Ōtium cum dignitāte	*Ease with dignity*
	P
Parī passū	*At equal pace, evenly*
Pater noster	*Our Father* (the Lord's prayer)
Pāx vōbīscum	*Peace (be) with you*
Per capita	*For each person, apiece*
Per diem	*By the day*
Per sē	*By itself, intrinsically*
Plēnō iūre	*With full power*
Post merīdiem (abbreviated **P.M.**)	*After noon*
Post mortem	*After death*
Prīmā faciē	*On the first view*
Prō tempore	*For the time being, temporarily*

Q

Latin	English
Quī bene amat bene castīgat	*He who loves well, chastises well*
Quid prō quō	*One thing for another, an equivalent*
Quot hominēs, tot sententiae or **Quot capita, tot sēnsūs**	*As many opinions as men, every man in his own humor*

R

Repetītiō est māter studiōrum	*Repetition is the mother of learning*

S

Salūs populī suprēma est lēx	*The welfare of the people is the supreme law* (the motto of the State of Missouri)
Salvē !	*Hail!*
Sīc vōs nōn vōbīs	*Thus you (labor) not for yourselves* (See page 291.)
Sīc trānsit glōria mundī	*So passes away the glory of the world*
Sine diē	*Indefinitely*
Sine quā nōn	*Something indispensable*
Sub iūdice	*Under consideration*
Suī generis	*Of its own kind, unique*
Suum cuique	*To each his own*

T

Tē Deum laudāmus	*We praise thee, O God* (the first words of a well-known Latin hymn)

U

Ūnā vōce	*With one voice, unanimously*

V

Latin	English
Vāde mēcum	*Go with me*, a name for an indispensable aid, especially a book
Valē	*Farewell*
Vīvā vōce	*By word of mouth, orally*
Vīve valēque	*Live and be well, farewell*
Vōx populī, vōx Deī	*The voice of the people is the voice of God*

EXERCISE

(*a*) One of the pupils reads the preceding Latin phrases, and his classmates, having previously closed their books, translate them.

(*b*) Another reads the English expressions, and the others render them into Latin.

ADDITIONAL READING LESSONS[1]

HISTORIA RŌMĀNA

Antīquissimī Ītaliae Rēgēs (The Earliest Kings of Italy)

Antīquissimīs temporibus Sāturnus, deus agricultūrae, in Ītaliam vēnit. Ibi in monte Iāniculō arcem condidit, eamque Sāturniam appellāvit. Hic Ītalōs prīmus agricultūram docuit.[2]

Posteā Latīnus in illīs regiōnibus rēgnāvit. Eō tempore Trōia, nōtissima Asiae urbs, ā Graecīs dēlēta est. Hinc Aenēās, Anchīsae fīlius, cum multīs Trōiānīs aufūgit et in Ītaliam pervēnit. Latīnus rēx eī fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit quam in honōrem uxōris Lāvīnium vocāvit.

Rēgēs Albae Longae (The Kings of Alba Longa)

Post Aenēae mortem, Ascanius, eius fīlius, rēgnum accēpit. Hic sēdem rēgnī in alium locum trānstulit, urbem in monte Albānō condidit, eamque Albam Longam appellāvit.

Ūnus ex eius posterīs, Silvius Procās, rēx Albānōrum, duōs fīliōs, Numitōrem et Amūlium, relīquit. Numitor paterna bona, Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

Rōmulus et Remus

Amūlius frātris fīlium in īnsidiās indūxit et interfēcit. Rheam Silviam, Numitōris fīliam mātremque Rōmulī et

[1] These Reading Lessons can be translated easily by students who have gone through Lesson L.

[2] **docēre** takes two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

Remī, in vincula coniēcit, puerōsque in Tiberim flūmen abicī[1] iussit.

Forte Tiberis sē effudērat, et aqua refluēns puerōs in siccō relīquit. Lupa eōs invēnit et aluit. Posteā Faustulus pāstor puerōs in lupae spēluncā repperit et uxōrī dedit.

Rōma Condita est (Rome is Founded, 753 B.C.)[2]

Sīc Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Adulēscentēs Amūlium interfēcērunt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem parvam in monte Palātīnō condidērunt, quam Rōmulus ā suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvit. Dum, frātrem irrīdēns, moenia novae urbis trānsilit,[3] Remus ā Rōmulō occīsus est.

Virginēs Sabīnae Raptae sunt (The Sabine Girls are Carried Off)

Rōmulus cīvium numerum augēre voluit. Multitūdinem vīcīnōrum in novam urbem recēpit; centum (100)[4] ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs propter senectūtem nōminā vit, et populum in trīgintā (30) cūriās distribuit.

Sed Rōmulus ipse et cīvēs novae urbis uxōrēs nōn habēbant. Itaque fēstum Neptūnī et lūdōs īnstituit et vīcīnōs populōs ad spectāculum lūdōrum invītāvit. Multī ex fīnitimīs populīs cum mulieribus et līberīs Rōmam[5] vēnērunt. Dum ḷī lūdōs spectant, Rōmānī virginēs eōrum rapuērunt.

Populī illī quōrum virginēs raptae erant Rōmānīs bellum indīxērunt, sed Rōmulus eōs multīs pugnīs vīcit. Annō rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō (37th), inter magnam tempestātem, Rōmulus repente oculīs hominum subductus est.

---

[1] See § 117.

[2] In titles Latin perfect is better replaced by English present.

[3] See footnote, page 212.

[4] Figures in parentheses are translation of preceding Latin numbers.

[5] See footnote, page 407.

Numa Pompilius, Secundus Rēx Rōmānōrum (Numa Pompilius, the Second King of the Romans, 715 B.C.)

Posteā, Numa Pompilius, ūnus ex Sabīnīs, rēx creātus est. Hic nūllum bellum gessit, sed nōn minus quam Rōmulus urbī prōfuit. Nam Rōmānīs lēgēs dedit mōrēsque cōnstituit. Illī proeliōrum cōnsuētūdine iam latrōnēs et sēmibarbarī putābantur. Annum in decem mēnsēs dīvīsit, et multa templa aedificāvit. Sē omnia quae faciēbat cōnsiliō nymphae Ēgeriae, uxōris suae, facere[1] dīcēbat.

Tullus Hostīlius Tertius Rēx Rōmānōrum (Tullus Hostilius, the Third King of the Romans, 672 B.C.)

Post Numae mortem, Tullus Hostīlius imperium suscēpit. Hic Albānīs bellum indīxit et Albam Longam dēlēvit. Vēientēs quoque superāvit. Montem Caelium urbī adiēcit. Trīgintā duōs (32) annōs rēgnāvit. Fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

Ancus Mārtius, Quārtus Rēx Rōmānōrum (Ancus Martius, the Fourth King of the Romans, 640 B.C.)

Post Tullum Hostīlium Ancus Mārtius, Numae Pompilī nepōs, rēx creātus est. Contrā Latīnōs pugnāvit. Carcerem prīmus aedificāvit. Aventīnum Iāniculumque montēs urbī adiēcit, et mūrō lapideō eam circumdedit. Ad Tiberis flūminis ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vīcēsimō quārtō (24th) imperī annō, morbō obiit.

Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus, Quīntus Rēx Rōmānōrum (Lucius Tarquin, the Elder, the Fifth King of the Romans, 616 B.C.)

Deinde Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus, quī nōmen ā Tarquiniīs, antīquissimā Etrūriae urbe, accēpit, fīliīs Ancī rēgnum ēri-

[1] See § 117.

puit. Numerum senātōrum duplicāvit, Circum aedificāvit, lūdōsque Rōmānōs īnstituit. Mūrōs et cloācās fēcit et templum Iovis in Capitōliō inchoāvit.

Plūra bella fēlīciter gessit et multōs agrōs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus triumphāns in urbem rediit. Trīcēsimō octāvō (38th) imperī annō ab Ancī fīliīs, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, occīsus est.

Servius Tullius, Sextus Rēx Rōmānōrum (Servius Tullius, the Sixth King of the Romans, 578 B.C.)

Post hunc, Servius Tullius imperium suscēpit. Montēs trēs, Quirīnālem, Vīmināle m, Ēsquilīnum, urbī adiūnxit, et fossās circum mūrum dūxit. Prīmus cēnsum omnium incolārum īnstituit, quī adhūc incognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma, cum hīs quī in agrīs erant, octōgintā quattuor mīlia (84,000) cīvium habuit.

Rēx Tulliae, fīliae suae, et Tarquinī Superbī, generī suī, scelere occīsus est. Tullia in forum properāvit et prīma marītum rēgem salūtāvit. Corpus rēgis in viā iacēbat. Tullia, domum[1] rediēns, aurīgam super patris corpus carpentum agere[2] iussit.

Tarquinius Superbus, Septimus et Ultimus Rēx Rōmānōrum (Tarquin the Proud, the Seventh and Last King of the Romans, 553 B.C.)

Tarquinius cognōmen Superbī mōribus meruit. Multōs fīnitimōs populōs superāvit. Templum Iovis in Capitōliō exaedificāvit. Posteā, dum Ardeam, urbem Latīnōrum, oppugnat, imperium perdidit. Nam fīlius eius, Tarquinius Iūnior, Lucrētiam, Collātīnī uxōrem, iniūriā affēcit, quae sē cultrō occīdit. Marītus, pater, amīcī populum concitāvērunt et Tarquiniō imperium ēripuērunt.

Mox mīlitēs quoque, quī Ardeam cum ipsō rēge obsidē-

[1] See footnote 1, page 324. [2] See § 117.

bant, eum relīquērunt. Tarquinius, ad urbem rediēns, exclūsus est et cum uxōre et līberīs suīs fūgit.

Tarquiniō expulsō,[1] duo cōnsulēs, Lūcius Iūnius Brūtus, ācerrimus vindex lībertātis, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, Lucrētiae marītus, creātī sunt.[2]

The following pages are the continuation of the History of Rome, after the victory of Manlius Torquatus (see page 390).

Mārcus Valerius Corvīnus

Annō urbis conditae[3] quadringentēsimō sextō (406th), novum bellum cum Gallīs commōtum est. Iterum Gallus, rōbore et armīs īnsignis, prōcessit et ad pugnam ūnum ex Rōmānīs vocāvit. Mārcus Valerius, tribūnus mīlitum, sē obtulit. Tum corvus in galeā eius cōnsēdit. Signum proelī datum est. Dum pugnant, corvus ālīs et unguibus oculōs Gallī verberāvit. Ita Gallus interfectus est ā tribūnō Valeriō, quī hinc Corvīnī cognōmen accēpit.

Pugna apud Furculās Caudīnās (The Battle of the Caudine Forks, 321 B.C.)

Annō quadringentēsimō trīcēsimō secundō (432nd) post urbem conditam,[3] Titus Veturius et Spurius Postumius cōnsulēs contrā Samnītēs bellum gerēbant. Hī ā Pontiō Telesīnō, duce hostium, in īnsidiās inductī sunt. Nam Samnītēs apud Furculās Caudīnās in angustiās Rōmānōs pellexērunt, ingentī dēdecore vīcērunt, sub iugum[4] mīsērunt.

---

[1] See footnote 1, page 315.

[2] Other stories about legendary or historical Roman personages are to be found in the Reading Lessons XLVI to LXIV.

[3] See footnote, page 314.

[4] **Sub iugum**, under the yoke, an instrument made of two spears placed erect, and a third laid transversely upon them. To pass under the yoke was a sign of abject defeat.

Post bellum ūndēquīnquāgintā (49) annōrum, Samnītēs superātī sunt ā Lūciō Papīriō cōnsule, quī septem mīlia (7,000) eōrum sub iugum mīsit.

Eō tempore Appius Claudius cēnsor Aquam Claudiam indūxit et Viam Appiam strāvit.[1]

Pyrrhus, Ēpīrī Rēx (Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, 281 B.C.)

Tarentīnī lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcerant. Hī illīs bellum indīxērunt. Tarentīnī auxilium ā Pyrrhō, Ēpīrī rēge, petiērunt. Is mox in Ītaliam vēnit; tum prīmum Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste pugnāvērunt.

Pūblius Valerius Laevīnus cōnsul contrā eum missus est. Pyrrhus auxiliō elephantōrum Rōmānōs vīcit. Nox proeliō fīnem dedit. Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mīlle octingentōs (1800) cēpit, eōsque summō honōre tractāvit. Eōs quī in proeliō interfectī erant omnēs adversīs vulneribus et ferōcī vultū etiam mortuōs iacēre vīdit et dīxit, "Dux audāx cum tālibus virīs brevī orbem terrārum subigere potest."

Posteā Pyrrhus ad Rōmam[2] perrēxit; omnia ferrō et ignī vāstāvit. Mox perterritus exercitus Rōmānus in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī, ad Pyrrhum missī, pācem petiērunt. Is lēgātōs honōrificē accēpit et captīvōs Rōmānōs sine pretiō reddidit, sed partem Ītaliae quam armīs occupāverat retinēre volēbat. Rōmānī eam condiciōnem accipere nōluērunt. Ūnus ex lēgātīs Fabricius erat. Rēx eum ad sē transīre[3] volēbat; itaque eī quārtam partem rēgnī suī prōmīsit, sed ā Fabriciō contemptus est.

---

[1] See footnote, page 314.

[2] **Ad Rōmam,** *towards Rome.* Pyrrhus got only within 24 miles of the city, but if he had reached Rome, **Rōmam** would be used without a preposition (see footnote, page 407).

[3] See § 117.

In alterō proeliō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est, elephantī interfectī, vīgintī mīlia (20,000) hostium occīsa sunt. Pyrrhus Tarentum [1] fūgit. Tum Fabricius contrā eum missus est. Ad hunc medicus Pyrrhī nocte vēnit quī rēgem venēnō occīdere volēbat. Hunc Fabricius vīnctum redūcī iussit ad dominum. Tunc rēx dīxit, "Difficilius est Fabricium ab honestāte quam sōlem ā cursū suō āvertere." Paulō post, Pyrrhus, tertiō proeliō victus, ex Ītaliā recessit et in Graeciam rediit, ubi interfectus est.

Prīmum Bellum Pūnicum (The First Punic War, 264–241 B.C.)

Annō quadringentēsimō nōnāgēsimō (490th) post urbem conditam, exercitūs Rōmānōrūm in Siciliam trānsiērunt, Hierōnem, Syrācūsārum rēgem, et Poenōs quī multās urbēs in eā īnsulā occupāverant, superāvērunt.

Quīntō annō huius bellī quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, prīmum Rōmānī in marī pugnāvērunt. Gāius Duīlius cōnsul Carthāginiēnsēs vīcit, trīgintā (30) nāvēs occupāvit, quattuordecim (14) mersit, septem mīlia (7000) hostium cēpit, tria mīlia (3,000) occīdit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit.

Paulō post, bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Hamilcar, Carthāginiēnsium dux, pugnā nāvālī superātus est, nam sexāgintā quattuor (64) nāvēs perdidit; Rōmānī vīgintī duās (22) āmīsērunt. Exercitūs Rōmānī in Āfricam vēnērunt et Poenōs in plūribus proeliīs vīcērunt. Magnum numerum hominum cēpērunt et septuāgintā quattuor (74) urbēs in fidem accēpērunt.

Tum victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. Mārcus Atīlius Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, dūrissimās condiciōnēs dedit. Poenī eās reiēcērunt et auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petiērunt. Hī Xanthippum mīsērunt, quī

[1] **Tarentum:** See note 2, page 420.

Rōmānōs magnō proeliō vīcit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula coniectus est.

Fīnis Prīmī Bellī Pūnicī (End of the First Punic War)

Tandem, annō bellī Pūnicī vīcēsimō tertiō (23rd), magnum proelium nāvāle commissum est prope Lilybaeum, prōmunturium Siciliae. In eō proeliō, septuāgintā trēs (73) Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae, centum vīgintī quīnque (125) mersae, trīgintā duo mīlia (32,000) hostium capta, tredecim mīlia (13,000) occīsa sunt. Statim Carthāginiēnsēs pācem petiērunt eīsque pāx data est. Captīvī Rōmānī quī ā Carthāginiēnsibus tenēbantur redditī sunt. Poenī Siciliā, Sardiniā, cēterīs īnsulīs quae inter Ītaliam et Āfricam iacent dēcessērunt, omnemque Hispāniam quae citrā Ibērum est Rōmānīs dēdidērunt.

Secundum Bellum Pūnicum (The Second Punic War, 218–202 B.C.)

Paulō post, Pūnicum bellum renovātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem. Hamilcar, pater Hannibalis, eum, novem (9) annōs nātum, ārīs admōverat, ubi puer odium aeternum in Rōmānōs iūrāverat. Hic, iuvenis vīgintī (20) annōrum, Saguntum, Hispāniae urbem, populī Rōmānī socium, oppugnāvit. Saguntīnī fame victī sunt et Rōmānī Carthāginiēnsibus bellum indīxērunt.

Hannibal in Ītaliā (Hannibal in Italy)

Hannibal Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et Alpēs trānsiit. In Ītaliam, octōgintā mīlia (80,000) peditum, decem mīlia (10,000) equitum, septem et trīgintā (37) elephantōs abdūxit. Intereā, multī Ligurēs et Gallī cum Hannibale sē coniūnxērunt. Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō, Rōmānōrum dux, ab Hannibale ad Tīcīnum flūmen superātus est. Tum Semprōnius Grac-

chus quoque ad Trebiam flūmen victus est. Multī populī Hannibalī sē dēdidērunt. Paulō post, is Flāminium cōnsulem ad Trasumennum lacum superāvit. Ipse Flāminius interfectus est atque Rōmānōrum vīgintī quīnque mīlia (25,000) occīsa sunt.

Pugna Cannēnsis (Battle of Cannae, 216 B.C.)

Lūcius Aemilius Paulus et Pūblius Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mittuntur. Rōmānī enim intellēxerant Hannibalem nōn aliter vincī[1] posse quam morā; Varrō tamen, apud vīcum quī Cannae appellātur, in Āpūliā pugnam commīsit. Duo cōnsulēs victī sunt atque Paulus interfectus est. In eā pugnā cōnsulārēs aut praetōriī vīgintī (20), senātōrēs trīgintā (30) captī sunt aut occīsī; mīlitum quadrāgintā mīlia (40,000), equitum tria mīlia quīngentī (3,500) periērunt. In hīs tantīs calamitātibus nēmō tamen pācis mentiōnem fēcit!

Post eam pugnam multae Ītaliae urbēs cum Hannibale sē coniūnxērunt. Hannibal cum Rōmānīs captīvōs permūtāre voluit, sed senātus respondit, "Eī cīvēs quī armātī capī possunt ūtilēs nōn sunt." Eōs omnēs ille posteā variīs suppliciīs interfēcit et trēs modiōs aureōrum ānulōrum[2] Carthāginem mīsit, quōs manibus equitum Rōmānōrum et senātōrum dētrāxerat.

Intereā in Hispāniā frāter Hannibalis, Hasdrubal, quī ibi cum magnō exercitū remānserat, ā duōbus Scīpiōnibus vincitur et in pugnā trīgintā quīnque mīlia (35,000) hominum perdit.

Mārcellus et Laevīnus in Siciliā (Marcellus and Laevinus in Sicily)

In Siciliā rēs prōsperē gesta est. Mārcellus magnam huius īnsulae partem cēpit quam Poenī occupāverant. Syrā-

[1] See § 117.

[2] Golden rings were worn only by knights and senators.

cūsās, nōbilissimam urbem, expugnāvit et ingentem praedam inde Rōmam mīsit.

Laevīnus in Macedoniā cum Philippō rēge et multīs Graeciae populīs amīcitiam fēcit. Is in Siciliam trānsiit et Hannōnem, Poenōrum prīncipem, apud Agrigentum cēpit; quadrāgintā (40) urbēs in dēditiōnem accēpit; vīgintī sex (26) expugnāvit. Ita omnem Siciliam subēgit et cum ingentī gloriā Rōmam rediit.

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō in Hispāniā (Publius Cornelius Scipio in Spain)

Intereā in Hispāniam, ubi duō Scīpiōnēs ab Hasdrubale interfectī erant, missus est Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō, vir Rōmānōrum omnium ferē prīmus. Hic, puer duodēvīgintī (18) annōrum, in pugnā ad Tīcīnum flūmen, patrem singulārī virtūte servāverat.

Scīpiō, vīgintī quattuor (24) annōs nātus, in Hispāniam missus est et diē quō vēnit Carthāginem Novam cēpit, in quā tōtum aurum et argentum et bellī apparātum Poenī habēbant. Nōbilissimōs quoque quōs obsidēs ab Hispānīs accēperant ibi tenēbant. Hōs obsidēs parentibus Scīpiō reddidit. Itaque omnēs ferē Hispāniae urbēs ad eum ūnō animō trānsiērunt.

Hasdrubal Occīsus est (Hasdrubal is Slain)

Eō tempore, Hasdrubal, ā frātre ex Hispāniā in Ītaliam ēvocātus, apud Sēnam, Pīcēnī urbem, in īnsidiās incidit et strēnuē pugnāns occīsus est. Plūrimae autem urbēs quae in Bruttiīs ab Hannibale tenēbantur Rōmānīs sē trādidērunt.

Ītalia Līberāta est (Italy is Freed)

Annō quārtō decimō (14th) postquam Hannibal in Ītaliam vēnerat, Scīpiō cōnsul creātus et in Āfricam missus est. Ibi contrā Hannōnem, Carthāginiēnsium prīncipem, prōsperē

pugnat tōtumque eius exercitum dēlet. Secundō proeliō ūndecim mīlia (11,000) hominum occīdit et castra cēpit cum quattuor mīlibus quīngentīs (4500) mīlitibus. Syphācem, Numidiae rēgem, quī cum Poenīs sē coniūnxerat, cēpit, eumque cum nōbilissimīs Numidīs et magnīs spoliīs Rōmam mīsit. Tōta ferē Ītalia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēnsibus in Āfricam redīre iubētur. Ita Ītalia līberāta est.

Pugna ad Zamam (Battle at Zama, 202 B.C.)

Post plūres pugnās, pāx plūs quam semel frūstrā temptāta est. Tandem proelium commissum est in quō duo perītissimī ducēs cōpiās suās ad bellum ēdūcēbant. Scīpiō victor recēdit; Hannibal cum paucīs equitibus ēvādit.

Post hoc proelium, pāx Carthāginiēnsibus data est. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit, Āfricānus appellātus est. Sīc fīnem accēpit secundum Pūnicum bellum.

Tertium Bellum Pūnicum (The Third Punic War, 149–146 B.C.)

Fīnītīs bellīs [1] contrā Macedoniam et Syriam, susceptum est bellum adversus Carthāginem. Lūcius Mārcius Cēnsōrīnus et Mānius Mānlius cōnsulēs in Āfricam trānsiērunt et Carthāginem oppugnāvērunt. Multa ibi glōriōsē gesta sunt per Scīpiōnem, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtem, quī tribūnus in Āfricā mīlitābat. Huius ingēns metus et reverentia apud omnēs erat et ducēs Carthāginiēnsium contrā eum dīmicāre nōn audēbant.

Carthāgō Dēleta est (Carthage is Blotted Out)

Tertiō annō postquam Rōmānī in Āfricam trānsierant, Scīpiō cōnsul creātus est et contrā Carthāginem missus est.

[1] See footnote 1, page 315.

Eam urbem, ā cīvibus ācerrimē dēfēnsam, cēpit et dēlēvit. Ibi ingēns praeda capta est, plūrimaque inventa sunt quae multārum urbium excidiīs Carthāgiēnsēs collēgerant. Haec omnia Scīpiō urbibus Ītaliae, Siciliae, Āfricae reddidit, quae sua recognōscēbant. Ita Carthāgō septingentēsimō (700th) annō postquam condita erat, dēlēta est. Scīpiō nōmen Āfricānī Iūniōris accēpit.

Aemilius Paulus in Macedoniā (Aemilius Paulus in Macedonia)

Post pugnam ad Zamam, susceptum est bellum adversus Philippum, Macedoniae rēgem. Superātus est rēx ā Titō Quīntiō Flāminīnō apud Cynoscephalās, pāxque eī data est. Captīvōs Rōmānōs reddidit, omnēs suās nāvēs praeter quīnquāgintā (50) Rōmānīs dedit, mīlle talenta praestitit, obsidem fīlium Dēmētrium dedit. Titus Quīntius etiam cum Lacedaemoniīs bellum gessit et ducem eōrum Nabidem vīcit.

Post mortem Philippī, rēgis Macedoniae, fīlius eius Perseus ingentēs cōpiās parāvit et rebellāvit. Dux Rōmānōrum, Pūblius Licinius cōnsul, contrā eum missus, gravī proeliō ā rēge victus est. Rēx tamen pācem petēbat, sed Rōmānī eam praetāre nōluērunt.

Mox Aemilius Paulus cōnsul rēgem ad Pydnam, Macedoniae urbem, superāvit et vīgintī mīlia (20,000) peditum eius occīdit. Equitātus cum rēge fūgit. Urbēs Macedoniae omnēs quās rēx tenuerat Rōmānīs sē dēdidērunt. Ipse Perseus ab amīcīs dēsertus in Paulī potestātem vēnit. Hic cum ingentī pompā Rōmam rediit in nāve Perseī, inūsitātae magnitūdinis, nam sēdecim (16) rēmōrum ōrdinēs habēbat. Triumphāvit magnificentissimē in currū aureō, duōbus fīliīs utrōque latere adstantibus.[1] Ante currum inter captīvōs duo rēgis fīliī et ipse Perseus ductī sunt.

[1] See footnote 1, page 315.

Trēs Celeberrimī Triumphī (Three Very Famous Triumphs)

Interim in Macedoniā Andriscus, quī Pseudophilippus quoque appellātur, arma mōvit et Pūblium Iuventium, Rōmānōrum ducem, vīcit. Post eum, Quīntus Caecilius Metellus dux ā Rōmānīs contrā Pseudophilippum missus, vīgintī quīnque mīlia (25,000) mīlitum eius occīdit, Macedoniam recēpit, ipsum Pseudophilippum in potestātem suam redēgit.

Corinthiī lēgātīs Rōmānīs iniūriam fēcerant. Corinthum, nōbilissimam Graeciae urbem, Mummius cōnsul cēpit et dēlēvit.

Trēs igitur simul celeberrimī triumphī fuērunt: triumphus Scīpiōnis ex Āfricā, ante cuius currum ductus est Hasdrubal[1]; triumphus Metellī ex Macedoniā, cuius currum praecessit Andriscus; triumphus Mummī ex Corinthō, ante quem statuae aēneae et pictae pictūrae et alia urbis nōtissimae ōrnāmenta praelāta sunt.

In Lūsitāniā (In Portugal)

Annō sescentēsimō decimō (610th) post urbem conditam, Viriāthus in Lūsitāniā bellum contrā Rōmānōs excitāvit. Pāstor prīmō fuit, mox latrōnum dux; postrēmō, multās gentēs ad bellum concitāvit et vindex lībertātis Hispāniae exīstimābātur. Sed ā mīlitibus suīs interfectus est. Interfectōrēs eius praemium ā Caepiōne cōnsule petiērunt, sed eīs respondit, "Numquam Rōmānīs placet imperātōrem ā mīlitibus suīs interficī."[2]

Numantia Dēlēta est (Numantia is Destroyed)

Deinde bellum cum Numantīā, urbe opulentissimā Hispāniae, susceptum est. Victus est ā Numantīnīs Quīntus

[1] Hasdrubal: this general was Hannibal's brother-in-law, the founder of New Carthage in Spain.

[2] See § 117.

Pompēius, et post eum Gāius Hostīlius Mancīnus cōnsul, quī cum eīs īnfāmem pācem fēcit. Senātus populusque hanc pācem īnfringī atque ipsum Mancīnum hostibus trādī iussit.[1] Tum Pūblius Scīpiō Āfricānus in Hispāniam missus est. Is prīmō ducem ignāvum corrēxit; tum multās Hispāniae urbēs bellō cēpit aut in dēditiōnem accēpit. Postrēmō ipsam Numantiam fame ad dēditiōnem coēgit et dēlēvit; reliquam Hispāniam in fidem accēpit.

Hannibalis Mors (Death of Hannibal)

Fīnītō bellō Macedonicō,[2] susceptum est bellum contrā Antiochum, Syriae rēgem, Hannibalis socium. Missus est adversus eum Lūcius Cornēlius Scīpiō cōnsul, cui frāter eius Scīpiō Āfricānus lēgātus additus est.

Hannibal nāvālī proeliō victus est et Antiochus ad Magnēsiam, Asiae urbem, ā Cornēliō Scīpiōne ingentī proeliō superātus est. Tum rēx Antiochus pācem petiit. Pāx eī data est. Intrā Taurum recessit atque Rōmānīs decem mīlia (10,000) talentōrum et vīgintī obsidēs praebuit. Hannibal, quī in Bīthȳniam fūgerat, venēnum bibit et apud Libyssam sepultus est. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit et ingentī glōriā triumphāvit. Nōmen Asiāticī, ad imitātiōnem frātris, accēpit.

Gāius Marius in Numidiā

Pūbliō Scīpiōne Nāsicā et Lūciō Calpurniō Bēstiā cōnsulibus,[3] Iugurthae, Numidārum rēgī, bellum indictum est. Iugurtha Micipsae fīliōs, patruēlēs suōs, necāverat. Missus

[1] Note that the verb is in the singular although it has two subjects. This is possible because **Senātus populusque** usually expresses one thought, "the government."

[2] See footnote 1, page 315.

[3] This is an ablative absolute construction (see footnote 1, page 315). Translate: "In the year when Publius Scipio Nasica and Lucius Calpurnius Bestia were consuls."

adversus eum cōnsul Calpurnius Bēstia, corruptus rēgis pecūniā, cum eō turpissimam pācem fēcit, quae ā senātū improbāta est. Quīntus Caecilius Metellus cōnsul Iugurtham variīs proeliīs vīcit, elephantōs eius occīdit vel cēpit, multās urbēs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Tum in Numidiam missus est Gāius Marius, quī bellō fīnem impōsuit, ipsumque Iugurtham cēpit. Ante currum Marī triumphantis Iugurtha cum duōbus fīliīs ductus est vīnctus, et mox iussū cōnsulis in carcere strangulātus est.

Marius Teutobochum Cēpit (Marius Captures Teutobochus)

Dum bellum contrā Iugurtham, rēgem Numidiae, gerebatur, Cimbrī, Teutonī, aliaeque Germānōrum et Gallōrum gentēs Ītaliam terrēbant. Ingēns metus in urbe fuit. Ergō Marius cōnsul creātus est eīque bellum adversus Cimbrōs et Teutonōs commissum est. Duōbus proeliīs cum Cimbrīs ducenta mīlia (200,000) hostium cecīdit, octōgintā mīlia (80,000) cēpit, eōrumque rēgem Teutobochum. Sed Cimbrī et Teutonī quōrum numerus adhūc magnus erat in Ītaliam trānsiērunt. Iterum Gāius Marius et Quīntus Catulus contrā eōs dīmicāvērunt ad Vērōnam. Centum quadrāgintā mīlia (140,000) aut in pugnā aut in fugā caesa sunt, sexāgintā mīlia (60,000) capta.

Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla

Sescentēsimō quīnquāgēsimō nōnō (659th) annō ab urbe conditā, gravissimum bellum in Ītaliā ērūpit. Nam Pīcentēs, Mārsī, Pēlignī, quī multōs annōs sociī populī Rōmānī fuerant, iūs cīvitātis sibi darī volēbant. Quattuor annōs hoc perniciōsum bellum tractātum est. Tandem Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla Cluentium, hostium prīncipem, fūdit, et eī bellō fīnem imposuit. Rōmānī tamen iūs cīvitātis sociīs tribuērunt.

Prīmum Bellum Cīvile (The First Civil War, 88 B.C.)

Annō urbis conditae sescentēsimō sexāgēsimō sextō (666th), prīmum bellum cīvīle ērūpit; eōdem annō etiam bellum Mithridāticum. Causam bellī cīvīlis Gāius Marius dedit. Sullae bellum contrā Mithridātem, rēgem Pontī, commissum erat, sed Marius eī hunc honōrem ēripere voluit. Sulla, cuius legiōnēs adhūc in Ītaliā erant, cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit et adversāriōs aut interfēcit aut fugāvit. Tum in Asiam trānsiit et Mithridātem superāvit.

Dum Sulla in Graeciā et Asiā cum Mithridāte pugnat, Marius, quī fugātus erat, et Cornēlius Cinna, ūnus ex cōnsulibus, Rōmam rediērunt et nōbilissimōs senātōres et cōnsulārēs virōs interfēcērunt. Domō Sullae dēlētā,[1] fīliōs et uxōrem eius ad fugam compulērunt. Reliquus senātus ex urbe fugiēns ad Sullam in Graeciam vēnit et ab eō auxilium petiit.

Sulla in Ītaliam rediit, hostium exercitūs vīcit, Rōmam sanguine cīvium replēvit. Duodecim mīlia (12,000) inermium, quī sē dēdiderant, interficī iussit atque duo mīlia (2,000) equitum et senātōrum prōscrīpsit.

Duo haec bella fūnestissima ultrā centum quīnquāgintā mīlia (150,000) hominum, virōs cōnsulārēs vīgintī quattuor (24), praetōriōs septem (7), aedīlīciōs sexāgintā (60), senātōrēs ducentōs (200) ferē cōnsūmpsērunt.

Bellum Gladiātōrum. — Spartacus (The War of the Gladiators, 73 B.C. — Spartacus)

Annō urbis sescentēsimō octōgēsimō prīmō (681st), novum bellum in Ītaliā commōtum est. Septuāgintā enim quattuor (74) gladiātōrēs, ductī ā Spartacō, Crixō, Oenomaō, ē lūdō gladiātōriō Capuae fūgērunt et, Ītaliam peragrantēs,

[1] See footnote 1, page 315.

paene nōn levius bellum quam Hannibal mōvērunt. Nam exercitum sexāgintā ferē mīlium (60,000) armātōrum contrāxērunt, multōsque ducēs et duōs Rōmānōs cōnsulēs vīcērunt. Ipsī superātī sunt in Āpūliā ā Mārcō Liciniō Crassō prōcōnsule, et, post multās calamitātēs, tertiō annō huic bellō fīnis impositus est.

Bellum Mithridāticum (War against Mithridates)

Annō urbis conditae sescentēsimō septuagēsimō sextō (676th), Lūciō Liciniō Lūcullō et Mārcō Aurēliō Cottā cōnsulibus,[1] Nīcomēdēs, rēx Bīthȳniae, obiit et testāmentō populum Rōmānum hērēdem fēcit.

Mithridātēs, quī Pontī rēx erat, Bīthȳniam invādere voluit. Duo cōnsulēs, adversus eum missī, variam fortūnam habuērunt.

Cotta apud Chalcēdōnem, Bīthȳniae urbem, victus est. Sed, dum Mithridātēs Cyzicum oppugnat, Lūcullus, alter cōnsul, eum ā tergō obsēdit et multīs pugnīs superāvit. Rēx Pontī Byzantium urbem, quae nunc Constantīnopolis est, fūgit.

Lūcullus nāvālī quoque proeliō ducēs eius oppressit. Ita ūnā hieme et aestāte ā Lūcullō centum ferē mīlia (100,000) mīlitum rēgis exstīncta sunt.

Posteā īdem Lūcullus rēgnum Mithridātis invāsit, ipsumque rēgem apud Cabīra urbem, ubi magnās cōpiās ex omnī rēgnō addūxerat Mithridātēs, ingentī proeliō vīcit et castra eius dīripuit.

Armenia quoque Minor quam tenēbat, eī ērepta est. Susceptus est Mithridātēs ā Tigrāne, Armeniae Maiōris rēge, quī tum ingentī gloriā imperābat; sed huius quoque rēgnum Lūcullus invāsit et Tigrānocerta, nōbilissimam Armeniae urbem, cēpit. Ipsum rēgem superāvit et rōbur mīlitum Armeniae dēlēvit.

---

[1] See footnote 3, page 428.

Lūcullus fīnem eī bellō impōnere parābat, sed eō tempore Gnaeus Pompēius in Armeniam missus est.

Pompēī Gesta Glōriōsa (The Glorious Deeds of Pompey)

Eō tempore pīrātae omnia maria īnfestābant; ita Rōmānīs, tōtō orbe terrārum victōribus, sōla nāvigātiō nōn tūta erat. Bellum contrā pīrātās Gnaeō Pompēiō dēcrētum est, quod intrā paucōs mēnsēs ingentī fēlīcitāte et celeritāte cōnfēcit. Tum eī dēcrētum est bellum contrā Mithridātem, Pontī rēgem, et Tigrānem, Armeniae Maiōris rēgem. Mithridātem in Armeniā Minōre nocturnō proeliō vīcit et castra eius dīripuit. Mithridātēs cum uxōre et duōbus comitibus fūgit et, paulō post, venēnum bibit. Hunc fīnem habuit Mithridātēs, vir ingentis industriae atque cōnsilī. Rēgnāvit annōs sexāgintā (60), vīxit septuāgintā duōs (72), contrā Rōmānōs quadrāgintā (40) annōs bellum gessit.

Deinde Pompēius cum Tigrāne, rēge Armeniae, pugnāvit. Hic eī sē dēdidit; in castra Pompēī vēnit et diadēma suum in eius manibus collocāvit quod eī Pompēius reposuit. Tum Pompēius aliōs etiam rēgēs et gentēs superāvit. Armeniam Minōrem Dēiotarō Galatiae rēgī, dedit quia Rōmānōs contrā Mithridātem iūverat. Inde in Iūdaeam pervēnit. Hierosolymam, caput Iūdaeae, occupāvit, duodecim mīlia (12,000) Iūdaeōrum occīdit, cēterōs in fidem recēpit. Hīs gestīs fīnem antīquissimō bellō imposuit.

Ante currum Pompēī triumphantis ductī sunt fīliī Mithridātis, fīlius Tigrānis, et Aristobūlus, rēx Iūdaeōrum. Hōc tempore nūllum per orbem terrārum grave bellum erat.

Catilīnae Coniūrātiō (Catiline's Conspiracy, 63 B.C.)

Mārcō Tulliō Cicerōne ōrātōre et Gāiō Antōniō cōnsulibus, annō ab urbe conditā sescentēsimō nōnāgēsimō prīmō (691st), Lūcius Sergius Catilīna, vir nōbilissimī generis sed ingenī prāvissimī, in patriam coniūrāvit cum paucīs audācibus

hominibus. Ā Cicerōne expulsus est, sociī eius dēprehēnsī in carcere strangulātī sunt. Ab Antōniō, alterō cōnsule, Catilīna ipse proeliō victus est et interfectus.

Caesar Cōnsul, 59 B.C.

Gāius Iūlius Caesar cum Lūciō Bibulō cōnsul creātus est, eīque Gallia cum decem (10) legiōnibus dēcrēta est. Caesar prīmō Helvētiōs vīcit; tum semper victor usque ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit. Domuit annīs novem (9) omnem ferē Galliam quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum, Ōceanum est. Britannīs mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nōmen Rōmānōrum nōn cognitum erat. Cum Germānīs quoque trāns Rhēnum bellum gessit, eōsque ingentibus proeliīs vīcit.

Secundum Bellum Cīvīle (The Second Civil War, 49 B.C.)

Bellum cīvīle successit quō fortūna populī Rōmānī mūtāta est. Caesar enim victor, ē Galliā rediēns, alterum cōnsulātum popōscit, sed ā Mārcellō cōnsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne contrādictum[1] est, et Caesar exercitum dīmittere et in urbem redīre iussus est. Propter hanc iniūriam, ab Arīminō ubi erat, cum legiōnibus suīs Rōmam contendit. Cōnsulēs cum Pompēiō, senātus, atque omnēs nōbilēs ex urbe fūgērunt et in Graeciam trānsiērunt. Dum senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parat, hic in urbem vēnit et dictātōrem sē fēcit.

Tum Hispāniās petiit ibique Pompēī legiōnēs superāvit; deinde in Graeciā adversus Pompēium ipsum dīmicāvit. Prīmō proeliō Caesar victus est, sed per noctem ēvāsit. Postrēmō in Thessaliā apud Pharsālum cum ingentibus cōpiīs pugnam commīsērunt. Pompēius fūsus est, et castra

[1] **Contrādictum est:** impersonal construction. Translate: "It was opposed," or "opposition was made."

eius dīrepta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandrīam vēnit et ā Ptolemaeō, rēge Aegyptī, auxilium petiit. Hic eum occīdit et caput eius et ānulum Caesarī mīsit. Vidēns caput tantī virī, Caesar lacrimās fūdit.

Caesar in Cūriā Interfectus est (Caesar is Murdered in the Senate-house, 44 B.C.)

Mox Caesar Alexandrīam petiit eīque Ptolemaeus īnsidiās parāvit. Rēx victus in Nīlō periit et corpus eius cum lōrīcā aureā inventum est. Caesar Alexandrīam cēpit et rēgnum Aegyptī Cleopatrae, Ptolemaeī sorōrī, dedit.

Tum Caesar Pharnacem, Mithridātis Magnī fīlium, quī Pompēium in Thessaliā iūverat, vīcit. Paulō post, fīliōs Pompēī apud Myndum, urbem Cariae, superāvit.

Inde Caesar Rōmam rediit ubi īnsolenter et tyrannicē agere coepit. Multī senātōrēs et equitēs in eum coniūrāvērunt. Prīncipēs fuērunt inter coniūrātōs duo Brūtī ex genere eius Brūtī quī rēgēs expulerat et prīmus Rōmae cōnsul fuerat. Ergō Caesar, in cūriam veniēns, tribus et vīgintī (23) vulneribus cōnfossus est.

Tertium Bellum Cīvīle (The Third Civil War, 43 B.C.)

Postquam Caesar interfectus est, bellum cīvīle reparātum est. Mārcus Antōnius cōnsul, propter multa scelera, ā senātū hostis iūdicātus est. Missī sunt adversus eum duō cōnsulēs, Pānsa et Hīrtius, et Octāviānus, Caesaris nepōs, quī posteā Augustus appellātus est.

Hī trēs ducēs Antōnium vīcērunt. Hic fūgit ad Lepidum, quī magnās cōpiās habēbat. Mox Octāviānus cum Antōniō pācem fēcit. Iūnctus cum Antōniō et Lepidō, rem pūblicam armīs tenēre coepit senātumque prōscrīpsit. Per eōs triumvirōs Cicerō, celeberrimus ōrātor Rōmānus, occīsus est multīque aliī nōbilēs.

Pugna apud Philippōs (Battle at Philippi, 42 B.C.)

Intereā Brūtus et Cassius, interfectōrēs Caesaris, ingēns bellum mōverant. Caesar Octāviānus et Mārcus Antōnius apud Philippōs, Macedoniae urbem, contrā eōs pugnāvērunt. Prīmō proeliō victī sunt Antōnius et Caesar; periit tamen Cassius, dux nōbilitātis. Secundō proeliō Antōnius et Caesar Brūtum et multōs nōbilēs vīcērunt et interfēcērunt.

Tum victōrēs rem pūblicam inter sē ita dīvīsērunt: Octāviānus Caesar Hispāniās, Galliās, Ītaliam tenuit; Antōnius Orientem, Lepidus Āfricam accēpit.

Pugna apud Actium (Battle at Actium, 31 B.C.)

Paulō post, Antōnius sorōrem Caesaris Octāviānī repudiāvit et Cleopatram, rēgīnam Aegyptī, in mātrimōnium dūxit. Incitātus ā Cleopatrā, quae cupiditāte muliebrī in Ītaliā rēgnāre volēbat, Antōnius ingēns bellum mōvit.

Victus est ab Octāviānō nāvālī pugnā nōtā et illūstrī apud Actium, quī locus in Ēpīrō est. Hinc fūgit in Aegyptum ubi sē ipse interēmit. Cleopatra aspidis venēnō exstīncta est. Aegyptus per Octāviānum Augustum imperiō Rōmānō addita est.

Ita Octāviānus Augustus, Rōmam rediēns, imperium per quadrāgintā et quattuor (44) annōs sōlus obtinuit. Septuāgēsimō sextō (76th) annō obiit et in Campō Mārtiō sepultus est.

APPENDIX

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

Via, f., *road*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.:	via	viae
Gen.:	viae	viārum
Dat.:	viae	viīs
Acc.:	viam	viās
Abl.:	viā	viīs

SECOND DECLENSION

	servus, m., *slave*	**puer**, m., *boy*	**ager**, m., *field*	**vir**, m., *man*	**dōnum**, n., *gift*
			Singular		
Nom.:	servus	puer	ager	vir	dōnum
Gen.:	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	dōnī
Dat.:	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	dōnō
Acc.:	servum	puerum	agrum	virum	dōnum
Abl.:	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	dōnō
			Plural		
Nom.:	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	dōna
Gen.:	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	dōnōrum
Dat.:	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	dōnīs
Acc.:	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	dōna
Abl.:	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	dōnīs

THIRD DECLENSION

Consonant Stems

	cōnsul, m., *consul*	**cīvitās**, *f.*, *state*	**homō**, m., *man*	**flūmen**, n., *river*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.:	cōnsul	cīvitās	homō	flūmen
Gen.:	cōnsulis	cīvitātis	hominis	flūminis
Dat.:	cōnsulī	cīvitātī	hominī	flūminī
Acc.:	cōnsulem	cīvitātem	hominem	flūmen
Abl.:	cōnsule	cīvitāte	homine	flūmine
		PLURAL		
Nom.:	cōnsulēs	cīvitātēs	hominēs	flūmina
Gen.:	cōnsulum	cīvitātum	hominum	flūminum
Dat.:	cōnsulibus	cīvitātibus	hominibus	flūminibus
Acc.:	cōnsulēs	cīvitātes	hominēs	flūmina
Abl.:	cōnsulibus	cīvitātibus	hominibus	flūminibus

-i stems

	cīvis, m., *citizen*	**urbs**, f., *city*	**vīs**, f., *force*	**mare**, n., *sea*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.:	cīvis	urbs	vīs	mare
Gen.:	cīvis	urbis	vīs	maris
Dat.:	cīvī	urbī	vī	marī
Acc.:	cīvem	urbem	vim	mare
Abl.:	cīve	urbe	vī	marī
		PLURAL		
Nom.:	cīvēs	urbēs	vīrēs	maria
Gen.:	cīvium	urbium	vīrium	marium
Dat.:	cīvibus	urbibus	vīribus	maribus
Acc.:	cīvēs	urbēs	vīrēs	maria
Abl.:	cīvibus	urbibus	vīribus	maribus

FOURTH DECLENSION

	exercitus, m., *army*		**cornū**, n., *horn*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.:	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.:	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.:	exercitui	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.:	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.:	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

FIFTH DECLENSION

	diēs, m., *day*		**rēs**, f., *thing*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.:	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.:	diēī	diērum	rei	rērum
Dat.:	diēī	diēbus	rei	rēbus
Acc.:	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.:	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES[1]

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus, bona, bonum, *good*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.:	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.:	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.:	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.:	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

[1] The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod,** *what?* is declined like the relative pronoun (page 442).

THIRD DECLENSION

Three Endings

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.:	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.:	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.:	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Two Endings

fortis, forte, *brave*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.:	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.:	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.:	fortem	forte	fortēs	fortia
Abl.:	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

One Ending

fēlīx, *happy*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
Nom.:	fēlīx	fēlīx	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia
Gen.:	fēlīcis	fēlīcis	fēlīcium	fēlīcium
Dat.:	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus
Acc.:	fēlīcem	fēlīx	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia
Abl.:	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus

COMPARATIVE

altior, altius, *higher*

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
Nom.:	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.:	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.:	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.:	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.:	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
	Ego, *I*	**Tū**, *you (thou)*	**Is**, *he;* **ea**, *she;* **id**, *it*

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	
Nom.:	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	For declension, see next page
Gen.:	meī	nostrī / nostrum	tuī	vestrī / vestrum	
Dat.:	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	
Acc.:	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	
Abl.:	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	

REFLEXIVE

First Person	Third Person
meī, *of myself*	**suī**, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Second Person		Singular	Plural
tuī, *of yourself*	Nom.:	none	none
These are declined like the personal pronouns of the same persons, except that they have no nominative.	Gen.:	suī	suī
	Dat.:	sibi	sibi
	Acc.:	sē	sē
	Abl.:	sē	sē

DEMONSTRATIVE

hic, haec, hoc, *this*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.:	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.:	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.:	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.:	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.:	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud, *that*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.:	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.:	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.:	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.:	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.:	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self*

is declined like ille, except that the neuter singular nominative and accusative end in **-um**, not in **-ud**.

is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.:	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
Gen.:	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.:	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
Acc.:	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.:	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

RELATIVE

quī, quae, quod, *who, which, that*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.:	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.:	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.:	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.:	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.:	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE

quis, quid, *who? what?*

	Singular		Plural		
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.:	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.:	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.:	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.:	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.:	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

VERBS

FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts:	laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus
The three stems:		laudā–	laudāv–	laudāt–

INDICATIVE

Present

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
I praise, I am praising, etc.		*I am praised,* etc.	
laudō	laudāmus	laudor	laudāmur
laudās	laudātis	laudāris	laudāminī
laudat	laudant	laudātur	laudantur

Past

I praised, I was praising, etc.		*I was praised,* etc.	
laudābam	laudābāmus	laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābās	laudābātis	laudābāris	laudābāminī
laudābat	laudābant	laudābātur	laudābantur

Future

I shall praise, etc.		*I shall be praised,* etc.	
laudābō	laudābimus	laudābor	laudābimur
laudābis	laudābitis	laudāberis	laudābiminī
laudābit	laudābunt	laudābitur	laudābuntur

Perfect

I have praised, I praised, etc.		*I have been (was) praised,* etc.	
laudāvī	laudāvimus	laudātus, –a, –um { sum, es, est	laudātī, –ae, –a { sumus, estis, sunt
laudāvistī	laudāvistis		
laudāvit	laudāvērunt		

Past Perfect

I had praised, etc.		*I had been praised,* etc.	
laudāveram	laudāverāmus	laudātus, –a, –um { eram, erās, erat	laudātī, –ae, –a { erāmus, erātis, erant
laudāverās	laudāverātis		
laudāverat	laudāverant		

IMPERATIVE

Present

	Praise thou, etc.		*be thou praised*, etc.	
2d	**laudā**	**laudāte**	**laudāre**	**laudāminī**

INFINITIVE

Present

laudāre, *to praise* — **laudārī**, *to be praised*

PARTICIPLE

Past

laudātus, -a, -um, *having been praised*

SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts:	**moneō**	**monēre**	**monuī**	**monitus**
The three stems:		**monē-**	**monu-**	**monit-**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	

INDICATIVE

Present

I warn, I am warning, etc.		*I am warned*, etc.	
moneō	**monēmus**	**moneor**	**monēmur**
monēs	**monētis**	**monēris**	**monēminī**
monet	**monent**	**monētur**	**monentur**

Past

I warned, I was warning, etc.		*I was warned*, etc.	
monēbam	**monēbāmus**	**monēbar**	**monēbāmur**
monēbās	**monēbātis**	**monēbāris**	**monēbāminī**
monēbat	**monēbant**	**monēbātur**	**monēbantur**

Future

I shall warn, etc.		*I shall be warned*, etc.	
monēbō	**monēbimus**	**monēbor**	**monēbimur**
monēbis	**monēbitis**	**monēberis**	**monēbiminī**
monēbit	**monēbunt**	**monēbitur**	**monēbuntur**

Perfect

I have warned, I warned, etc.		*I have been (was) warned*, etc.			
monuī	**monuimus**	**monitus, –a, –um**	**sum**	**monitī, –ae, –a**	**sumus**
monuistī	**monuistis**		**es**		**estis**
monuit	**monuērunt**		**est**		**sunt**

Past Perfect

I had warned, etc.		*I had been warned*, etc.			
monueram	**monuerāmus**	**monitus, –a, –um**	**eram**	**monitī, –ae, –a**	**erāmus**
monuerās	**monuerātis**		**erās**		**erātis**
monuerat	**monuerant**		**erat**		**erant**

IMPERATIVE

Present

	warn thou, etc.		*be thou warned*, etc.	
2d	**monē**	**monēte**	**monēre**	**monēminī**

INFINITIVE

Present

monēre, *to warn* **monērī**, *to be warned*

PARTICIPLE

Past

monitus, –a, –um, *having been warned*

THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **dūcō** **dūcere** **dūxī,** **ductus**
The three stems: **dūce-** **dūx–** **duct–**

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	

INDICATIVE

Present

I lead, I am leading, etc.		*I am led*, etc.	
dūcō	**dūcimus**	**dūcor**	**dūcimur**
dūcis	**dūcitis**	**dūceris**	**dūciminī**
dūcit	**dūcunt**	**dūcitur**	**dūcuntur**

Past

I led, I am leading, etc.		*I was led*, etc.	
dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbār	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbat	dūcēbant	dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

Future

I shall lead, etc.		*I shall be led*, etc.	
dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris	dūcēminī
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur

Perfect

I have led, I led, etc.		*I have been (was) led*, etc.	
dūxī	dūximus	ductus, -a, -um + sum	ductī, -ae, -a + sumus
dūxistī	dūxistis	ductus, -a, -um + es	ductī, -ae, -a + estis
dūxit	dūxērunt	ductus, -a, -um + est	ductī, -ae, -a + sunt

Past Perfect

I had led, etc.		*I had been led*, etc.	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus, -a, -um + eram	ductī, -ae, -a + erāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis	ductus, -a, -um + erās	ductī, -ae, -a + erātis
dūxerat	dūxerant	ductus, -a, -um + erat	ductī, -ae, -a + erant

IMPERATIVE

Present

	lead thou, etc.		*be thou led*, etc.	
2d	dūc [1]	dūcite	dūcere	dūciminī

INFINITIVE

Present

dūcere, *to lead* — dūcī, *to be led*

PARTICIPLE

Past

ductus, -a, -um, *having been led*

THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN -IŌ

Principal Parts:	capiō	capere	cēpī	captus
The three stems:		cape-	cēp-	capt-

[1] Irregular for dūce.

	Active		Passive	
		Indicative		
		Present		
	I take, I am taking, etc.		*I am taken*, etc.	
	capiō	**capimus**	**capior**	**capimur**
	capis	**capitis**	**caperis**	**capiminī**
	capit	**capiunt**	**capitur**	**capiuntur**
		Past		
	I took, I was taking, etc.		*I was taken*, etc.	
	capiēbam	**capiēbāmus**	**capiēbār**	**capiēbāmur**
	capiēbās	**capiēbātis**	**capiēbāris**	**capiēbāminī**
	capiēbat	**capiēbant**	**capiēbātur**	**capiēbantur**
		Future		
	I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken*, etc.	
	capiam	**capiēmus**	**capiar**	**capiēmur**
	capiēs	**capiētis**	**capiēris**	**capiēminī**
	capiet	**capient**	**capiētur**	**capientur**
		Perfect		
	I have taken, I took, etc.,		*I have been (was) taken*, etc.	
	cēpī, etc.		**captus sum**, etc.	
		Past Perfect		
	I had taken, etc.		*I had been taken*, etc.	
	cēperam, etc.		**captus eram**, etc.	
		Imperative		
		Present		
	take thou, etc.		*be thou taken*, etc.	
2d	**cape**	**capite**	**capere**	**capiminī**
		Infinitive		
		Present		
	capere, *to take*		**capī**, *to be taken*	
		Participle		
		Past		
	captus, -a, -um, *having been taken*			

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts:	audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus
The three stems:		audī-	audīv-	audīt-

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

Present

I hear, I am hearing, etc.		*I am heard*, etc.	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

Past

I heard, I was hearing, etc.		*I was heard*, etc.	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard*, etc.	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

Perfect

I have heard, I heard, etc.	*I have been (was) heard*, etc.
audīvī, etc.	audītus sum, etc.

Past Perfect

I had heard, etc.	*I had been heard*, etc.
audīveram, etc.	audītus eram, etc.

IMPERATIVE

Present

	hear thou, etc.		*be thou heard*, etc.	
2d	audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī

INFINITIVE

Present

audīre, *to hear* **audīrī**, *to be heard*

PARTICIPLE

Past

audītus, –a, –um, *having been heard*

IRREGULAR VERB: ESSE

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī**

INDICATIVE

Present		*Past*	
I am, etc.		*I was*, etc.	
sum	**sumus**	**eram**	**erāmus**
es	**estis**	**erās**	**erātis**
est	**sunt**	**erat**	**erant**

Future		*Perfect*	
I shall be, etc.		*I have been, I was*, etc.	
erō	**erimus**	**fuī**	**fuimus**
eris	**eritis**	**fuistī**	**fuistis**
erit	**erunt**	**fuit**	**fuērunt**

Past Perfect	
I had been	
fueram	**fuerāmus**
fuerās	**fuerātis**
fuerat	**fuerant**

IMPERATIVE

Present

es, *be (thou)*, **este**, *be (you)*

INFINITIVE

Present

esse, *to be*

PARTICIPLE

Past

(lacking)

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Minerva Protecting the Arts from Time	*Frontispiece*
	PAGE
Galba Puzzling over his English	xii
Arēna	xvi
Vīlla	xviii
Vīlla	xx
Columna	xxii
Galba Senecam Salūtat	xxiii
Columna Forum Dīvidit	xxv
Toga Longa Est	xxvi
Via Longa et Pulchra Est	3
A Roman Boy	4
Casa Agricolae Parva Est	6
Roman Slaves	10
Pictūram Laudō	11
Octāvia et Augusta	14
Puellae Parvae Viam Mōnstrō	17
Pecūnia	19
Cum Dīligentiā Labōrō	22
Rōma in Ītaliā Est	24
Octāvia in Scholā cum Amīcā Est	26
Silva Magna	29
The Roman Forum	31
Via Appia	33
The Alban Hills	34
Blind Old Appius Claudius Entering the Senate	35
Nautae Nāvigant	37
Nauta ab Īnsulā Magnā Nāvigat	38
Schola Rōmāna	40
A Scene on the Appian Way	41
Dīligentiam Puellārum Pulchrārum Laudō	43
Porta San Sebastiano	45
Domina Rōmāna	47
Puellās Pulchrās Videō	49
Stellae Nautās Monent	52
A Roman House	55

PAGE
Hastīs Pugnant 57
Convīvae 58
Aquilae 60
Etruscan Tombs near Orvieto 61
Pictūra Pulchra 63
Marcus Aurelius 70
Equus Niger Pulcher Est 71
A Roman Ship 76
Dominus Equī Albī Sum 77
Agrī Rōmānī 79
Central View of Carthage To-day 82
Equum Nigrum Vidēmus 83
Lupus 87
A Roman Altar 88
Puellae cum Puerō Pulchrō Sunt 89
Puer et Agnus 93
Roman Soldiers 94
Equī Rōmānī 97
Homērus 100
Augustus 101
Equī Nigrī Sunt 103
Athens 107
Captīvī 110
The Roman Forum 112
Equōs Albōs Videō 115
The Circus Maximus (Restored) 118
A Roman Sword in Its Sheath 120
Vae Victīs! 123
Dominum Laudāte 126
Head of a Vestal Virgin 128
The So-called Temple of Vesta at Rome 129
The Dying Gaul 136
Roman Ruins in Gaul 138
Templum Pulchrum Est 140
Rōmānī Oppidum Oppugnant 143
Catō 144
Carthage 145
In Perīculō Magnō Est 146
Tuba 148
A Restoration of the Forum Looking Northwest 150
Templa Graeca Antīqua Sunt 152

PAGE

Place Uses in Latin 154
Castra Rōmāna 157
Gladius et Pīlum 159
Restoration of the Forum Looking Southeast 161
Pyrrhus 164
Forum et Templa Pulchra Sunt 165
Court of a House in Pompeii 168
Servīs Pigrīs Praemia nōn Dabō 170
Templum Antīquum 173
Tuba Signum Dat 176
Colossēum Videō 179
Rōma Antīqua 183
Porta Nigra in Prōvinciā 187
General View of Carthage 191
Laetae Estis 195
Julius Caesar 198
A Part of Hadrian's Villa 206
A Roman Triumph 213
Cicerō 221
Mīles Rōmānus 224
A Scene in the Roman Senate 227
The Murder of Caesar 234
Mīlitēs Dūcam 237
Carthage 241
Peditēs Dūxī 245
Jupiter 249
Roman Writing Materials 250
Persōnae Rōmānae 256
A Roman Room Showing a Calendar 258
Flūmen Rōmānum 260
Relief on the Arch of Titus 265
A Luxurious Litter 274
Īnsula in Tiberī 278
The Finding of Romulus and Remus 281
Mōns 287
Augustus 293
Mare 295
Leō 302
Marcus Aurelius about to Sacrifice 306
Rūpēs Tarpeia 315
Cloaca Maxima 317

PAGE

The Oath of the Horatii. — The So-called Tomb of the Horatii and Curiatii 325
The Alban Lake 326
Cavē Canem — Look out for the Dog 337
The Ruins of Delphi 347
Augur Observing the Sacred Chickens 348
A Roman Matron 354
Mūcius Scaevola 363
Pōns Rōmānus 372
Bridge over the Anio 376
Cornū 384
Cornua 386
Nāvis in Portū Est 388
Cicero Denouncing Catiline in the Senate 391
The Rhine 397
"Clients" Loitering about the Streets 399

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
acc. = accusative
adj. = adjective
adv. = adverb
compar. = comparative
conj. = conjunction
dat. = dative
dem. = demonstrative
f. = feminine
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
imper. = imperative
impers. = impersonal
ind. = indicative
indecl. = indeclinable
interj. = interjection
interr. = interrogative
m. = masculine
n. = neuter
num. = numeral
part. = participle
perf. = perfect
pers. = personal
pl. = plural
poss. = possessive
prep. = preposition
pres. = present
pron. = pronoun
rel. = relative
superl. = superlative

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

A. C. = **ante Chrīstum**, *before the Christian era.*

ā, ab, prep. (with abl.), *from, by.*

abdicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to disown;* **sē abdicāre** (with abl.), *to resign.*

abdō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *to put away, to hide;* **sē abdere**, *to hide.*

abdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, *to lead away, to remove, to take along.*

abeō, –īre, –iī, —, *to go away.*

aberam, abesse, see **absum.**

abī, imper. of **abeō.**

abiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, *to throw (away), to cast.*

abruptus, –a, –um, adj., *abrupt, deep, steep.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, —, *to be away, to be absent.*

ac, conj. (same as **atque**), *and, as well as.*

accendō, –ere, –cendī, –cēnsus, *to kindle, to light.*

accēnsus, past part. of **accendō.**

accēpit, perf. of **accipiō.**

accīnctus, past part. of **accingō.**

accingō, –ere, –cīnxī, –cīnctus, *to gird.*

accipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, *to take, to receive, to accept, to admit, to let in, to welcome;* **fīnem accipere**, *to come to an end;* **in dēditiōnem accipere**, *to accept the surrender of.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, bitter, eager, desperate.*

ācerrimē, superl. of **ācriter.**

ācerrimus, –a, –um, superl. of **ācer, ācris, ācre.**

aciēs, –ēī, f., *line of battle.*

ācriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

Actium, –tī, n., *Actium*, a promontory in Epirus where Octavianus defeated Antony.

ad, prep. (with acc.), *to, towards, near, for.*

additus, past part. of **addō.**

addō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *to add, to annex.*

addūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, *to lead to, to bring, to prompt, to induce.*

adesse, see **adsum.**

adhibeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, *to display.*

adhūc, adv., *hitherto.*

adiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, *to add, to annex.*

adiēcī, perf. of **adiciō.**

adiungō, –ere, –iūnxī, –iūnctus, *to join, to annex.*

administrō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to rule.*
admīrātiō, **–ōnis**, f., *admiration, wonder.*
admīrātor, **–ōris**, m., *admirer.*
admoneō, **–ēre**, **–uī**, **–itus**, *to warn.*
admoveō, **–ēre**, **–mōvī**, **–mōtus**, *to bring near, to bring to.*
adspexī, perf. of **adspiciō**.
adspiciō, **–ere**, **–spexī**, **–spectus**, *to see.*
adstāns, **–stantis**, pres. part. of **adstō**.
adstō, **–āre**, **–stitī**, —, *to stand by, to stand up.*
adsum, **adesse**, **adfuī**, —, *to be present.*
adulēscēns, **–centis**, m., *a youth.*
adventus, **–ūs**, m., *coming, arrival.*
adversārius, **–ī**, m., *enemy, opponent.*
adversus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *in front.*
adversus, prep. (with acc.), *against.*
aedificō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to build.*
aedīlīcius, **–cī**, m., *a former aedile* (magistrate for police and public works).
aeger, **–gra**, **–grum**, adj., *ill, sick.*
aegrōtō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, —, *to be sick.*
Aegyptus, **–ī**, f., *Egypt.*
Aemilius, **–lī**, m., *Aemilius*, the name of a famous Roman clan.
Aenēas, **–ae**, m., *Aeneas*, the Trojan hero and founder of Lavinium.
aēneus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *of copper, of bronze.*
Aequī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *Aequi*, an early Italian people.
aequus, **–qua**, **–quum**, adj., *even, level, fair, just.*
aestās, **–ātis**, f., *summer.*
aetās, **–ātis**, f., *age, time.*
aeternus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *eternal.*
affēcī, perf. of **afficiō**.
afficiō, **–ere**, **–fēcī**, **–fectus**, *to treat;* **iniuriā afficere**, *to maltreat.*
affirmō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to affirm, to reply affirmatively.*
Āfrica, **–ae**, f., *Africa.*
Āfricānus, **–ī**, m., *Africanus*, the special name of two of the Scipios.
ager, **agrī**, m., *field, territory.*
agnus, **–ī**, m., *lamb.*
agō, **–ere**, **ēgī**, **āctus**, *to drive, to do, to behave;* (dative), **grātiās agere**, *to thank.*
agricola, **–ae**, m., *farmer.*
agricultūra, **–ae**, f., *agriculture.*
Agrigentum, **–ī**, n., *Agrigentum*, a city in southern Sicily, now *Girgenti.*
Agrippa, **–ae**, m., *Agrippa*; see **Menēnius**.
ait, *he says, he said.*
āla, **–ae**, f., *wing.*
alacer, **alacris**, **alacre**, adj., *quick, lively, happy.*
Alba, **–ae**, f., *Alba*, an Italian city, usually called *Alba Longa.*
Albānī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *Albans.*
Albānus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *Alban.*

albus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *white.*
ālea, **-ae**, f., *a die.*
Alexander, **-rī**, m., *Alexander*, king of Macedonia and conqueror of Persia, called "the Great."
Alexandrīa, **-ae**, f., *Alexandria*, the capital of Egypt, founded by Alexander the Great.
alicunde, adv., *from somewhere, from some source.*
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of another, belonging to another.*
alimus, pres. ind. of **alō**.
aliquandō, adv., *some day.*
aliter, adv., *otherwise.*
alius, **-a**, **-ud**, adj., *other, another;* **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . others.*
alligō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to tie.*
almus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *nourishing, foster.*
alō, **-ere**, **aluī**, **altus** or **alitus**, *to feed.*
Alpēs, **-ium**, f. pl., the *Alps.*
alter, **-era**, **-um**, adj., *the other* (of two), *one, another;* **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other.*
altitūdō, **-inis**, f., *height, depth.*
altus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *high, tall, deep.*
aluī, perf. of **alō**.
ambulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to walk.*
amīca, **-ae**, f., *friend.*
amīcitia, **-ae**, f., *friendship, alliance.*
amīcus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *friendly.*
amīcus, **-ī**, m., *friend.*
amita, **-ae**, *f., aunt, father's sister.*
āmittō, **-ere**, **āmīsī**, **āmissus**, *to lose.*
amō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to love, to like, to be fond of.*
amor, **-ōris**, m., *love.*
Amūlius, **-lī**, m., *Amulius*, brother of Numitor, and usurper of his throne.
Anchīsēs, **-ae**, m., *Anchises*, father of Aeneas.
Ancus, **-ī**, m., *Ancus Martius*, the fourth king of Rome.
Andriscus, **-ī**, m., *Andriscus*, a usurper in Macedonia.
anguis, **-is**, m., *serpent, snake.*
angustiae, **-ārum**, f. pl., *narrows, narrow pass, defile.*
Aniēnem, see **Aniō**.
animadvertō, **-ere**, **-tī**, **-sus**, *to notice.*
animal, **-ālis**, n., *animal.*
animus, **-ī**, m., *mind, spirit;* **ūnō animō**, *unanimously.*
Aniō, **Aniēnis**, m., the *Anio*, a tributary of the Tiber.
annuō, **-ere**, **-uī**, —, *to give assent to, to promise.*
annus, **-ī**, m., *year.*
ānser, **-eris**, m., *goose.*
ante, prep. (with acc.), *before, in front of, ago.*
Antiochus, **-ī**, m., *Antiochus*, called "the Great," king of Syria, defeated by the Romans.
antīquissimus, **-a**, **-um**, superl. of **antīquus**, **-a**, **-um**.
antīquus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *ancient, old, early.*

Antōnius, **–nī**, m., *Antony*, the rival of Octavianus Caesar.
ānulus, **–ī**, m., *ring*.
aperiō, **–īre**, **–eruī**, **–ertus**, *to open*.
apertus, past part. of **aperiō**.
Apollō, **–inis**, m., *Apollo*, the god of prophecy and music.
apparātus, **–ūs**, m., *material, supplies*.
appellō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to call, to name*.
Appius, **–ī**, m., *Appius Claudius*, builder of the Via Appia and the Claudian Aqueduct.
Appius, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *Appian*.
apprehendō, **–ere**, **–hendī**, **–hēnsus**, *to seize*.
Aprīlis, **–is**, m., *April*.
apud, prep. (with acc.), *at, near, in, among*.
Āpūlia, **–ae**, f., *Apulia*, a region in southeastern Italy.
aqua, **–ae**, f., *water;* **Aqua Claudia**, the *Claudian Aqueduct*.
aquila, **–ae**, f., *eagle*.
Aquītanī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *Aquitanians;* the *Gascons*.
āra, **–ae**, f., *altar*.
arātrum, **–ī**, n., *plow*.
arbor, **–oris**, f., *tree*.
arca, **–ae**, f., *chest, box, ark*.
arce, **arcis**, see **arx**.
Archelāus, **–ī**, m., *Archelaus*, a king of Cappadocia in Asia Minor.
Ardea, **–ae**, f., *Ardea*, a town in Latium.
ārdeō, **–ēre**, **ārsī**, **ārsus**, *to be on fire, to burn*.
arēna, **–ae**, f., *arena, amphitheater*.
argenteus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *made of silver, silver*.
argentum, **–ī**, n., *silver*.
Arīminum, **–ī**, n., *Ariminum*, a port on the Adriatic, now *Rimini*.
Ariovistus, **–ī**, m., *Ariovistus*, a German king defeated by Caesar.
Aristobūlus, **–ī**, m., *Aristobulus*, a king of Judea.
Aristotelēs, **–is**, m., *Aristotle*, a famous Greek philosopher.
arma, **–ōrum**, n. pl., *arms*.
armātus, **–a**, **–um**, past part. of **armō**.
Armenia, **–ae**, f., *Armenia*, a country of Asia.
armilla, **–ae**, f., *bracelet*.
armō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to arm, to equip*.
Arria, **–ae**, f., *Arria*, the wife of Caecina Paetus.
arripiō, **–ere**, **–ripuī**, **–reptus**, *to snatch, to seize*.
ars, **artis**, f., *art*.
ārsī, perf. of **ārdeō**.
articulus, **–ī**, m., *joint, point*.
arx, **arcis**, f., *citadel, fortress*.
Ascanius, **–nī**, m., *Ascanius*, the son of Aeneas.
ascendō, **–ere**, **–scendī**, **–scēnsus**, *to mount, to take* (a boat).
Āsia, **–ae**, f., *Asia*.
Āsiāticus, **–ī**, m., *Asiaticus*, the special name of L. Cornelius Scipio.
asinus, **–ī**, m., *donkey*.

asper, –era, –erum, adj., *harsh;* **aspera, –ōrum**, n. pl., *hardships.*
aspis, –idis, f., *asp, viper.*
assiduē, adv., *continually.*
astrum, –ī, n., *star.*
at, conj., *but.*
Athēnae, –ārum, f. pl., *Athens*, chief city of Greece.
Atīlius, –lī, m., *M. Atilius Regulus*, captured and tortured by the Carthaginians.
atque, conj., *and, as well as.*
attingō, –ere, –tigī, –tāctus, *to touch, to attain, to get.*
attonitus, –a, –um, adj., *astounded.*
audācia, –ae, f., *boldness.*
audācter, adv., *boldly.*
audāx, gen. **–ācis**, adj., *bold, daring.*
audeō, –ēre, ausus sum, *to dare.*
audiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, *to hear, to listen to.*
aufugiō, –ere, –fūgī, —, *to flee away, to escape.*
augeō, –ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, to enlarge.*
Augusta, –ae, f., *Augusta.*
Augustus, –ī, m., *Augustus*, the special name of Octavianus Caesar.
Aurēlius, –lī, m., *M. Aurelius Cotta*, defeated at Chalcedon.
aureus, –a, –um, adj., *golden.*
aurīga, –ae, m., *charioteer, driver.*
auris, –is, f., *ear.*
aurum, –ī, n., *gold.*
aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*
autem, conj., *but, on the other hand, moreover.* (Never begins a clause.)
auxilium, –lī, n., *help, aid.*
avārus, –a, –um, adj., *grasping, avaricious.*
avē (imper. of **aveō**), *hail!*
Aventīnus, –ī, m., the *Aventine*, one of the hills of Rome.
āvertō, –ere, –tī, –sus, *to turn away.*
aviditās, –ātis, f., *eagerness, greediness.*
avidus, –a, –um, adj., *eager, greedy.*
avis, –is, f., *bird.*
āvolō, –āre, –āvī, —, *to fly away.*
avunculus, –ī, m., (*maternal*) *uncle.*
avus, –ī, m., *grandfather;* pl., *grandparents.*

B

barba, –ae, f., *beard.*
barbarus, –ī, m., *barbarian.*
beātus, –a, –um, adj., *happy.*
Belgae, –ārum, m. pl., the *Belgians.*
bellicōsus, –a, –um, adj., *warlike.*
bellum, –ī, n., *war.*
bēlua, –ae, *f., wild beast.*
bene, adv., *well.*
beneficium, –cī, n., *favor, kindness.*
bēstia, –ae, f., *beast.*
Bēstia, –ae, m., *Bestia*, the surname of L. Calpurnius, accused of bribery.

bibō, –ere, bibī, bibitus, *to drink.*

Bibulus, –ī, m., *L. Bibulus,* consul with Caesar.

bis, adv., *twice.*

Bīthȳnia, –ae, f., *Bithynia,* a country of Asia Minor.

bitūmen, –inis, n., *mineral pitch, asphalt.*

blandus, –a, –um, adj., *flattering.*

bonum, –i, n., *good, weal, property;* **bona, –ōrum,** n. pl., *property, estate.*

bonus, –a, –um, adj., *good.*

bōs, bovis, m., *ox.*

brevī, adv., *soon, in a little while.*

brevis, –e, adj., *short.*

Britannī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Britons.*

Britannicus, –a, –um, adj., *British;* **Ōceanus Britannicus,** the North Sea and the English Channel.

Bruttiī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Bruttii,* a people of southeastern Italy.

Brūtus, –ī, m., *L. Junius Brutus,* leader of the rebellion against Tarquin; *M. Junius Brutus,* the leader with Cassius in the assassination of Caesar.

Byzantium, –tī, n., *Byzantium,* now *Constantinople.*

C

C.: abbreviation for **Gāius,** (English) *Caius.*

Cabīra, indecl., *Cabira,* a town in Pontus (Asia Minor).

cadō, –ere, cecidī, —, *to fall.*

Caecilius, –lī, m., *Q. Caecilius Metellus Macedonicus,* conqueror of Andriscus; *Q. Caecilius Metellus Numidicus,* conqueror of Jugurtha.

Caecīna, –ae, m., *Caecina Paetus,* the husband of Arria.

caedēs, –is, f., *murder.*

caedō, –ere, cecīdī, caesus, *to cut, to beat, to slay.*

Caelius, –ī, m., the *Caelian,* one of the hills of Rome.

caelum, –ī, n., *sky, heaven.*

Caepio, –ōnis, m., *Cn. Servilius Caepio,* consul.

Caesar, –aris, m., *Caesar,* the conqueror of Gaul; title of the Roman Emperors.

calamitās, –ātis, f., *calamity, disaster, defeat.*

calamus, –ī, m., (*reed*) *pen.*

calcar, –āris, n., *spur.*

Calpurnius, –ī, m., *L. Calpurnius Bestia,* accused of bribery.

Camilla, –ae, f., *Camilla,* the sister of the Horatii.

Camillus, –ī, m., *Furius Camillus,* a Roman dictator.

Campānia, –ae, f., *Campania,* a region in central Italy.

campus, –ī, m., *plain;* **Campus Mārtius,** the *Plain of Mars,* outside of the walls of Rome.

canis, –is, m., *dog.*

Cannae, –ārum, f. pl., *Cannae,* a village in Apulia, famous for the defeat of the Romans by Hannibal.

Cannēnsis, –e, adj., *of Cannae.*
cantō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to sing (of).*
capella, –ae, f., *goat.*
capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus, *to take (up), to catch, to seize, to capture.*
Capitōlium, –lī, n., the *Capitol* (the shrine of Jupiter); the *Capitoline Hill.*
capra, –ae, f., *goat.*
captīvus, –ī, m., *captive.*
captus, past part. of **capiō.**
Capua, –ae, f., *Capua*, chief city of Campania.
caput, –itis, n., *head.*
cāra, f. of **cārus.**
carcer, –eris, m., *jail, prison.*
Caria, –ae, f., *Caria*, a country in Asia Minor.
cārior, -ius, compar. of **cārus.**
carmen, –inis, n., *song, poem.*
carnem, see **carō.**
carō, carnis, f., *flesh.*
carpentum, –ī, n., *chariot, carriage.*
carpō, –ere, –psī, –ptus, *to pluck.*
carrus, –ī, m., *wagon.*
Carthāginiēnsēs, –ium, m. pl., the *Carthaginians.*
Carthāgō, –inis, f., *Carthage*, a city in Africa, the great rival of Rome; **Carthāgō Nova**, *New Carthage* (now *Cartagena*), a city in Spain founded by Hasdrubal, brother-in-law of Hannibal.
cārus, –a, –um, adj., *dear.*
casa, –ae, f., *cottage.*
cāseus, –ī, m., *cheese.*
Cassius, –sī, m., *Cassius; C. Cassius Longinus*, a leader in the murder of Caesar.
castellum, –ī, n., *fortress.*
castīgō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to chastise, to punish.*
castra, –ōrum, n. pl., *camp.*
cāsus, –ūs, m., *occasion.*
Catilīna, –ae, m., *Catiline*, a conspirator against the Roman government.
Catō, –ōnis, m., *M. Porcius Cato*, opponent of Caesar.
Catulus, –ī, m., *Q. Lutatius Catulus*, leader with Marius against the Cimbri.
Caudīnus, –a, –um, adj., *Caudine; of Caudium*, a town of Italy; **Furculae Caudīnae**, the *Caudine Forks*, a narrow pass, famous for the defeat of the Romans by the Samnites.
causa, –ae, f., *cause;* (dat.), **causam dare**, *to start.*
cautus, –a, –um, adj., *wary, cautious.*
Cēa, –ae, f., *Ceos* (island).
cecidī, perf. of **cadō.**
cecīdī, perf. of **caedō.**
cēdō, –ere, cessī, cessus, *to yield, to withdraw.*
celeber, celebris, celebre, adj., *crowded, celebrated, famous.*
celer, celeris, celere, adj., *swift, quick.*
celeritās, –ātis, f., *swiftness, quickness.*
celeriter, adv., *quickly.*
celerrimē, superl. of **celeriter.**
Celtae, –ārum, m. pl., the *Celts.*

cēnseō, –ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *to take the census of, to register.*

cēnsor, –ōris, m., *censor* (a Roman magistrate).

Cēnsōrīnus, –i, m., *Censorinus,* surname of L. Marcius, consul.

cēnsus, –ūs, m., *registering, census.*

centum, indecl. num. adj., *one hundred.*

centuriō, –ōnis, m., *centurion* (commander of a company).

cēpī, perf. of **capiō.**

cerebrum, –ī, n., *brain.*

certāmen, –inis, n., *combat.*

certē, adv., *certainly.*

certō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to fight.*

certus, –a, –um, adj., *certain.*

cervus, –ī, m., *stag, deer.*

cēterī, –ae, –a, adj., *the other.*

ceu, adv., *as, just as.*

Chalcēdōn, –ōnis, f., *Chalcedon,* a city of Bithynia.

chorus, –ī, m., *dance, chorus.*

Chrīstus, –ī, m., *Christ.*

cibārius, –a, –um, adj., *coarse.*

cibus, –ī, m., *food.*

cicāda, –ae, f., *tree cricket.*

Cicerō, –ōnis, *m., Cicero,* the great Roman orator.

cicōnia, –ae, f., *stork.*

Cimbrī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Cimbri,* a tribe occupying what is now Denmark.

Cīneās, –ae, m., *Cineas,* friend and favorite minister of Pyrrhus.

Cincinnātus, –ī, m., *Cincinnatus,* twice dictator, type of old Roman simplicity and patriotism.

Cinna, –ae, m., *Cinna,* surname of L. Cornelius, confederate of Marius.

circiter, adv., *about.*

circum, prep. (with acc.), *around.*

circumdedī, perf. of **circumdō.**

circumdō, –are, –dedī, –datus, *to place around, to surround.*

circumsedeō, –ēre, –sēdī, –sessus, *to surround, to besiege.*

circumsessus, past part. of **circumsedeō.**

circumspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus, *to observe, to survey.*

circumstō, –āre, –stetī, —, *to stand around, to surround, to threaten.*

circumvolō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to fly around.*

Circus, –ī, m., the *Circus Maximus,* where chariot races were held.

citō, adv., *quickly.*

citrā, prep. (with acc.), *on this side of* (from the Roman standpoint).

cīvilis, –e, adj., *civil.*

cīvis, –is, m., *citizen.*

cīvitās, –ātis, f., *state.*

clāmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to cry out, to shout.*

clāmor, –ōris, *f., cry, shout.*

Claudius, –dī, m., *Claudius,* name of a famous Roman clan.

Cleopatra, –ae, f., *Cleopatra,* queen of Egypt.

clipeus, **-ī**, m., *shield* (round, of metal).
cloāca, **-ae**, f., *sewer, drain.*
Cloelia, **-ae**, f., *Cloelia*, a Roman heroine.
Cluentius, **-tī**, m., *Cluentius*, leader of rebellious Italian tribes.
Cn., abbreviation for **Gnaeus**.
Cocles, **-itis**, m., *Cocles* (one-eyed), special name of Horatius.
coēgī, perf. of **cōgō**.
coepī, **coeptus** (defective, found only in perfect tenses), *begin.*
cognōmen, **-inis**, n., *surname.*
cognōsco, **-ere**, **-gnōvī**, **-gnitus**, *to become acquainted with, to recognize.*
cognōvit, perf. of **cognōscō**.
cōgō, **-ere**, **coēgī**, **coāctus**, *to drive, to compel;* **in dēditiōnem cōgere**, *to force to surrender.*
Collātīnus, **-ī**, m., *Collatinus*, surname of Tarquin, husband of Lucretia.
collēgī, perf. of **colligō**.
colligō, **-ere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctus**, *to gather.*
collocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to place (together), to erect.*
collum, **-ī**, n., *neck.*
colō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-cultus**, *to till, to cultivate, to practice, to revere.*
colōnia, **-ae**, f., *colony.*
columba, **-ae**, f., *dove.*
columna, **-ae**, f., *column.*
comes, **-itis**, m., *companion.*
comminus, adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters.*
committō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, *to begin, to start, to intrust.*
commōtus, past part. of **commoveō**.
commoveō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, *to alarm, to disturb, to start.*
comparō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to bring together.*
compellō, **-ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsus**, *to assemble, to compel;* **in dēditiōnem compellere**, *to force to surrender;* **ad fugam compellere**, *to force to flee.*
complōrātiō, **-ōnis**, f., *lamentation.*
complūrēs, **-a**; gen. **-ium**, adj., *several, many.*
compōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, *to compose.*
compulī, perf. of **compellō**.
concēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessus**, *to go away, to withdraw.*
concessī, perf. of **concēdō**.
concitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to excite, to rouse.*
conclāmō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to cry out together, to shout.*
concordia, **-ae**, f., *concord.*
condiciō, **-ōnis**, f., *condition, terms.*
conditus, past part. of **condō**.
condō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, *to found.*
condōnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to pardon, to forgive.*
cōnfēcī, perf. of **cōnficiō**.
cōnfertus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *thick.*
cōnficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**, *to make, to end.*
cōnfīdō, **-ere**, —, **-fīsus**, *to confide, to trust.*

cōnfirmō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to establish;* **amīcitiam cōnfirmāre**, *to make a treaty of alliance.*

cōnfīsus, **-a**, **-um** (past part. of **cōnfīdō**), *having trusted, relying.*

cōnfodiō, **-ere**, **-fōdī**, **-fossus**, *to pierce, to wound.*

cōnfossus, past part. of **cōnfodiō**.

coniciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *to throw, to put.*

coniectus, past part. of **coniciō**.

coniungō, **-ere**, **-iūnxī**, **-iūnctus**, *to join, to ally.*

coniūnx, **-ugis**, m., and f., *husband, wife;* pl., *married couple.*

coniūrātī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *conspirators.*

coniūrātiō, **-ōnis**, f., *conspiracy, plot.*

coniūrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to conspire;* **coniūrāre in** or **contrā** (with acc.), *to conspire against.*

cōnsēdī, perf. of **cōnsīdō**.

cōnsēnsus, **-ūs**, m., *agreement;* **omnium cōnsēnsū**, *unanimously.*

cōnservō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to preserve, to keep (intact).*

cōnsīderō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to consider.*

cōnsīdō, **-ere**, **-sēdī**, **-sessus**, *to sit down, to alight.*

cōnsilium, **-ī**, n., *advice.*

cōnsistō, **-ere**, **-stitī**, **-stitus**, *to stand.*

cōnspectus, **-ūs**, m., *sight, view, presence.*

Constantīnopolis, **-is**, f., *Constantinople.*

cōnstitī, perf. of **cōnsistō** and **cōnstō**.

cōnstituō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, *to set, to decide, to establish;* **tempore cōnstitūtō**, *at the appointed time.*

cōnstō, **-āre**, **-stitī**, —, *to stand, to be established.*

cōnsuētūdō, **-inis**, f., *habit, custom;* **ex cōnsuētūdine suā**, *in accordance with their custom.*

cōnsul, **-ulis**, m., *consul.*

cōnsulāris, **-is**, m., or **cōnsulāris vir**, **-ī**, m., *former consul.*

cōnsulātus, **-ūs**, m., *consulship.*

cōnsūmō, **-ere**, **-sūmpsī**, **-sūmptus**, *to use up, to destroy.*

contemnō, **-ere**, **-tempsī**, **-temptus**, *to disdain, to scorn.*

contemptiō, **-ōnis**, f., *disdain, scorn.*

contendō, **-ere**, **-dī**, **-tus**, *to try, to fight, to hasten.*

contentus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *satisfied.*

contineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus**, *to hem in, to bound.*

contrā, prep. (with acc.), *against.*

contrādīcō, **-ere**, **-dīxī**, **-dictus**, *to speak against, to oppose.*

contrahō, **-ere**, **-trāxī**, **-trāctus**, *to gather.*

contrāxī, perf. of **contrahō**.

convalēscō, **-ere**, **-luī**, —, *to recover.*

conveniō, **-īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventus**, *to come together, to gather.*

convertō, –ere, –tī, –sus, *to attract, to draw, to convert.*
convīva, –ae, m., *guest.*
convocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to call together, to summon.*
cōpia, –ae, f., *abundance, plenty;* pl., *troops.*
cōram, prep. (with abl.), *in the presence of.*
Corinthiī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Corinthians.*
Corinthus, –ī, f., *Corinth,* a city of Greece.
Coriolānus, –ī, m., *Coriolanus,* a famous Roman unjustly exiled.
Cornēlia, –ae, f., *Cornelia,* mother of the Gracchi; **gēns Cornēlia,** the *Cornelian clan,* one of the most famous in Rome.
Cornēlius, –lī, m., *Cornelius,* name borne by the men of the famous Cornelian clan, to which the Scipios belonged.
cornū, –ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).
corpus, –oris, *n., body.*
corrēxī, perf. of **corrigō.**
corrigo, –ere, –rēxī, –rēctus, *to straighten, to correct.*
corrumpō, –ere, –rūpī, –ruptus, *to break down, to bribe.*
corruptus, past part. of **corrumpō.**
Corvīnus, –ī, m., *Corvinus,* surname of M. Valerius.
corvus, –ī, m., *raven.*
cotīdiānus, –a, –um, adj., *daily.*
Cotta, –ae, m., *Cotta,* surname of M. Aurelius, defeated at Chalcedon.
crās, adv., *tomorrow.*
Crassus, –ī, m., *M. Licinius Crassus,* victor in the war of the gladiators; *P. Crassus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.
crēber, –bra, –brum, adj., *frequent.*
Cremera, –ae, f., *Cremera,* a river in Etruria.
creō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to create, to elect.*
crēscō, –ere, crēvī, crētus, *to grow, to increase.*
crēvit, perf. of **crēscō.**
crīnis, –is, f., *hair.*
Crixus, –ī, m., *Crixus,* a leader in the war of the gladiators.
crūdēlis, –e, adj., *cruel.*
crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly, in a cruel manner.*
cruentus, –a, –um, adj., *bloody, stained.*
cruor, –ōris, m., *blood.*
cubiculum, –ī, n., *bedchamber.*
cubīle, –lis, n., *bed, couch.*
cui, dat. of **quī** and **quis.**
cuique, dat. of **quisque.**
cuius, gen. of **qui** and **quis.**
culpō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to blame.*
cultellus, –ī, m., *small knife.*
culter, –trī, m., *knife, butcher's knife.*
cum, prep. (with abl.), *with.*
cum, conj., *when.*
cūncta, –ōrum, n. pl., *all the things.*
cūnctātor, –ōris, m., *delayer.*
cūnctus, –a, –um, adj., *all.*
cupiditās, –ātis, f., *ardent desire, eagerness.*

cūr, adv., *why?*
cūria, –ae, f., *curia* (one of the 30 divisions of the plebs), *senate-house.*
Curiātiī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Curiatii.*
cūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to care for;* **mē cūrō**, *I take care of myself.*
currō, –ere, **cucurrī**, **cursus**, *to run.*
currus, –ūs, m., *chariot.*
cursus, –ūs, m., *course.*
cūstōdiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, *to watch, to guard.*
cūstōs, –ōdis, m., *watch, keeper.*
Cyprius, –a, –um, adj., *of Cyprus,* an island off the coast of Asia Minor.
Cyzicus, –ī, f., *Cyzicus,* a city of Asia Minor.

D

damnātus, past part. of **damnō**.
damnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to condemn.*
datus, past part. of **dō**.
dē, prep. (with abl.), *out of, about, from.*
dēbeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, *to owe, ought.*
dēbilitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to weaken.*
dēcēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, *to withdraw, to die.*
decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten.*
December, –bris, m., *December.*
decemvirī, –ōrum, m. pl., *decemvirs* (college of ten magistrates).
dēceptus, past part. of **dēcipiō**.
dēcernō, –ere, –crēvī, –crētus, *to decree, to intrust, to assign* by vote.
dēcessī, perf. of **dēcēdō**.
dēcidō, –ere, –cidī, —, *to fall, to drop.*
decimus, –a, –um, num. adj., *tenth;* **quārtus decimus**, *fourteenth;* **sextus decimus**, *sixteenth.*
dēcipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, *to deceive, to disappoint.*
dēcrētus, past part. of **dēcernō**.
dēdecus, –oris, n., *disgrace, dishonor.*
dedī, perf. of **dō**.
dēdidī, perf. of **dēdō**.
dēditiō, –ōnis, f., *surrender;* **accipere** or **recipere in dēditiōnem**, *to accept the surrender of;* **compellere in dēditiōnem**, *to force to surrender.*
dēdō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *to give up;* **sē dēdere**, *to surrender.*
dēdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, *to lead away, to escort.*
dēfendō, –ere, –fendī, –fēnsus, *to defend.*
dēfēnsor, –ōris, m., *defender.*
dēferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus, *to announce, to expose.*
dēficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, *to become weak, to be weakened.*
dēfīgō, –ere, –fīxī, –fīxus, *to fasten, to astound.*
dēfīxī, perf. of **dēfīgō**.
dēfōrmitās, –ātis, f., *ugliness.*
dēiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, *to let fall.*

deinde, adv., *then, afterwards.*
Dēiotarus, –ī, m., *Deiotarus*, a king of Galatia in central Asia Minor.
dēlectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to delight, to please.*
dēlēgī, perf. of **dēligō**.
dēleō, –ēre, –lēvī, –lētus, *to destroy.*
dēlictum, –ī, n., *offense.*
dēligātus, past part. of **dēligō**, –āre.
dēligō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus, *to choose, to elect.*
dēligō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to bind, to tie.*
Delphicus, –a, –um, adj., *Delphic; of Delphi*, the seat of the famous Greek oracle.
Dēmētrius, –trī, m., *Demetrius*, the son of Philip V of Macedon.
Dēmosthenēs, –is, m., *Demosthenes*, a great Greek orator.
dēnique, adv., *at last.*
dēns, **dentis**, m., *tooth.*
dēprehendō, –ere, –hendī, –hēnsus, *to seize.*
dēscendō, –ere, –scendī, –scēnsus, *to descend, to come down.*
dēserō, –ere, –seruī, –sertus, *to forsake, to desert.*
dēsertus, past part. of **deserō**.
dēsīderō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to long for, to desire.*
dēsiliō, –īre, –siluī, –sultus, *to leap (down), to jump.*
dēsiluī, perf. of **dēsiliō**.
dēsistō, –ere, –stitī, –stitus, *to cease, to stop.*
dēspōnsa, –ae, f., *betrothed.*
dēstitī, perf. of **dēsistō**.
dēsuper, adv., *from above.*
dētrāctus, past part. of **dētrahō**.
dētrahō, –ere, –trāxī, –trāctus, *to drag, to bring away, to take from.*
dētrāxī, perf. of **dētrahō**.
dētulī, perf. of **dēferō**.
deus, –ī, m., *god.*
dēvorāns, –antis, pres. part. of **dēvorō**.
dēvorō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to devour.*
dexter, –tra, –trum, adj., *right.*
diadēma, –ātis, n., *diadem.*
dīc, imper. of **dīcō**.
dīcō, –ere, **dīxī**, **dictus**, *to say, to tell, to call.*
dictātor, –ōris, m., *dictator* (chief magistrate with unlimited power).
dictātūra, –ae, f., *dictatorship.*
dictus, past part. of **dīcō**.
diēs, **diēī**, m., or f., *day.*
difficilis, –e, adj., *difficult.*
difficultās, –ātis, f., *difficulty.*
dignitās, –ātis, f., *dignity.*
dīligēns, gen. –entis, adj., *industrious, diligent.*
dīligenter, adv., *diligently.*
dīligentia, –ae, f., *diligence, industry, care.*
dīluvium, –vī, n., *deluge.*
dīmicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to fight.*
dīmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, *to let go, to dismiss.*
dīmīsī, perf. of **dīmittō**.
Diogenēs, –is, m., *Diogenes*, a Stoic philosopher.
dīreptus, past part. of **dīripiō**.

dīripiō, –ere, –ripuī, –reptus, *to tear away, to plunder.*
dīripuī, perf. of **dīripiō.**
diruō, –ere, –ruī, –rutus, *to destroy.*
discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus, *to depart.*
disciplīna, –ae, f., *discipline.*
discipula, –ae, f., *pupil.*
discipulus, –ī, m., *pupil, follower.*
discō, –ere, didicī, —, *to learn.*
discordia, –ae, f., *discord.*
dissēdī, perf. of **dissideō.**
dissideō, –ēre, –sēdī, —, *to disagree.*
dissimilis, –e, adj., *different.*
distribuō, –ere, –uī, –ūtus, *to distribute, to divide.*
diū, adv., *a long time, for a long time.*
diūtius, compar. of **diū.**
dīvidō, –ere, –vīsī, –vīsus, *to divide, to separate.*
dīvīnus, –a, –um, adj., *divine.*
dīvīsus, past part. of **dīvidō.**
dīvitiae, –ārum, f. pl., *riches, wealth.*
dīxī, perf. of **dīcō.**
dō, dare, dedī, datus, *to give, to grant;* **fīnem dare,** *to put an end to;* **sē gaudiō dare,** *to give one's self up to joy.*
doceō, –ēre, –uī, doctus, *to teach.*
doctus, –a, –um, adj., *learned.*
doleō, –ēre, –uī, —, *to lament, to be sorry for.*
dolor, –ōris, m., *pain.*
domina, –ae, f., *mistress, lady of the house.*
dominus, –ī, m., *master, lord.*
domō, –āre, –uī, –itus, *to conquer.*
domus, –ūs, or **–ī,** f., *house.*
dōnec, conj., *as long as.*
dōnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to give, to present, to reward.*
dōnum, –ī, n., *gift.*
dormiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, *to sleep.*
dorsum, –ī, n., *back.*
dubius, –a, –um, adj., *doubtful.*
dūc, imper. of **dūcō.**
ducentī, –ae, –a, num. adj., *two hundred.*
dūcō, –ere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead, to take, to accompany, to attend;* **(fossās),** *to dig.*
Duīlius, –lī, m., *Caius Duilius,* the first Roman commander to defeat the Carthaginians on the sea.
dum, conj., *while.*
duo, –ae, –o, num. adj., *two.*
duodecim, indecl. num. adj., *twelve.*
duodēvīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *eighteen.*
duplicō, –āre, –āvī, ātus, *to double.*
dūrē, adv., *severely.*
dūrissimus, –a, –um, superl. of **dūrus, –a, –um.**
dūrus, –a, –um, adj., *hard.*
dux, ducis, m., *ruler, leader, chief.*

E

ē or **ex,** prep. (with abl.), *out of, from, in accordance with.*
ea, eā, eam, eās, see **is.**

ecce, adv., *behold.*
edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsus, *to eat.*
ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead forth.*
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, *to bring out, to save.*
effūdī, perf. of **effundō**.
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *to pour out;* **sē effundere**, *to overflow.*
Ēgeria, -ae, f., *Egeria*, a nymph, wife and adviser of King Numa.
ēgī, perf. of **agō**.
ego, pers. pron., *I.*
eī, eīs, see **is**.
eius, see **is**; **eiusdem**, see **īdem**.
ēlēgī, perf. of **ēligō**.
elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant.*
ēliciō, -ere, -licuī, -licitus, *to entice, to lure.*
ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *to choose, to pick out.*
ēloquēns, gen. **-entis**, adj., *eloquent.*
ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to stick out.*
ēn, interj., *behold.*
enim, conj., *for, indeed.* (It is never the first word of a clause.)
Ennius, -nī, m., *Ennius*, an early Roman poet.
eō, see **is, ea, id.**
eō, īre, īvī or **iī, —**, *to go, to walk.*
eōdem, see **īdem**.
eōrum, eōs, see **is**.
eōsque = **et eōs**,
Epamīnōndās, -ae, m., *Epaminondas*, a famous Theban general.
Ēpīrus, -ī, f., *Epirus*, a country in the northwest of Greece.
eques, -itis, m., *cavalryman.*
equester, equestris, equestre, adj., *equestrian.*
equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equus, -ī, m., *horse.*
ergā, prep. (with acc.), *towards, for.*
ergō, adv., *therefore, then.*
ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -eptus, *to snatch away, to take away.*
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to wander, to prowl.*
ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *to burst forth.*
es, pres. ind. and imper. of **esse**.
Ēsquilīnus, -ī, m., the *Esquiline*, one of the hills of Rome.
esse, *to be.*
est, estis, see **sum**.
estō, fut. imper. of **sum**.
ēsuriēns, -entis, pres. part. of **ēsuriō**.
ēsuriō, -īre, —, *to be hungry.*
et, conj., *and.*
etiam, adv., *even, also;* **sed etiam**, *but also.*
etiamsī, conj., *even if.*
Etrūscī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Etruscans.*
Eudēmus, -ī, m., *Eudemus*, a friend of Aristotle.
eum, see **is**.
Eurīpidēs, -is, m., *Euripides*, a great Athenian tragic writer.
Eurōpa, -ae, f., *Europe.*
ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, *to get away, to escape, to prove to be.*

ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *to come out.*
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to call forth.*
ēvolāns, -antis, pres. part. of **ēvolāre.**
ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to fly away.*
ex or **ē,** prep. (with abl.), *out of, from.*
exaedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to finish building, to complete.*
exāctor, -ōris, m., *supervisor.*
excēpī, perf. of **excipiō.**
excidium, -dī, n., *destruction.*
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *to receive, to overhear, to meet.*
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to rouse, to spur on, to start.*
exclāmāns, -antis, pres. part. of **exclāmō.**
exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to exclaim, to cry out.*
exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to exclude, to shut out.*
exemplum, -ī, n., *example.*
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *to go out, to come out.*
exercitus, -ūs, m., *army.*
exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus, *to drain out, to exhaust.*
exhaustus, past part. of **exhaurio.**
exhibēns, -entis, pres. part. of **exhibeō.**
exhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to show.*
exībat, past of **exeō.**
exiī, perf. of **exeō.**
eximius, -a, -um, adj., *uncommon, extraordinary.*
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to think, to consider.*
exitus, -ūs, m., *departure.*
exōrātus, past part. of **exōrō.**
exōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to obtain by entreaty, to move.*
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *to drive out, to banish.*
experientia, -ae, f., *experience.*
explicāns, -antis, pres. part. of **explicō.**
explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to spread out, to display.*
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to take by storm.*
expulī, perf. of **expellō.**
expulsus, past part. of **expellō.**
exsequiae, -ārum, f. pl., *funeral procession.*
exsilium, -lī, n., *exile.*
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to wait for, to await.*
exspīrāns, -antis, pres. part. of **exspīrō.**
exspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to breathe one's last, to expire.*
exstīnctus, past part. of **exstinguō.**
exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, *to extinguish, to kill.*
exstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus, *to build up.*
extēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *extended.*
extrahō, -ere, -āxī, -āctus, *to pull out, to withdraw.*
extrāxī, perf. of **extrahō.**
extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., *last.*
extulit, perf. of **efferō.**

F

faber, **–brī**, m., *smith.*
Fabiī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *Fabians.*
Fabius, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *Fabian*, a famous Roman clan.
Fabricius, **–cī**, m., *Fabricius*, a Roman distinguished for his integrity.
fābula, **–ae**, f., *story.*
fac, imper. of **faciō**.
facētus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *witty.*
faciēs, **–ēī**, f., *face, appearance.*
facile, adv., *easily.*
facilis, **–e**, adj., *easy.*
facinus, **–oris**, n., *crime.*
faciō, **–ere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, *to do, to make;* **iter facere**, *to march.*
factum, **–ī**, n., *fact, deed.*
Falēriī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., *Falerii*, an Etruscan town.
fāma, **–ae**, f., *fame, reputation.*
famēlicus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *famished, starved.*
famēs, **–is**, f., *hunger.*
familia, **–ae**, f., *household, family.*
familiāris, **–is**, m., *friend, companion.*
fās, n., indecl., *divine law.*
faucēs, **–ium**, f. pl., *throat.*
Faustulus, **–ī**, m., *Faustulus*, the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.
fēcērunt, **fēcī**, perf. of **faciō**.
fēcundus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *fertile, fecund.*
fēlīcitās, **–ātis**, f., *good fortune, success.*
fēlīciter, adv., *with good fortune, luckily, happily.*
fēlīx, gen. **–īcis**, adj., *lucky, happy.*
fēmina, **–ae**, f., *woman.*
fera, **–ae**, f., *wild beast.*
ferē, adv., *nearly, almost.*
feriō, **–īre**, —, —, *to strike, to kill.*
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *to bear, to yield, to produce, to get;* **arātrum ferre**, *to draw a plow.*
ferōx, gen. **–ōcis**, adj., *fierce, cruel, bold, warlike.*
ferrum, **–ī**, n., *iron.*
fertis, pres. ind. of **ferō**.
fessus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *tired, enfeebled.*
fēstum, **–ī**, n., *feast.*
fidēs, **–eī**, f., *trust, faith, word;* **in fidem accipere**, *to take under one's protection.*
fīdus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *faithful.*
figūra, **–ae**, f., *figure.*
fīlia, **–ae**, f., *daughter.*
fīlius, **–lī**, m., *son.*
fīniō, **–īre**, **–īvī**, **–ītus**, *to finish, to end.*
fīnis, **–is**, f., *end;* pl., *territory.*
fīnitimus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *neighboring.*
fīnītus, past part. of **fīniō**.
firmus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *firm.*
Flāminīnus, **–ī**, m., *Flamininus*, victor over Philip, king of Macedonia.
Flāminius, **–nī**, m., *Flaminius*, Roman general defeated by Hannibal.
flamma, **–ae**, f., *flame.*
flectō, **–ere**, **–exī**, **–exus**, *to change, to sway.*

fleō, –ēre, –ēvī, –ētus, *to weep.*
flexī, perf. of **flectō.**
flūmen, –inis, n., *river.*
foculus, –ī, m., *brazier.*
foedus, –eris, n., *league.*
fōrma, –ae, f., *form, shape, beauty.*
formīca, –ae, f., *ant.*
fortasse, adv., *perhaps.*
forte, adv., *by chance.*
fortis, –e, adj., *brave.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely.*
fortitūdō, –inis, f., *bravery.*
fortūna, –ae, *f., fortune, fate.*
forum, –ī, n., *market-place, forum.*
fossa, –ae, f., *ditch, trench, moat.*
foveō, –ēre, fōvī, fōtus, *to warm.*
frangō, –ere, frēgī, frāctus, *to overcome, to wreck.*
frāter, –tris, m., *brother.*
frēgī, perf. of **frangō.**
frēnī, –ōrum, m. pl., *bit.*
frīgus, –oris, n., *cold.*
frūctus, –ūs, m., *fruit, reward.*
frūmentum, –ī, n., *grain.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
fūdī, perf. of **fundō.**
Fufētius, –tī, m., *Fufetius,* a king of Alba Longa.
fuga, –ae, f., *flight.*
fugiēns, –entis, pres. part. of **fugiō.**
fugiō, –ere, fūgī, —, *to flee.*
fugitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to avoid.*
fugō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to put to flight.*
fulgeō, –ēre, fulsī, —, *to glitter.*
fulmen, –inis, n., *thunderbolt.*
fundō, –ere, fūdī, fūsus, *to pour, to shed* (tears), *to rout.*
fūnestus, –a, –um, adj., *deadly, fatal, destructive.*
fūnus, –eris, n., *burial, funeral.*
furcula, –ae, f., *little fork;* **Furculae Caudīnae,** the *Caudine Forks,* a mountain pass where the Samnites defeated the Romans.
Fūrius, –rī, m., *Furius Camillus,* a Roman dictator.
furor, –ōris, m., *fury.*
fūsus, past part. of **fundō.**
futūrus, a, um, adj., *future.*

G

Gāius, –ī (abbreviation **C.**), m., *Gaius,* a Roman first name, often written *Caius* in English.
Galatia, –ae, f., *Galatia,* a country of central Asia Minor.
Galba, –ae, m., *Galba,* a Roman name.
galea, –ae, f., *helmet.*
Gallī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Gauls.*
Gallia, –ae, f., *Gaul;* pl., Cisalpine Gaul (Northern Italy) and Transalpine Gaul (Modern France).
Gallus, –ī, m., a *Gaul.*
garrulus, –a, –um, adj., *talkative.*
gaudeō, –ēre, —, gāvīsus, *to rejoice.*
gaudium, –dī, n., *joy.*
gener, –erī, m., *son-in-law.*
gēns, gentis, f., *clan, tribe.*

genus, **–eris**, n., *sort, kind, birth, family.*
gerēns, **–entis**, pres. part. of **gerō**.
Germānī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *Germans.*
Germānia, **–ae**, f., *Germany.*
gerō, **–ere**, **gessī**, **gestus**, *to bear, to carry, to rule, to perform, to do, to wage* (war).
gesta, past part. of **gerō**.
gesta, **–ōrum**, n. pl., *deeds.*
gladiātor, **–ōris**, m., *gladiator.*
gladiātōrius, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *gladiatorial;* **lūdus gladiātōrius**, *a school for gladiators.*
gladius, **–dī**, m., *sword.*
glōria, **–ae**, f., *glory.*
glōriōsē, adv., *gloriously.*
glōriōsus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *glorious.*
Gorgiās, **–ae**, m., *Gorgias*, a Greek rhetorician.
Gracchī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *Gracchi.*
Graecia, **–ae**, f., *Greece.*
Graecī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *Greeks.*
Graecus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *Greek.*
grānum, **–ī**, n., *grain.*
grātē, adv., *willingly, with pleasure.*
grātia, **–ae**, f., *favor, thanks;* (dat.) **grātiās agere**, *to thank;* **exemplī grātiā**, *for instance.*
grātior, **–ius**, compar. of **grātus**.
grātissimē, superl. of **grātē**.
grātus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *pleasant, grateful.*
gravis, **–e**, adj., *heavy, grave, serious, stern.*
gravitās, **–ātis**, f., *heaviness, weight.*
graviter, adv., *heavily, severely, harshly, seriously.*
gravō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to weigh down, to burden.*
grūs, **gruis**, f., *crane.*

H

habeō, **–ēre**, **–uī**, **–itus**, *to have, to hold.*
habitō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to dwell, to live.*
hāc, **hae**, **haec**, see **hic**.
haereō, **–ēre**, **haesī**, **—**, *to stick fast.*
Hamilcar, **–aris**, m., *Hamilcar*, a Carthaginian general, and father of Hannibal.
Hannibal, **–alis**, m., *Hannibal*, the most famous Carthaginian general.
Hannō, **–ōnis**, m., *Hanno*, a Carthaginian general.
hārum, see **hic**.
Hasdrubal, **–alis**, m., *Hasdrubal*, the name of several Carthaginian generals.
hasta, **–ae**, f., *spear, javelin.*
hei, interj. (grief or fear), *alas! oh dear!*
Helvētia, **–ae**, f., *Helvetia* (modern Switzerland).
Helvētiī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *Helvetians.*
Helvētius, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *Helvetian.*
herba, **–ae**, f., *grass.*
herbōsus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *abounding in grass, grassy.*

hērēs, –ēdis, m., *heir.*
herī, adv., *yesterday.*
heu, interj., *alas.*
hic, haec, hoc, dem., *this, this one.*
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter.*
Hierō, –ōnis, m., *Hiero*, a tyrant of Syracuse.
Hierosolyma, –ae, f., *Jerusalem.*
hinc, adv., *from this place.*
Hirtius, –tī, m., *Hirtius*, a consul.
Hispānī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Spaniards.*
Hispānia, –ae, f., *Spain;* pl., **Hispānia Citerior**, *Hither Spain* (from the Roman standpoint) and **Hispānia Ulterior**, *Farther Spain*, separated by the river Iberus (Ebro).
historia, –ae, f., *history.*
hoc, hōc, see **hic.**
hodiē, adv., *today.*
Homērus, –ī, m., *Homer*, the great Greek epic poet.
homō, –inis, m., *man.*
honestās, –ātis, f., *honesty, integrity.*
honor, –ōris, m., *honor, praise.*
honōrificē, adv., *honorably, with honor.*
hōra, –ae, f., *hour.*
Horātius, –tī, m., *Horatius*, a Roman hero; *Horace*, great Roman poet and satirist.
Horātiī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Horatii*, the three champions of Rome against the Curiatii.
horribilis, –e, adj., *horrible.*
horror, –ōris, m., *horror, dread.*
hortus, –ī, m., *garden.*
hōrum, see **hic.**
Hostīlius, –lī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.
hostis, –is, m., *enemy, foe.*
hūc, adv., *to this place, hither.*
huic, huius, see **hic.**
hūmānus, –a, –um, adj., *human.*
humilis, –e, adj., *low, humble, obscure.*
humilis, –is, m., *humble person.*

I

I. C. = **Iēsus Chrīstus**; **ante I. C.** = **ante Iēsum Chrīstum.**
iaceō, –ēre, iacuī, —, *to lie prostrate, to be situated.*
iaciō, –ere, iēcī, iactus, *to throw.*
iam, adv., *already, then;* **nōn iam**, *no more, never more.*
ībat, past of **eō.**
Iāniculum, –ī, m., *Janiculum*, a hill on the other side of the Tiber from Rome.
Iānuārius, –rī, m., *January.*
ibi, adv., *there.*
icō, –ere, īcī, ictus, *to strike.*
ictus, past part. of **īcō.**
ictus, –ūs, m., *stroke, stab, thrust.*
īdem, eadem, idem, adj., *the same.*
Īdūs, –uum, f. pl., *Ides* (middle of the month).
iēcī, perf. of **iaciō.**
iērunt, perf. of **eō.**
Iēsus, m., *Jesus.*

igitur, conj., *accordingly, therefore.*
ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., *cowardly.*
ignis, -is, m., *fire.*
ille, illa, illud, dem., *that, that one.*
illūstris, -e, adj., *illustrious, great.*
illūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to illustrate, to make famous.*
imāgō, -inis, f., *image, wax mask.*
imitātiō, -ōnis, f., *imitation;* **ad imitātiōnem**, *in imitation.*
immātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *immature, untimely.*
imminēns, gen. **-entis**, adj., *imminent, at hand.*
immōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unmoved, motionless.*
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance, baggage.*
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to hinder, to prevent.*
imperātor, -ōris, m., *general, emperor.*
imperium, -rī, n., *empire, dominion, supreme power, reign.*
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to order, to rule.*
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, onset.*
impiger, -gra, -grum, adj., *diligent.*
impius, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, unpatriotic.*
implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to implore, to beg earnestly.*
impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *to place upon, to put;* **fīnem impōnere**, *to put an end.*
improbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to disapprove, to reject.*
improbus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked.*
in, prep. (with abl.), *in, on, for;* (with acc.), *into, against.*
incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to march.*
incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *to set fire to, to burn.*
incēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *inflamed, very angry.*
incertus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain.*
incessī, perf. of **incēdō**.
inchoō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to begin.*
incidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *to fall.*
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to excite, to spur on.*
incognitus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown.*
incola, -ae, m., *inhabitant.*
incolō, -ere, -luī, —, *to dwell in.*
incrēdibilis, -e, adj., *incredible, extraordinary.*
increpāns, -antis, pres. part. of **increpō**.
increpō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *to upbraid, to scold.*
incursiō, -ōnis, f., *incursion, raid.*
inde, adv., *from there, from that time.*
indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *to declare.*
indīxī, perf. of **indīcō**.
indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *to lead in;* (aqueduct) *to build.*
induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *to dress in.*

industria, **-ae**, f., *industry, diligence.*
indūtus (past part. of **induō**), *dressed in, wearing.*
indūxī, perf. of **indūcō**.
inermis, **-e**, adj., *unarmed, defenseless.*
īnfāmis, **-e**, adj., *infamous, disgraceful.*
īnferō, **-ferre**, **intulī**, **illātus**, *to bring upon, to make* (war).
infestō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to infest.*
īnfīnītus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *without end, infinite.*
īnflātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *puffed up.*
īnflīgō, **-ere**, **-flīxī**, **-flīctus**, *to inflict.*
īnfrendēns, **-entis**, pres. part., *gnashing.*
īnfringō, **-ere**, **-frēgī**, **-frāctus**, *to break off.*
ingenium, **-nī**, n., *character, nature.*
ingēns, gen. **-entis**, adj., *huge, enormous, very great.*
ingrātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *not pleasing, ungrateful.*
iniciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *to put in.*
iniēcī, perf. of **iniciō**.
inimīcus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *unfriendly, hostile.*
initium, **-tī**, n., *beginning.*
iniūria, **-ae**, f., *injustice, wrong;* **iniūriā afficere**, *to maltreat.*
iniūstē, adv., *unjustly.*
innocēns, gen. **-entis**, adj., *not harmful, innocent.*
inopia, **-ae**, f., *lack.*
inquit, *he* or *she says, he* or *she said.*
īnsidiae, **-ārum**, f. pl., *ambush.*
īnsīdēns, **-entis**, pres. part. of **īnsīdō**.
īnsīdō, **-ere**, **-sēdī**, **-sessus**, *to sit on, to ride.*
īnsigne, **-is**, n., *badge, standard.*
īnsignis, **-e**, adj., *noteworthy.*
īnsiliō, **-īre**, **-uī**, —, *to leap, to jump.*
īnsiluī, perf. of **īnsiliō**.
īnsinuō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to thrust in;* **sēsē īnsinuāre**, *to slip in.*
īnsolenter, adv., *arrogantly, haughtily.*
īnstituō, **-ere**, **-stituī**, **-stitūtus**, *to establish, to found.*
īnstruō, **-ere**, **-ūxī**, **-ūctus**, *to draw up, to build up.*
īnsula, **-ae**, f., *island.*
intāctus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *intact, unharmed, fresh.*
integer, **-gra**, **-grum**, adj., *unhurt, sound, fresh.*
intellegō, **-ere**, **-lēxī**, **-lēctus**, *to understand.*
inter, prep. (with acc.), *between, among, amidst, during.*
interdiū, adv., *in the daytime.*
intereā, adv., *in the meantime.*
interēmī, perf. of **interimō**.
interfector, **-ōris**, m., *murderer.*
interfectus, past part. of **interficiō**.
interficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**, *to kill.*
interfodiō, **-ere**, **-fōdī**, **-fossus**, *to pierce.*
interim, adv., *in the meantime.*

interimō, –ere, –ēmī, –ēmptus, *to kill.*
interrogō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to ask, to question.*
intrā, prep. (with acc.), *inside of, within.*
intrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to enter, to come in, to go in.*
intrōdūcō, –ere, –dūxī, –ductus, *to lead in, to introduce.*
intulī, perf. of **īnferō.**
inūsitātus, –a, –um, adj., *unusual, extraordinary.*
invādō, –ere, –vāsī, –vāsus, *to invade, to seize.*
invāsī, perf. of **invādō.**
inveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, *to come upon, to find out, to invent.*
inventor, –ōris, m., *inventor, discoverer.*
invictus, –a, –um, adj., *unconquered.*
invidia, –ae, f., *envy.*
invītō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to invite.*
iocus, –ī, m., *joke.*
Iove, Iovis, see **Iuppiter.**
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, dem., *self, himself, herself, itself, themselves;* **ego ipse,** *I myself.*
īra, –ae, f., *anger.*
īrātus, –a, –um, adj., *angry.*
irrīdēns, –entis, pres. part. of **irrīdeō.**
irrīdeō, –ēre, –rīsī, –rīsus, *to laugh (at), to make fun (of).*
is, ea, id, dem., *this, that; he, she, it.*
ita, adv., *thus.*
Ītalī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Italians.*
Ītalia, –ae, f., *Italy.*
itaque, conj., *and so, thus, that is why, for that reason.*
īte, imper. of **eō.**
iter, itineris, n., *way, road, journey, march, distance.*
iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*
iubeō, –ēre, iussī, iussus, *to order.*
iūcunda, –orum, n. pl., *pleasant things.*
iūcundus, –a, –um, adj., *pleasant, agreeable.*
Iūdaea, –ae, f., *Judea.*
Iūdaeī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Jews.*
iūdex, –icis, m., *judge.*
iūdicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to judge, to declare.*
iūgerum, –ī, n., a plot of land containing 28,000 square feet.
iugum, –ī, n., *yoke.*
Iugurtha, –ae, m., *Jugurtha,* a king of Numidia.
Iūlia, –ae, f., *Julia.*
Iūlius, –lī, m., *Julius,* the name of a Roman clan.
iūnctus, past part. of **iungō.**
iungō, –ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *to join, to unite.*
iūnior, –ius, compar. of **iuvenis,** *younger.*
Iūnius, –nī, m., *June.*
Iūnius, –nī, m., *Junius,* the name of a Roman clan.
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter.*
Iūra, –ae, m., *Jura,* the name of a range of mountains in France.
iūre, see **iūs.**

iūrō, –āre, –avī, –ātus, *to swear, to take an oath.*
iūs, iūris, n., *right;* **iūs cīvitātis,** *citizenship.*
iussus, past part. of **iubeō.**
iussus, –ūs, m., *order.*
iūstē, *justly, deservedly.*
iūstus, –a, –um, adj., *just.*
iuvenis, –is, m., *youth, young man.*
Iuventius, –tī, m., *Juventius,* a Roman general defeated by Andriscus.
iuvō, –āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to aid, to help.*

K

Kalendae, –ārum, f. pl., the *Calends* (first day of the month).

L

L. = **Lūcius.**
Labiēnus, –ī, m., *Labienus,* the most prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war.
labor, –ōris, m., *labor, toil.*
labōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to work, to labor.*
Lacedaemonius, –nī, m., a *Lacedaemonian,* a *Spartan.*
Lacō, –ōnis, m., a *Laconian,* a *Spartan.*
lacōnicus, –a, –um, adj., *laconic.*
lacrima, –ae, f., *tear.*
lacus, –ūs, m., *lake.*
laetitia, –ae, f., *joy.*
laetus, –a, –um, adj., *joyful, happy.*
Laevīnus, –ī, m., *P. Valerius Laevinus,* defeated by Pyrrhus.
lanius, –nī, m., *butcher.*
lapideus, –a, –um, adj., *of stone.*
lapis, –idis, m., *stone, milestone* (at intervals of 1000 Roman paces).
lapsus, –ūs, m., *slip.*
lātē, adv., *widely;* **longē lātēque,** *far and wide, everywhere.*
Latīnē, adv., *in Latin.*
Latīnus, –ī, m., *Latinus,* an early Italian king.
Latīnī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Latins.*
latrō, –ōnis, m., *robber.*
latus, –eris, n., *side.*
lātus, –a, –um, adj., *wide.*
laudāns, –antis, pres. part. of **laudō.**
laudō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to praise;* **sē laudāre,** *to praise one's self.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
Lāvīnium, –nī, n., *Lavinium,* a city in Italy built by Aeneas.
lēgātus, –ī, m., *ambassador, lieutenant.*
legiō, –ōnis, f., *legion* (divided into ten cohorts of 360 to 600 men each).
legō, –ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to choose, to gather, to read.*
Lemannus, –ī, m., *Leman,* the name of a lake in Switzerland, more often called the *Lake of Geneva.*
lēnis, –e, adj., *mild, gentle.*
lentē, adv., *slowly.*
Lentulus, –ī, m., *Lentulus,* Cicero's son-in-law.
lentus, –a, –um, adj., *slow.*

leō, –ōnis, m., *lion.*
Leōnidās, –ae, m., *Leonidas*, a Spartan king who fell at Thermopylae.
Leontīnus, –a, –um, adj., *of Leontini*, a Sicilian town.
Lepidus, –ī, m., *Lepidus*, one of the triumvirs with Octavianus and Antony.
lepus, –oris, m., *hare.*
lētālis, –e, adj., *deadly.*
levis, –e, adj., *light.*
levitās, –ātis, f., *lightness, mobility.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*
libenter, adv., *with pleasure, with good appetite.*
līber, –era, –erum, adj., *free.*
liber, –brī, m., *book.*
līberī, –ōrum, m. pl., *children.*
līberō, –āre, - āvī, –ātus, *to free.*
lībertās, –ātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*
libitum, past part. of **libet**, impers., *it pleases.*
Libyssa, –ae, f., *Libyssa*, a town in Bithynia.
licet, –ēre, licuit, licitum est, impers., *it is allowed.*
Licinius, –nī, m.; see **Lūcullus.**
līctor, –ōris, m., *lictor* (official attendant upon a magistrate).
ligneus, –a, –um, adj., *wooden.*
Ligurēs, –um, m. pl., the *Ligurians* (northwestern Italy).
Lilybaeum, –ī, n., *Lilybaeum*, a promontory on the western coast of Italy.
līma, –ae, f., *file.*
līnea, –ae, f., *line.*
lingua, –ae, f., *tongue, language.*
liniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītum, *to calk, to besmear.*
linter, –tris, f., *boat.*
lītigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to quarrel.*
littera, –ae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet); pl., *letter, epistle.*
litterārius, –a, –um, adj., *of reading and writing;* **lūdus litterārius**, *elementary school.*
lītus, –oris, n., *beach, seashore.*
locō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to place, to situate.*
locus, –ī, m., *place, location, origin.*
longē, adv., *far, a long way off;* **longē lātēque**, *far and wide, everywhere.*
longitūdo, –inis, f., *length.*
longus, –a, –um, adj., *long.*
lōrīca, –ae, f., *cuirass.*
lūcerna, –ae, f., *lamp.*
Lūcius, –cī, m., *Lucius*, a Roman first name.
Lūcrētia, –ae, f., *Lucretia*, a Roman matron, the wife of Collatinus.
Lūcullus, –ī, m., *L. Licinius Lucullus*, a Roman general in the Mithridatic war, noted later for wealth and luxury.
lūdus, –ī, m., *play, game, school.*
lūgeō, –ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *to mourn.*
lupa, –ae, f., *she-wolf.*
lupus, –ī, m., *wolf.*
Lūsitānia, –ae, f., *Lusitania*, a part of Hispania, now *Portugal.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*

M

M. = **Mārcus**.

Macedonia, **-ae**, f., *Macedonia*, a country north of Greece.

Macedonicus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Macedonian, of Macedonia.*

macer, **-cra**, **-crum**, adj., *thin, meager.*

macte, see **mactus**.

mactus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., (of the gods), *worshiped, honored;* **macte virtute estō** (lit., *be increased in your merit!*), *good luck! well done!*

magis, adv., *more.*

magister, **-trī**, m., *teacher.*

Magnēsia, **-ae**, f., *Magnesia*, a town of Ionia (western coast of Asia Minor).

magnificentissimē, superl. of **magnificē**, *most splendidly, most pompously.*

magnificus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *magnificent, splendid.*

magnitūdō, **-inis**, f., *bigness, size.*

magnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *large, great.*

maior, **-ius**, compar. of **magnus**, *greater, larger.*

maiōrēs, **-um**, m. pl., *ancestors.*

male, adv., *badly.*

maleficium, **-cī**, n., *bad deed, mischief.*

malitia, **-ae**, f., *ill will, wickedness.*

malum, **-ī**, n., *evil, misfortune, disaster.*

malus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *bad.*

Mancīnus, **-ī**, m., *Mancinus*, a Roman general who made a disgraceful peace with the Numidians.

mānē, adv., *early in the morning.*

maneō, **-ēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsus**, *to remain.*

manifestus, **-ā**, **-um**, adj., *plain, evident.*

Mānius, **-nī**, m., *Manius*, a Roman first name.

Mānlius, **-lī**, m., *Manlius*, a member of the Manlian gens.

Mantua, **-ae**, f., *Mantua*, a city of northern Italy.

manus, **-ūs**, f., *hand.*

Mārcellus, **-ī**, m., *M. Claudius Marcellus*, who captured Syracuse.

Mārcius, **-cī**, or **Mārtius**, **-tī**, m., a Roman name; see **Ancus**, **Cēnsorīnus**, and **Coriōlanus**.

Mārcus, **-ī**, m., *Marcus*, a Roman first name.

mare, **-ris**, n., *sea.*

marītus, **-ī**, m., *husband.*

Marsī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., the *Marsi*, a people of central Italy.

Mārtius, see **Mārcius**.

Mārtius, **-tī**, m., *March;* **Campus Mārtius**, the *Field of Mars*, a plain outside the walls of Rome.

māter, **-tris**, f., *mother.*

mātertera, **-ae**, f., *aunt* (mother's sister).

mātrimōnium, **-nī**, n., *matrimony, marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *to marry.*

maximē, adv., *most, very.*

maximus, **-a**, **-um**, superl. of **magnus**, *greatest, very great.*

Maximus, **–ī**, m., *Maximus*, a Roman cognomen or surname.
mē, see **ego**.
mea, f. of **meus**.
mēcum, *with me*.
medicus, **–ī**, m., *physician*.
mediocritās, **–ātis**, f., *mean*.
medius, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *middle, the middle of, the midst of;* **mediā hieme**, *in the middle of winter;* **mediō marī**, *on the open sea*.
mellificō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to make honey*.
membrum, **–ī**, n., *member, limb*.
memoria, **–ae**, f., *memory;* (**in**) **memoriā tenēre**, *to remember*.
Menēnius, **–nī**, m., *Menenius Lanatus Agrippa*, envoy to the seceding plebs.
mēns, **mentis**, f., *mind, feeling, thought*.
mēnsa, **–ae**, f., *table*.
mēnsis, **–is**, m., *month*.
mentiō, **–ōnis**, f., *mention*.
mercēs, **–ēdis**, f., *pay, reward, price*.
mereō, **–ēre**, **–uī**, **–itus**, *to earn, to deserve*.
mergō, **–ere**, **mersī**, **mersus**, *to sink*.
meridiēs, **–ēī**, m., *midday, noon*.
meritō, adv., *deservedly, justly*.
mersī, perf. of **mergō**.
mersus, past part. of **mergō**.
Metellus, **–ī**, m., see **Caecilius**.
metus, **–ūs**, m., *fear, dread*.
meus, **–a**, **–um**, poss. adj., and pron., *my, mine*.
mī, voc. of **meus**.
Micipsa, **–ae**, m., *Micipsa*, a king of Numidia.
mihi, see **ego**.
mīles, **–itis**, m., *soldier*.
mīlia, **–ium**, n. pl., *thousands*.
mīlitāris, **–e**, adj., *military;* **res mīlitāris**, *military affairs, warfare*.
mīlitia, **–ae**, f., *military service*.
milītō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātum**, *to serve in war*.
mīlle, indecl. num. adj., *thousand*.
minimus, **–a**, **–um**, adj. (superl. of **parvus**), *very small*.
ministerium, **–rī**, n., *service, work, labor*.
minor, **minus** (compar. of **parvus**), *smaller, younger, lower, lesser*.
minus, adv., *less*.
Minucius, **–cī**, m., *Minucius*, a Roman consul.
miser, **–era**, **–erum**, adj., *wretched, miserable;* **miserī**, **–ōrum**, m. pl., the *wretched ones*.
miseria, **–ae**, f., *misery*.
misericordia, **–ae**, f., *pity*.
mīsī, perf. of **mittō**.
missus, past part. of **mittō**.
Mithridātēs, **–is**, m., *Mithridates*, a famous king of Pontus in Asia Minor.
Mithridāticus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *Mithridatic*.
mittō, **–ere**, **mīsī**, **missus**, *to send*.
modestia, **–ae**, f., *modesty*.
modius, **–dī**, m., a dry measure containing about a peck.

modo, adv., *only;* **nōn modo**, *not only.*
modō, abl. of **modus.**
modus, –ī, m., *way, manner;* **quō modō?** *how?* **in modum** (gen.), *like a . . .*
moenia, –ium, n. pl., *ramparts.*
momordit, perf. of **mordeō.**
moneō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, *to warn.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
mōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to show, to point out.*
montānī, –ōrum, m. pl., *mountaineers.*
mora, –ae, f., *delay.*
morbus, –ī, m., *sickness, disease.*
mordeō, –ēre, **momordī**, **morsus**, *to bite into.*
mōrēs, pl. of **mōs.**
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
mortālis, –e, adj., *mortal.*
mortuus, –a, –um, adj., *dead.*
mōs, mōris, m., *habit, custom;* pl., *manners, rules of conduct, character.*
mōtus, past part. of **moveō.**
mōtus, –ūs, m., *movement, motion.*
moveō, –ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, *to move, to stir;* **arma** or **bellum movēre**, *to start a war;* **castra movēre**, *to break camp.*
mox, adv., *soon.*
Mūcius, –cī, m., *Mucius Scaevola*, a heroic young Roman.
muliebris, –e, adj., *womanly.*
mulier, –eris, f., *woman.*
multa, –ae, f., *fine.*
multa, –ōrum, n. pl., *many things.*
multitūdō, –inis, f., *great number, multitude.*
multus, –a, –um, adj., *much;* pl., *many, numerous.*
Mummius, –mī, m., *Mummius*, a Roman general who captured Corinth.
Munda, –ae, f., *Munda*, a city in southern Spain.
mundus, –ī, m., *world.*
mūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, *to fortify.*
mūrus, –ī, m., *wall, rampart.*
musca, –ae, f., *fly.*
mūtō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to change, to reform.*
Myndus, –ī, f., *Myndus*, a city in Caria (southeastern part of Asia Minor).

N

Nabis, –idis, m., *Nabis*, a tyrant of Sparta.
nam, conj., *for.*
nārrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to tell, to relate.*
Nāsīca, –ae, m., *Nasica*, surname of P. Cornelius Scipio.
natāns, –antis, pres. part. of **natō.**
nātiō, –ōnis, f., *nation.*
natō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to swim.*
nātūra, –ae, f., *nature.*
nātus, –a, –um, adj., *born.*
naufragium, –gī, n., *shipwreck.*
naufragus, –ī, m., *shipwrecked person.*
nauta, –ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvālis, –e, adj., *naval, sea.*
nāvicula, –ae, f., *small boat.*

nāvigātiō, –ōnis, f., *navigation, sailing.*
nāvigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to sail.*
nāvis, –is, f., *ship.*
–ne, particle (enclitic), used to indicate a question.
nec, conj., *and not, nor;* **nec . . . nec**, *neither . . . nor.*
necem, see **nex.**
necessārius, –a, –um, adj., *necessary.*
necessitās, –ātis, f., *necessity.*
necō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to kill.*
negō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to deny, to refuse.*
nēmō (dat.: **nēminī**), m., *nobody, no one.*
nepōs, –ōtis, m., *grandson, grandnephew.*
Neptūnus, –ī, m., *Neptune,* god of the sea.
neque, see **nec.**
neuter, –tra, –trum, adj., *neither.*
nex, **necis**, f., *violent death, slaughter.*
Nīcomēdēs, –is, m., *Nicomedes,* a king of Bithynia.
nīdificō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to build a nest.*
niger, –gra, –grum, adj., *black, dark.*
nihil, indecl., *nothing.*
Nīlus, –ī, m., the *Nile,* a large river in Africa.
nimis, adv., *too much.*
nisi, conj., *if not, unless.*
nitor, –ōris, m., *brightness, sheen.*
Nōa, –ae, m., *Noah.*
nōbilis, –e, adj., *well known, noble.*
nōbilissimus, –a, –um, superl. of **nōbilis**, –e.
nōbilitās, –ātis, f., *nobleness, nobility.*
nōbīs, see **nōs**; **nōbīscum**, *with us.*
nocte, see **nox.**
nocturnus, –a, –um, adj., *by night, night.*
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, *to be unwilling, not to wish.*
nōluērunt, perfect of **nōlō.**
nōmen, –inis, n., *name.*
nōminō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to call, to name.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
Nōnae, –ārum, f. pl., the *Nones* (ninth day before the Ides).
nōnāgēsimus, –a, –um, num. adj., *ninetieth.*
nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
nōs, pers. pron., *we; us.*
noster, –tra, –trum, poss. adj. and pron., *our, ours.*
nōtissimus, –a, –um, superl. of **nōtus**, –a, –um.
nōtus, –a, –um, adj., *famous, well known.*
novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*
November, –bris, m., *November.*
novus, –a, –um, adj., *new.*
nox, **noctis**, f., *night.*
nūbilus, –a, –um, adj., *cloudy, dark.*
nūdus, –a, –um, adj., *bare.*
nūllus, –a, –um, adj., *not any, no, none.*
Numa, –ae, m., *Numa Pompilius,* the second king of Rome.

Numantia, **-ae**, f., *Numantia*, a city of Spain.
Numantīnī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., the *Numantines*.
numerō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to number, to have*.
numerus, **-ī**, m., *number*.
Numidae, **-ārum**, m. pl., the *Numidians*.
Numidia, **-ae**, f., *Numidia*, now *Algeria* (northern Africa).
Numitor, **-ōris**, m., *Numitor*, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.
numquam, adv., *never*.
nunc, adv., *now*.
nūntiō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to announce*.
nūntius, **-tī**, m., *messenger*.
nympha, **-ae**, f., *nymph*.

O

ō, interj., *o! oh!*
obeō, **-īre**, **obiī**, **obitus**, *to die*.
ōbēsus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *fat*.
obiī, perf. of **obeō**.
obiūrgō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to scold, to rebuke*.
oblītus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *forgetful*.
obscūrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to darken*.
obscūrus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *obscure, dark*.
obsēdī, perf. of **obsideō**.
obses, **obsidis**, m., *hostage*.
obsideō, **-ēre**, **-sēdī**, **-sessus**, *to besiege*.
obstupefaciō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-factus**, *to amaze*.
obtineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus**, *to obtain, to get*.
obtulī, perf. of **offerō**.
occīdō, **-ere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsus**, *to kill*.
occīsus, past part. of **occīdō**.
occupō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to occupy, to seize*.
ōceanus, **-ī**, m., *ocean*.
Octāviānus, **-ī**, m., *Octavianus*, grandnephew and adopted son of Julius Caesar, and first Roman emperor.
octāvus, **-a**, **-um**, num. adj., *eighth*.
octingentī, **-ae**, **-a**, num. adj., *eight hundred*.
Octōber, **-bris**, m., *October*.
octōgēsimus, **-a**, **-um**, num. adj., *eightieth*.
octōgintā, indecl., num. adj., *eighty*.
oculus, **-ī**, m., *eye*.
odium, **-dī**, n., *hatred*.
Oenomaus, **-ī**, m., *Oenomaus*, a leader in the war of the gladiators.
offendō, **-ere**, **-fendī**, **-fēnsus**, *to offend*.
offerō, **offerre**, **obtulī**, **oblātus**, *to offer*.
officīna, **-ae**, f., *workshop, studio*.
officium, **-cī**, n., *office, duty*.
olera (also **holera**), **-erum**, n. pl., *vegetables, greens*.
ōlim, adv., *formerly, once*.
ōmen, **-inis**, n., *omen, sign*.
omnis, **-e**, adj., *all, every;* **omnia**, **-ium**, pl., *all, everything;* **haec omnia**, *all these things*.
onus, **-eris**, n., *load, burden*.

opēs, opum, f. pl., *property, riches, things.*
opīniō, –ōnis, f., *opinion.*
oppidum, –dī, n., *town.*
oppressī, perf. of **opprimō**.
opprimō, –ere, –pressī, pressus, *to crush, to overpower, to defeat.*
oppugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to attack, to besiege.*
opulentus, –a, –um, adj., *wealthy.*
opus, –eris, n., *work.*
ōra, –ae, f., *sea-coast.*
ōrātor, –ōris, m., *orator.*
orbis, –is, m., *circle;* **orbis terrārum**, *earth, world.*
ōrdō, –inis, m., *order, row, bank* (of oars).
ōre, see **ōs, ōris**.
oriēns, –entis, m., *orient, east.*
orīgō, –inis, f., *origin.*
ōrnāmentum, –ī, n., *ornament, jewelry, trappings.*
ōrnātus, –ūs, m., *fine attire.*
ōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to pray, to beseech.*
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth.*
os, ossis, n., *bone.*
ostendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus, *to show, to display.*
Ostia, –ae, f., *Ostia*, a town at the mouth of the Tiber.
ōstium, –tī, n., *mouth* (of a river).
ōtiōsus, –a, –um, adj., *idle.*
ōtium, –tī, n., *leisure, ease.*
ovis, –is, f., *sheep.*

P

P. = **Pūblius**.
pābulum, –ī, n., *fodder, grass.*
pācem, see **pāx**.
pācō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to calm, to pacify, to subdue.*
paedagōgus, –ī, m., *guardian* (a slave to guide and attend children).
paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*
Paetus, –ī, m., *Paetus*, the husband of Arria.
Palātīnus, –ī, m., the *Palatine*, one of the hills of Rome.
palma, –ae, f., *palm of the hand.*
palūdāmentum, –ī, n., *military cloak.*
pālus, –ī, m., *stake.*
palūs, –ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*
pānis, –is, m., *bread.*
Pānsa, –ae, m., *Pansa*, a consul.
Papīrius, –rī, m., *L. Papirius*, victor of the Samnites.
pār, paris, adj., *equal.*
pār, paris, n., *pair, couple.*
parēns, –entis, m. and f., *parent.*
pariter, adv., *in like manner, as well.*
parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to prepare, to make (ready).*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
parsimōnia, –ae, f., *thrift.*
partēs, pl. of **pars**.
parvus, –a, –um, adj., *small, little.*
passus, –ūs, m., *step, pace.*
pāstor, –ōris, m., *shepherd.*
pater, –tris, m., *father.*
paternus, –a, –um, adj., *paternal.*
patientia, –ae, f., *patience.*
patria, –ae, f., *fatherland, native land.*

patriciī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *patricians, nobility.*
patricius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *patrician, noble.*
patruēlis, **-is**, m., *cousin* (on the father's side).
patruus, **-ī**, m., *uncle* (father's brother).
paucī, **-ae**, **-a**, adj., *few, a few.*
paulō, adv., *somewhat;* **paulō post**, *a little later.*
Paulus, **-ī**, m., *Paulus*, the name of one of the families belonging to the Aemilian clan.
pauper, **-eris**, adj., *poor.*
pāvō, **-ōnis**, m., *peacock.*
pāx, **pācis**, f., *peace;* **pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre**, *to make a treaty of alliance.*
peccō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to make a mistake.*
pectus, **-oris**, n., *breast.*
pecūnia, **-ae**, f., *money.*
pecūniōsus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *rich.*
pedes, **-itis**, m., *foot-soldier, infantryman.*
pedēs, pl. of **pēs**, **pedis**.
Pelignī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., the *Peligni*, a people of central Italy.
pelle, see **pellis**.
pellexī, perf. of **pelliciō**.
pelliciō, **-ere**, **-lexī**, **-lectus**, *to entice, to lure.*
pellis, **-is**, f., *skin.*
pellō, **-ere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, *to drive, to put to flight, to defeat.*
pēnīnsula, **-ae**, f., *peninsula.*
penna, **-ae**, f., *feather.*
per, prep. (with acc.), *through, across, by, during.*
peragrāns, **-antis**, pres. part. of **peragrō**.
peragrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to wander through.*
percutiō, **-ere**, **-cussī**, **-cussus**, *to strike hard, to beat.*
perdō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, *to lose, to destroy.*
perdūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *to lead.*
pereō, **-īre**, **-iī**, —, *to perish.*
pereunt, pres. ind. of **pereō**.
pergō, **-ere**, **perrēxī**, **perrēctus**, *to go on, to go forward, to proceed.*
perībit, fut. of **pereō**.
perīculum, **-ī**, n., *danger.*
periērunt, **periit**, perf. of **pereō**.
perītissimus, **-a**, **-um**, superl. of **perītus**, **-a**, **-um**.
perītus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *skillful.*
permittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, *to allow, to give up, to hand over.*
permōtus, past part. of **permoveō**.
permoveō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, *to move deeply, to influence.*
permūtō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to interchange, to exchange.*
perniciōsus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *pernicious, hurtful.*
perpaucī, **-ae**, **-a**, adj., *very few.*
perrēxī, perf. of **pergō**.
Persae, **-ārum**, m. pl., the *Persians.*
Perseus, **-ī**, m., *Perseus*, a king of Macedonia.

persōna, –ae, f., *mask, person.*
perspiciō, –ere, –spēxī, –spectus, *to see through, to perceive.*
perstringō, –ere, –īnxī, –ictus, *to affect deeply.*
persuādeō, –ēre, –suāsī, –suāsus, *to persuade.*
perterreō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, *to terrify.*
pertineō, –ēre, –uī, —, *to extend.*
perturbō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to disturb.*
perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, *to arrive at, to reach, to enter;* **in** (acc.) **per vim pervenīre**, *to force one's way into.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
pessimus, –a, –um (superl. of **malus**), *worst, very bad.*
petō, –ere, –īvī or iī, –ītus, *to seek, to sue for, to try to get, to repair to.*
phalanx, –angis, f., *phalanx* (compact order of battle; formed by the soldiers in the front rank overlapping their shields above their heads).
Pharnaces, –is, m., *Pharnaces*, a son of Mithridates, king of Pontus.
Pharsālus, –ī, f., *Pharsalus*, a city of Thessaly (northern Greece), scene of Pompey's defeat by Caesar.
Philippī, –ōrum, m. pl., *Philippi*, a city in Macedonia (northern Greece).
Philippus, –ī, m., *Philip*, a king of Macedonia (northern Greece).
Pīcentēs, –ium, m. pl., the *Picentes*, the inhabitants of Picenum.
Pīcēnum, –ī, n., *Picenum*, a region on the western coast of Italy.
pictus, past part. of **pingō**; **picta pictūra**, *painting.*
pictūra, –ae, f., *picture.*
piger, –gra, –grum, adj., *lazy.*
pīlum, –ī, n., *heavy javelin.*
pingō, –ere, **pīnxī**, **pictus**, *to paint.*
pinguis, –e, adj., *fat, plump.*
pīrāta, –ae, m., *pirate.*
piscis, –is, m., *fish.*
placeō, –ēre, –cuī, –citus, *to please.*
Plautus, –ī, m., *Plautus*, a Roman name.
plēbēius, –a, –um, adj., *plebeian.*
plēbs, plēbis, f., *plebeians, common people.*
plēnus, –a, –um, adj., *full.*
pluō, –ere, **pluī** or **plūvī**, —, (usually impers.), *to rain.*
plūrēs, plūra, adj., *more, several.*
plūrimī, –ae, –a, adj., *very many;* **plūrima**, –ōrum, n. pl., *very many things.*
plūs, adv., *more.*
poena, –ae, f., *punishment;* **poenam dare**, *to pay the penalty, to be punished.*
Poenī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Carthaginians.*
poēta, –ae, m., *poet.*
pol, interj. (*Pollux*), *by Pollux! indeed! truly!*
pompa, –ae, f., *pomp, ceremony.*

Pompēius, **–pēī**, m., *Pompey*, the rival of Caesar.
Pompilius, **–lī**, m., *Numa Pompilius*, the second king of Rome.
pōmum, **–ī**, n., *fruit.*
pōnō, **–ere**, **posuī**, **positus**, *to put, to place, to set;* **castra pōnere**, *to pitch camp.*
pōns, **pontis**, m., *bridge.*
Pontius, **–tī**, m., *Pontius*, see Telesīnus.
Pontus, **–ī**, m., *Pontus*, a country in Asia Minor south of the Black Sea.
poposcī, perf. of **poscō**.
populus, **–ī**, m., *people.*
Porsenna, **–ae**, m., *Porsenna*, a king of Etruria.
porta, **–ae**, f., *gate.*
portō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to carry.*
portus, **–ūs**, m., *port, harbor.*
poscō, **–ere**, **popōscī**, —, *to demand.*
positus, past part. of **pōnō**.
possum, **posse**, **potuī**, —, *to be able, can.*
possunt, third pers. pl. pres. ind. of **possum**.
post, prep. (with acc.), *after.*
post, adv., *after, later;* **nōn multō post tempore**, *a short time later;* **quattuor post annīs**, *four years after;* **paulō post**, *a little later.*
posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
posterī, **–ōrum**, m. pl., *descendants, posterity.*
(posterus), **–a**, **–um**, adj., *next.*
postquam, conj., *as soon as, when, after.*
postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally.*
postulō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to ask for.*
Postumius, **–mī**, m., *Postumius*, the name of a Roman *gēns* or *clan.*
posuī, perf. of **pōnō**.
potēns, gen. **–entis**, adj., *powerful.*
potentia, **–ae**, f., *power.*
poterant, past of **possum**.
potestās, **–ātis**, f., *power;* **in potestātem redigere**, *to take prisoner;* **in potestātem venīre**, *to fall into the hands of.*
prae, prep. (with abl.), *before.*
praebeō, **–ēre**, **–uī**, **–itus**, *to offer, to pay;* **sē praebēre**, *to show one's self.*
praecessī, perf. of **praecēdō**.
praecēdō, **–ere**, **–cessī**, **–cessus**, *to go before, to precede, to excel.*
praeda, **–ae**, f., *booty, prey.*
praedō, **–ōnis**, m., *booty, robber.*
praefectus, **–ī**, m., *commander.*
praeferō, **–ferre**, **–tulī**, **–lātus**, *to bear before, to carry before.*
praelātus, past part. of **praeferō**.
praemium, **–mī**, n., *reward.*
praenōmen, **–inis**, n., *first name.*
praepōnō, **–ere**, **–posuī**, **–positus**, *to put before, to prefer.*
praesidium, **–dī**, n., *garrison.*
praestō, **–āre**, **–stitī**, **–stitus**, *to excel, to pay, to grant, to make.*
praeter, prep. (with acc.), *except.*
praetōrius, **–rī**, m., *former praetor* (a Roman magistrate next in rank to the consul).

prātum, –ī, n., *meadow.*
prāvus, –a, –um, adj., *bad, vicious.*
precēs, –um, f. pl., *prayers.*
premō, –ere, –pressī, –pressus, *to press, to pursue.*
pretiōsus, –a, –um, adj., *precious.*
pretium, –tī, n., *price, ransom.*
prīmō, adv., *at first.*
prīmum, adv., *at first, for the first time.*
prīmus, –a, –um, adj., *first.*
prīnceps, –cipis, adj., *first, foremost.*
prīnceps, –cipis, m., *chief, leader, most eminent citizen.*
prīscus, –a, –um, adj., *ancient.*
Prīscus, –ī, m., *Tarquinius Priscus* (the *Elder*), the fifth king of Rome.
priusquam, conj., *before.*
prīvātus, –a, –um, adj., *private.*
prō, prep. (with abl.), *for, in front of, instead of, in return for.*
probitās, –ātis, f., *honor, honesty.*
probus, –a, –um, adj., *honorable, honest.*
Procās, –ae, m., *Silvius Procas*, a king of Alba, father of Numitor and Amulius.
prōcēdō, –ere, –cessī, —, *to go forward, to advance.*
prōcessī, perf. of **prōcēdō**.
prōcōnsul, –is, m., *proconsul* (an ex-consul appointed as governor of a province).
procul, adv., *far.*
prōcurrō, –ere, –currī, –cursus, *to run forward, to charge.*
prōditiō, –ōnis, f., *treason.*
prōditor, –ōris, m., *traitor.*
proelium, –lī, n., *combat, battle.*
profugiō, –ere, –fūgī, —, *to flee, to escape.*
prōfuī, perf. of **prōsum**.
prōgenitor, –ōris, m., *ancestor.*
prohibeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, *to restrain, to keep away, to keep off.*
prohibitus, past part. of **prohibeō**.
prōmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, *to promise.*
prōmptus, –a, –um, adj., *prompt, quick.*
prōmunturium, –rī, n., *promontory, headland.*
prope, prep. (with acc.), *near.*
properō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to hasten.*
proprius, –a, –um, adj., *one's own.*
propter, prep. (with acc.), *because of, for.*
prōrumpō, –ere, –rūpī, –ruptus, *to burst forth.*
prōscrībō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus, *to publish, to proscribe, to exile.*
prōsperē, adv., *successfully.*
prōsperus, –a, –um, adj., *prosperous.*
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, —, *to be useful, to do good.*
prōtinus, adv., *at once.*
prōvideō, –ēre, –vīdī, –vīsus, *to foresee.*
prōvincia, –ae, f., *province.*
prūdēns, gen. –entis, adj., *foreseeing, prudent.*

prūdenter, adv., *prudently.*
prūdentia, **–ae**, f., *foresight, prudence.*
Pseudophilippus, **–ī**, m., *Pseudophilippus*, the nickname of Andriscus.
Ptolemaeus, **–ī**, m., *Ptolemy*, an Egyptian king.
pūblicus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *public.*
Pūblius, **–lī**, m., *Publius*, a Roman first name.
puella, **–ae**, f., *girl.*
puer, **puerī**, m., *boy, child.*
puerīlis, **–e**, adj., *childish, youthful.*
pueritia, **–ae**, f., *childhood.*
pugna, **–ae**, f., *battle, combat.*
pugnāns, **–antis**, pres. part. of **pugnō**.
pugnō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to fight.*
pugnus, **–ī**, m., *fist;* **pugnīs certāre**, *to box.*
pulcher, **–chra**, **–chrum**, adj., *beautiful, fine, handsome.*
pulchrē, adv., *beautifully, fine! good!*
pulsus, past part. of **pellō**.
Pūnicus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *Punic, Carthaginian.*
pūniō, **–īre**, **–īvī**, **–ītus**, *to punish.*
purpureus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *purple.*
pūrus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *pure.*
putāns, **–antis**, pres. part. of **putō**.
putō, **–āre**, **–āvī**, **–ātus**, *to think.*
Pydna, **–ae**, f., *Pydna*, a town of Macedonia.
Pȳrēnaeī montēs, m. pl., the *Pyrenees.*
Pyrrhus, **–ī**, m., *Pyrrhus*, a famous king of Epirus (western part of Greece).

Q

Q. = **Quīntus.**
quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *forty.*
quadringentēsimus, **–a**, **–um**, num. adj., *four hundredth.*
quae, see **quī** and **quis.**
quaecumque, see **quīcumque.**
quaerēns, **–entis**, pres. part. of **quaerō.**
quaerō, **–ere**, **–sīvī**, **–sītus**, *to seek, to inquire.*
quam, see **quī**, relat. pron.; and **quī**, interr. adj.
quam, adv., *how, how very! what a! than, as;* **tam . . . , quam . . . ,** *as . . . as . . .*
quandō, adv., *when?*
quantus, **–a**, **–um**, adj., *how great?*
quārtus, **–a**, **–um**, num. adj., *fourth.*
quās, see **quī** and **quis.**
quasi, adv., *as if.*
quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*
quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj., *fourteen.*
–que, enclitic particle, *and.*
quī, **quae**, **quod**, relat. pron., *who, he who, which, that, what.*
quī, **quae**, **quod**, interr. adj., *what? which?*
quia, conj., *because.*
quibus, see **quī** and **quis**; **quibuscum** = **cum quibus.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, relat. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever, any, every.*
quid, see **quis.**
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron., *somebody, something.*
quidem, adv., *indeed.*
quiēscō, –ere, –ēvī, –ētus, *to be quiet, to rest.*
quīn, conj., *why not.*
Quīnctīlis, –is, m., (the fifth month) *July.*
Quīnctius, –tī, m., *Quinctius;* see **Cincinnātus.**
quīndecim, indecl. num. adj., *fifteen.*
quīngentī, –ae, –a, num. adj., *five hundred.*
quīnquāgēsimus, –a, –um, num. adj., *fiftieth.*
quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *fifty.*
quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*
quīntus, –a, –um, num. adj., *fifth.*
Quirīnālis, –is, m., *Quirinal*, one of the hills of Rome.
quis, quid, interr. pron., *who? which one? what?*
quisque, quaeque, quodque, adj., *each.*
quisque, quidque, pron., *each one.*
quō? adv., *where?*
quod, see **quī.**
quod, conj., *because.*
quōmodo, adv., *how?*
quondam, adv., *once, formerly.*
quoque, adv., *also, too.*
quōs, see **quī** and **quis.**
quot, indecl., *how many? as many.*
quotiēns, adv., *as often as, whenever.*

R

rāna, –ae, f., *frog.*
rapiō, –ere, –puī, –ptus, *to snatch, to steal, to carry off.*
rebellō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to revolt, to renew a war.*
recēdō, –ere, –cessī, —, *to go back, to withdraw.*
recēns, gen. **–entis**, adj., *recent.*
recēpī, perf. of **recipiō.**
receptus, past part. of **recipiō.**
recessī, perf. of **recēdō.**
recipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, *to receive, to welcome, to recover, to take back;* **sē recipere**, *to withdraw.*
recognōscō, –ere, –nōvī, –nitus, *to recognize, to identify.*
recreō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to make again, to revive.*
rēctē, adv., *rightly, all right!*
rēctus, –a, –um, adj., *right, good.*
reddō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *to give back, to return, to pay, to pay back.*
reddidī, perf. of **reddō.**
redēgī, perf. of **redigō.**
redeō, –īre, –iī, –itus, *to go back, to return, to begin again.*
rediēns, –entis, pres. part. of **redeō.**
redigō, –ere, –ēgī, –āctus, *to drive back, to force, to bring back;* **in potestātem redigere**, *to take prisoner.*

rediī, perf. of **redeō**.
redīre, see **redeō**.
redūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *to lead back.*
refluēns, **-entis**, pres. part. of **refluō**.
refluō, **-ere**, —, —, *to flow back, to recede.*
rēgīna, **-ae**, f., *queen.*
regiō, **-ōnis**, f., *region, district.*
rēgius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *kingly, regal, royal.*
rēgnāns, **-antis**, pres. part. of **rēgnō**.
rēgnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to reign, to rule.*
rēgnum, **-ī**, n., *reign, throne, kingdom.*
Rēgulus, **-ī**, m., *Regulus*; see **Atīlius**.
reiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *to throw back, to throw aside.*
reiectus, past part. of **reiciō**.
religiō, **-ōnis**, f., *religion.*
religiōsus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *religious.*
relinquō, **-ere**, **-līquī**, **-lictus**, *to leave.*
reliquus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *remaining, other.*
remaneō, **-ēre**, **-mānsī**, —, *to remain.*
remōtus, past part. of **removeō**.
removeō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, *to remove, to withdraw, to take away.*
rēmus, **-ī**, m., *oar.*
Remus, **-ī**, m., *Remus*, the brother of Romulus.
renovō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to renew.*
renūntiō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to give up.*
reparō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to renew.*
repente, adv., *suddenly.*
reperiō, **-īre**, **repperī**, **repertus**, *to find.*
repetītiō, **-ōnis**, f., *repetition.*
repetō, **-ere**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, *to demand back, to claim.*
repleō, **-ēre**, **-ēvī**, **-ētus**, *to fill.*
repōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, *to put back, to restore, to give back.*
reposuī, perf. of **repōnō**.
repperī, perf. of **reperiō**.
repudiō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to repudiate.*
rēs, **reī**, f., *thing, affair, war;* **rēs mīlitāris**, *warfare;* **rēs pūblica**, *republic;* **rēs novae**, *revolution.*
resistō, **-ere**, **-stitī**, —, *to stand against, to resist.*
respergō, **-ere**, **-sī**, **-sus**, *to stain.*
respersus, past part. of **respergō**.
respondeō, **-ēre**, **-spondī**, **-spōnsus**, *to answer.*
respōnsum, **-ī**, n., *answer.*
restituō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, *to restore, to send back, to renew.*
retineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus**, *to retain, to keep back.*
revellō, **-ere**, **-vellī**, **-vulsus**, *to pull back, to wrest.*
reverentia, **-ae**, f., *respect.*
rēx, **rēgis**, m., *king.*
Rhea, **-ae**, f., *Rhea*, mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, –ī, m., the *Rhine.*
Rhodanus, –ī, m., the *Rhone.*
rīdēns, –**entis**, pres. part. of **rīdeō.**
rīdeō, –**ēre**, **rīsī**, **rīsus**, *to laugh.*
rīpa, –**ae**, f., *bank* (of a river).
rīsī, perf. of **rīdeō.**
rōbur, –**oris**, n., *strength;* **rōbur mīlitum**, *the flower of the soldiers.*
rōdō, –**ere**, **rōsī**, **rōsus**, *to gnaw, to cut.*
rogō, –**āre**, –**āvī**, –**ātus**, *to ask, to beg for.*
Rōma, –**ae**, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānī, –**ōrum**, m. pl., the *Romans.*
Rōmānus, –**a**, –**um**, adj., *Roman.*
Rōmulus, –ī, m., *Romulus*, the founder and first king of Rome.
rosa, –**ae**, f., *rose.*
rōstrum, –ī, n., *beak, bill.*
ruīna, –**ae**, f., *ruin.*
rumpō, –**ere**, **rūpī**, **ruptus**, *to break, to break down.*
rūpēs, –**is**, f., *cliff, rock.*
ruptus, past part. of **rumpō.**
rūs, **rūris**, n., *country* (as distinguished from the city).
rūsticus, –**a**, –**um**, adj., *rural, country.*
rūsticus, –ī, m., *peasant.*

S

Sabīnī, –**ōrum**, m. pl., the *Sabines*, an Italian people.
Sabīnus, –**a**, –**um**, adj., *Sabine.*
sacer, –**cra**, –**crum**, adj., *sacred.*
sacerdōs, –**ōtis**, m., *priest.*
sacra, f. of **sacer.**
sacrificium, –**cī**, n., *sacrifice.*
saepe, adv., *often.*
sagitta, –**ae**, f., *arrow.*
Saguntīnī, –**ōrum**, m. pl., the *Saguntines*, inhabitants of Saguntum.
Saguntum, –ī, n., *Saguntum*, a city of eastern Spain.
sāl, **salis**, m., *salt.*
saltō, –**āre**, –**āvī**, –**ātus**, *to dance.*
salūs, –**ūtis**, f., *safety.*
salūtāns, –**antis**, pres. part. of **salūtō.**
salūtō, –**āre**, –**āvī**, –**ātus**, *to salute, to greet.*
salvē (imper. of **salveō**), *greetings! hail!*
salveō, –**ēre**, —, —, *to be in good health.*
salvus, –**a**, –**um**, adj., *safe, unharmed.*
Samnītēs, –**ium**, m. pl., the *Samnites*, a people of central Italy.
sanguis, –**inis**, m., *blood.*
sānus, –**a**, –**um**, adj., *sane, sound, healthy.*
Sardinia, –**ae**, f., *Sardinia*, an island in the Mediterranean.
satis, adv., *enough.*
Sāturnia, –**ae**, f., *Saturnia*, an Italian town, according to tradition, founded by Saturn.
Sāturnus, –ī, m., *Saturn*, father of Jupiter.
saxum, –ī, n., *rock, bowlder.*
Scaevola, –**ae**, m., *Scaevola* (left-handed), a heroic young Roman.

scelerātus, -a, -um, adj., *accursed.*
scelestus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked.*
scelus, -eris, n., *wicked act, crime.*
schola, -ae, f., *school.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, science.*
sciō, -īre, -scīvī, scītus, *to know.*
Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., *Scipio*, the name of a famous Roman family belonging to the Cornelian clan.
scrība, -ae, m., *secretary, clerk.*
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write.*
scrīptum, -ī, n., *written word.*
scrīptus, past part. of **scrībō**.
sculptor, -ōris, m., *sculptor.*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*
sē, refl. pron., *one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *to go apart, to withdraw, to retire.*
sēcessī, perf. of **sēcēdō**.
secundus, -a, -um, adj., *second.*
secūris, -is, f., *ax.*
sēcūrus, -a, -um, adj., *secure.*
sed, conj., *but;* **sed etiam**, *but also.*
sēdecim, indecl. num. adj., *sixteen.*
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, —, *to sit.*
sēdēs, -is, f., *seat.*
sēditiō, -ōnis, f., *sedition, insurrection.*
semel, adv., *once.*
sēmibarbarus, -a, -um, adj., *half barbarian.*
semper, adv., *always.*
Sēna, -ae, f., *Sena*, a town of Picenum in Italy.
senātor, -ōris, m., *senator.*
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*
Seneca, -ae, m., *Seneca*, a Roman surname.
senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age.*
senex, senis, m., *old man.*
seniōrēs, -um, m. pl., *elder men.*
sēnsus, -ūs, m., *opinion.*
sententia, -ae, f., *feeling, thought, opinion.*
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to feel, to think.*
sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultus, *to bury.*
septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven.*
September, -bris, m., *September.*
septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventh.*
septingentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seven hundredth.*
septuāgēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventieth.*
septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *seventy.*
sepulcrum, -ī, n., *grave, tomb.*
sepultus, past part. of **sepeliō**.
Sēquanī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Sequanians*, a Gallic people.
sermō, -ōnis, m., *conversation.*
serva, -ae, f., *female slave.*
Servius, -vī, m., *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome.
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to save, to rescue, to keep.*
servus, -ī, m., *slave.*
sescentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *six hundredth.*
sēsē, see **sē**.

sevērus, -a, -um, adj., *severe, stern.*
sex, indecl. num. adj., *six.*
sexāgēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *sixtieth.*
sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*
Sextīlis, -is, m., (sixth month) *August.*
sextus, -a, -um, num. adj., *sixth;* **sextus decimus**, *sixteen.*
sī, conj., *if.*
sibi, see **sē**.
sīc, adv., *thus, so.*
siccum, -ī, n., *dry land.*
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*, an island in the Mediterranean.
signum, -ī, n., *sign.*
silentium, -tī, n., *silence.*
silva, -ae, f., *forest.*
Silvia, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, mother of Romulus and Remus.
Silvius, -vī, m., *Silvius Procas*, a king of Alba.
similis, -e, adj., *similar, like.*
Simōnidēs, -is, m., *Simonides*, a Greek lyric poet, born in the island of Ceos.
simul, adv., *at the same time.*
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to feign, to pretend;* **morbum simulāre**, *to pretend to be sick.*
sine, prep. (with abl.), *without.*
singulāris, -e, adj., *single, remarkable, extraordinary.*
singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *single, one at a time.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, left-hand.*
socia, -ae, f., *ally.*
societās, -ātis, f., *society.*
socius, -cī, m., *ally, partner, companion.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *to be accustomed.*
sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *alone, sole, single, only.*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *to loosen, to let down.*
somnium, -nī, n., *dream.*
sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise.*
sonus, -ī, m., *sound, noise.*
soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*
Spartacus, -ī, m., *Spartacus*, a leader in the war of the gladiators.
spectāculum, -ī, n., *spectacle, show.*
spectātor, -ōris, m., *looker-on, spectator.*
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to look at.*
speculātor, -ōris, m., *spy.*
spēlunca, -ae, f., *cave, den, lair.*
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to hope.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope.*
spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to breathe.*
spolium, -lī, n., *spoil, booty.*
spōnsus, -ī, m., *betrothed* (man).
Spurius, -rī, m., *Spurius*, a Roman first name.
stabulum, -ī, n., *stable.*
statim, adv., *at once, immediately.*
statiō, -ōnis, f., *post.*
statua, -ae, f., *statue.*
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *to put in place, to decide.*

statūra, **-ae**, f., *height.*
status, **-ūs**, m., *state.*
stella, **-ae**, f., *star.*
sternō, **-ere**, **strāvī**, **strātus**, *to level, to construct.*
stetī, perf. of **stō**.
stīpendium, **-dī**, n., *pay.*
stō, **-āre**, **stetī**, **status**, *to stand, to remain standing.*
strangulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to strangle.*
strāvī, perf. of **sternō**.
strēnuē, adv., *vigorously, bravely.*
strigōsus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *lean, meager.*
studium, **-dī**, n., *zeal, study.*
stultitia, **-ae**, f., *foolishness.*
stultus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *foolish.*
stupeō, **-ēre**, **stupuī**, —, *to be stunned, to be aghast.*
sua, f. of **suus**.
suādeō, **-ēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsus**, *to advise, to urge.*
suāsit, perf. of **suādeō**.
sub, prep. (with abl. or acc.), *under.*
subdūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *to lead away, to carry off.*
subēgī, perf. of **subigō**.
subiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *to subject.*
subigō, **-ere**, **-ēgī**, **-āctus**, *to conquer, to subdue.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
Sublicius, adj., *Sublicius*, name of an old Roman bridge.
subrīdēns, **-entis**, pres. part. of **subrīdeō**.
subrīdeō, **-ēre**, **-rīsī**, —, *to smile, to grin.*
subsidium, **-dī**, n., *help, reinforcements.*
subtrahō, **-ere**, **-trāxī**, **-trāctus**, *to withdraw, to refuse.*
subvolō, **-āre**, —, —, *to fly up.*
succēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessus**, *to follow, to succeed.*
successī, perf. of **succēdō**.
suī, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
Sulla, **-ae**, m., *Sulla*, the rival of Marius.
sum, **esse**, **fuī**, —, *to be.*
summus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *highest, greatest.*
sūmō, **-ere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**, *to take, to eat.*
sūmpsī, perf. of **sūmō**.
sumus, **sunt**, see **sum**.
super, prep. (with acc.), *on, upon, over.*
superbia, **-ae**, f., *arrogance.*
superbus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *haughty, proud.*
Superbus, **-ī**, m., *Tarquinius Superbus*, Tarquin the Proud, the seventh and last king of Rome.
superfuit, perf. of **supersum**.
superō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to overcome, to defeat.*
supersum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, —, *to be left, to survive.*
supplex, **-icis**, m., *suppliant.*
supplicium, **-cī**, n., *punishment, torture, execution.*
suprēmus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *highest.*
suscēpī, perf. of **suscipiō**.
suscipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**, *to undertake, to seize, to engage in, to begin, to incur.*

sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, *to sustain, to withstand.*
suus, –a, –um, poss. adj. and pron., *his, her, its, one's, their; his, hers, its, theirs.*
Syphāx, –ācis, m., *Syphax,* a king of Numidia.
Syrācūsae, –ārum, f. pl., *Syracuse,* a famous city in Sicily.
Syria, –ae, f., *Syria* (western Asia).
Syriacus, –a, –um, adj., *Syrian.*

T

T. = **Titus.**
tabula, –ae, f., *writing-tablet, map, sign.*
talentum, –ī, n., *talent* (a Grecian standard value, worth now in gold over $1100).
tālis, –e, adj., *such, of such a kind.*
tam, adv., *so, as;* **tam . . . quam,** *as . . . as.*
tamen, adv., *however.*
tandem, adv., *at last.*
tangō, –ere, tetigī, tāctus, *to touch.*
tantus, –a, –um, adj., *so great, such;* **tantō** (with compar.), *so much, all the.*
tarditās, –ātis, f., *slowness.*
tardus, –a, –um, adj., *slow.*
Tarentīnī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Tarentines,* the inhabitants of Tarentum.
Tarentum, –ī, n., *Tarentum,* a famous city in southern Italy.
Tarpeia, –ae, f., *Tarpeia,* the betrayer of the citadel at Rome.
Tarpeius, –a, –um, adj., *Tarpeian.*
Tarquiniī, –ōrum, m. pl., *Tarquinii,* an Etruscan town.
Tarquinius, –nī, m., *Tarquin,* a name of Etruscan origin.
taurus, –ī, m., *bull.*
Taurus, –ī, m., *Taurus,* a range of mountains in Asia.
tē, see **tū**; **tēcum,** *with you.*
Telesīnus, –ī, m., *Pontius Telesinus,* leader of the Samnites.
tempestās, –ātis, f., *storm.*
templum, –ī, n., *temple, shrine.*
tempora, tempore, see **tempus.**
temptō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to try.*
tempus, –oris, n., *time, circumstance.*
teneō, –ēre, tenuī, —, *to hold, to keep;* **(in) memoriā tenēre,** *to remember.*
tentō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to attempt, to try.*
Terentius, –tī, m., *Terentius,* name of a Roman clan.
tergum, –ī, n., *back, rear;* **ā tergō,** *in the rear.*
terra, –ae, f., *land;* **terrā marīque,** *on land and sea.*
terreō, –ēre, –uī, –itus, *to frighten.*
terror, –ōris, m., *terror, great fear.*
tertius, –a, –um, num., adj., *third.*
testāmentum, –ī, n., *last will.*
Teutobochus, –ī, m., *Teutobochus,* the leader of the Cimbri.
Teutonī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Teutons.*

Thēbānī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Thebans.*

Themis, –idis, f., *Themis*, goddess of justice and prophecy.

Thessalia, –ae, f., *Thessaly*, a country north of Greece.

Tiberis, –is, m., *Tiber.*

tibi, see **tū.**

Tīcīnus, –ī, m., *Ticinus*, a tributary of the Po, scene of a victory of Hannibal.

Tigrānēs, –is, m., *Tigranes*, a king of Armenia Major.

Tigrānocerta, –ōrum, n. pl., *Tigranocerta*, a city of Armenia Major.

timeō, –ēre, –uī, —, *to fear.*

timidus, –a, –um, adj., *timid, shy.*

Titus, –ī, m., *Titus*, a Roman first name.

toga, –ae, f., *toga.*

tollō, –ere, sustulī, sublātus, *to lift up, to take.*

tondeō, –ēre, totondī, tōnsus, *to trim, to clip.*

tōnsor, –ōris, m., *barber.*

Torquātus, –ī, m., *Torquatus*, surname of Titus Manlius.

torquis, –is, m., *necklace.*

tot, adj. (indecl.), *so many.*

tōtus, –a, –um, adj., *all, whole.*

trabs, –bis, f., *beam.*

tractō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to treat, to drag along.*

trādō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *to hand over, to surrender;* **sē trādere**, *to surrender.*

tragicus, –a, –um, adj., *tragic.*

trahō, –ere, trāxī, tractus, *to drag, to lead, to take along, to prolong.*

trāiciō, –ere, –iēcī, –iectus, *to throw across, to cross.*

trānō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to swim across.*

trāns, prep. (with acc.), *across, beyond, through.*

trānsēgī, perf. of **trānsigō.**

trānseō, –īre, –iī, –itus, *to pass by, to cross, to go over, to desert.*

trānsferō, –ferre, –tulī, –lātus, *to carry across, to transfer.*

trānsfīgō, –ere, –fīxī, –fīxus, *to pierce, to stab.*

trānsfīxī, perf. of **trānsfīgō.**

trānsigō, –ere, –ēgī, –āctus, *to spend.*

trānsiliō, –īre, –uī, —, *to leap over.*

trānsiī, perf. of **trānseō.**

trānslātus, past part. of **trānsferō.**

trānsmarīnus, –a, –um, adj., *beyond the sea.*

trānstulī, perf. of **trānsferō.**

Trasimennus, –ī, m., *Trasimenus*, a lake in Etruria, scene of a victory of Hannibal.

Trebia, –ae, f., *Trebia*, a tributary of the Po, scene of a victory of Hannibal.

trecentēsimus, –a, –um, num. adj., *three hundredth.*

trecentī, –ae, –a, num. adj., *three hundred.*

tredecim, indecl. num. adj., *thirteen.*

trepidō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to tremble.*

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.*

tria, see **trēs**.
tribūnal, **-ālis**, n., *tribunal*.
tribūnus, **-ī**, m., *tribune, representative*.
tribuō, **-ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, *to allot, to give, to attribute*.
tribūtum, **-ī**, n., *tax*.
trīcēsimus, **-a**, **-um**, num. adj., *thirtieth*.
trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty*.
trīstis, **-e**, adj., *sad*.
trīstitia, **-ae**, f., *sadness*.
triumphāns, **-antis**, pres. part. of **triumphō**.
triumphō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to triumph* (i.e., to enter Rome in triumph after a successful campaign).
triumphus, **-ī**, m., *triumph*.
triumvirī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *triumvirs*, board of three commissioners who were occasionally *dictators*.
Trōia, **-ae**, f., *Troy*, a famous city in Asia.
Trōiānī, **-orum**, m. pl., the *Trojans*.
tū, pers. pron., *you* (singular).
tua, f. of **tuus**.
tuba, **-ae**, f., *trumpet*.
tulī, perf. of **ferō**.
Tullia, **-ae**, f., *Tullia*, the daughter of Servius Tullius.
Tullius, **-lī**, m., *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome; also, a member of the Tullian clan.
Tullus, **-ī**, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the third king of Rome.
tum, adv., *then*.
tumultus, **-ūs**, m., *tumult*.
tunc, adv., *then*.
turba, **-ae**, f., *crowd, mob*.
turbō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *to disturb*.
turpis, **-e**, adj., *shameful*.
turpiter, adv., *shamefully*.
tūtor, **-ōris**, m., *tutor, guardian*.
tūtus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *safe;* **tūta**, **-ōrum**, n. pl., *safe things, what is safe*.
tuus, **-a**, **-um**, poss. adj. and pron., *your, yours*.
tyrannicē, adv., *tyrannically*.
tyrannus, **-ī**, m., *tyrant*.

U

U. C. = **urbis conditae**.
ubi, adv., *where*.
ubi, conj., *when, as soon as*.
ulterior, **-ius**, adj. *farther*.
ultimus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *farthest, last*.
ultrā, prep. (with acc.), *beyond*.
umbra, **-ae**, f., *shade*.
umerus, **-ī**, m., *shoulder*.
umquam, adv., *ever*.
ūndecim, indecl. num. adj., *eleven*.
ūndēquīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *forty-nine*.
undique, adv., *from all parts, on all sides*.
unguis, **-is**, m., *claw, talon*.
ūnicus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *unique, only*.
ūnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *one, a single*.
urbs, **-is**, f., *town, city*.
ūrō, **-ere**, **ūssī**, **ustus**, *to burn*.

usque, adv., *as far as, all the way.*
ūsus, –ūs, m., *use.*
ut, conj., *that, so that, as.*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, pron., *either, both.*
ūtilis, –e, adj., *useful, advantageous.*
utrīusque, gen. of **uterque.**
utrumque, see **uterque.**
uxor, uxōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacca, –ae, f., *cow.*
vacuus, –a, –um, adj., *empty, vacant.*
vādō, –ere, —, —, *to go.*
vae, interj., *woe!*
valē (imper. of **valeō**), *farewell, good-bye.*
valeō, –ēre, –uī, —, *to be strong, to be well.*
Valerius, –rī, m., *Valerius*, the name of a Roman clan.
vāllum, –ī, n., *rampart.*
valor, –ōris, m., *value.*
varius, –a, –um, adj., *various, varied, different.*
Varrō, –ōnis, m., *C. Terentius Varro*, a Roman general defeated by Hannibal.
vās, vāsis, n., *vessel, dish.*
vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to devastate, to lay waste.*
vāstus, –a, –um, adj., *vast, immense.*
vector, –ōris, m., *passenger.*
vehemēns, gen. –entis, adj., *eager, impetuous.*
vehementer, adv., *impetuously.*
vehō, –ere, **vexī**, **vectus**, *to bear, to carry;* (passive), *to sail.*
Vēientēs, –um, m. pl., the *Veientians*, inhabitants of Veii, a town in central Italy.
vel, adv., *or.*
vellus, –eris, n., *wool, fleece.*
vēlōx, gen. –ōcis, adj., *swift, quick.*
vēndō, –ere, –didī, –ditus, *to sell.*
venēnum, –ī, n., *poison.*
venia, –ae, f., *pardon.*
veniō, –īre, **vēnī**, **ventus**, *to come.*
venter, –tris, m., *belly, stomach.*
ventus, –ī, m., *wind.*
verbera, –erum, n. pl., *lashes, blows.*
verberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to beat.*
verbum, –ī, n., *word.*
verēcundus, –a, –um, adj., *respectful.*
Vergilius, –lī, m., *Virgil*, a great Roman epic poet.
vēritās, –ātis, f., *truth.*
vērō, adv., *indeed, truly.*
Vērōna, –ae, f., *Verona*, a city in northern Italy.
versiculus, –ī, m., *little line.*
vertō, –ere, **vertī**, **versus**, *to turn*; **terga vertere**, *to flee.*
vērum, –ī, n., *truth.*
vērus, –a, –um, adj., *true.*
vesper, –erī or –eris, m., *evening.*
vester, –tra, –trum, poss. adj. and pron., *your, yours.*
vēstīgium, –gī, n., *footprint.*
vestīmentum, –ī, n., *clothing, garment.*

vestis, –is, f., *clothes, garment.*
vetō, –āre, –uī, –itus, *to forbid.*
Veturia, –ae, f., *Veturia,* mother of Coriolanus.
Veturius, –rī, m., *Titus Veturius,* a Roman general defeated by the Samnites.
vexō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to disturb, to worry.*
via, –ae, f., *way, road.*
vīcēsimus, –a, –um, num. adj., *twentieth.*
vīcī, perf. of **vincō.**
vīcīna, –ae, f., (female) *neighbor.*
vīcīnus, –a, –um, adj., *neighboring.*
vīcīnus, –ī, m., *neighbor.*
vīctī, –ōrum, m. pl., *the vanquished.*
victima, –ae, f., *victim.*
victor, –ōris, m., *victor.*
victōria, –ae, f., *victory.*
victus, past part. of **vincō.**
vīcus, –ī, m., *hamlet.*
vidēns, –entis, pres. part. of **videō.**
videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see, to look at;* (passive), *to be seen, to seem.*
vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty.*
villa, –ae, f., *farm house.*
Vīminālis, –is, m., *Viminal,* one of the hills of Rome.
vinciō, –īre, vīnxī, vīnctus, *to tie, to bind.*
vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus, *to vanquish, to defeat.*
vīnctus, past part. of **vinciō.**
vincula, –ōrum, n. pl., *fetters, chains, prison.*
vindex, –icis, m., *avenger, defender.*
vindicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to avenge.*
vīnum, –ī, n., *wine.*
vīpera, –ae, f., *viper.*
vir, –ī, m., *man.*
vīrēs, pl. of **vīs.**
virī, see **vir.**
Viriāthus, –ī, m., *Viriathus,* a general of the Lusitanians.
virga, –ae, f., *twig, switch.*
Virginia, –ae, f., *Virginia.*
Virginius, –nī, m., *Virginius.*
virgō, –inis, f., *maiden.*
virtūs, –ūtis, f., *manliness, courage, virtue.*
vīs, vīs, f., *strength, force;* **vīrēs, vīrium,** pl., *strength, forces.*
vīsus, past part. of **videō.**
vīta, –ae, f., *life.*
vitiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to spoil.*
vitium, –tī, n., *flaw, vice.*
vītō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to avoid.*
vīvō, –ere, vīxī, —, *to live.*
vīvus, –a, –um, adj., *living.*
vīxī, perf. of **vīvō.**
vōbīs, see **vōs;** **vōbīscum,** *with you.*
vocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to call.*
volēbat, past of **volō, velle.**
volō, velle, voluī, —, *to wish, to want.*
volō, –āre, –āvī, —, *to fly.*
Volscī, –ōrum, m. pl., the *Volscians,* a people of central Italy.
voluērunt, voluit, perf. of **volō, velle.**
Volumnia, –ae, f., *Volumnia,* wife of Coriolanus.

vōs, pers. pron., *you*.
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice*.
vulnerō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, *to wound*.
vulnus, –eris, n., *wound*.
vulpēs, –is, f., *fox*.
vult, third pers. sing. pres. ind. of **volō, velle**.
vultus, –ūs, m., *face*.

X

Xantippus, –ī, m., *Xantippus*, a Lacedaemonian general.

Z

Zama, –ae, f., *Zama*, a city of Africa, scene of Hannibal's final defeat.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

a, an, omitted.
about, *dē*, with abl.
absent: **to be absent**, *absum, abesse, āfuī*, —.
abundance, *cōpia, -ae*, f.
acquainted: **to become acquainted with**, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.*
advance, *prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī*, —.
aid, *iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus.*
alarm, *commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
all, *omnis, -e.*
all right, *rēctē.*
alliance: **to make a treaty of alliance**, or **to form an alliance**, *amīcitiam cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
ally, *socius, -cī*, m.
also, *quoque.*
always, *semper.*
ambassador, *lēgātus, -ī*, m.
among, *inter*, with acc.
an, omitted.
ancient, *antīquus, -a, -um.*
and, *et, -que.*
anger, *īra, -ae*, f.
angry, *īrātus, -a, -um.*
animal, *animal, -ālis*, n.
announce, *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
appease, *pāco, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
arms, *arma, -ōrum*, n. pl.
army, *exercitus, -ūs*, m.
arrival, *adventus, -ūs*, m.
arrive, *perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.*
art, *ars, artis*, f.
ask (for), *petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.*
assemble, *conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.*
at, abl. case.
attribute, *tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.*
audacious, *audāx*, gen. *-ācis.*
away: **to be away**, *absum, abesse, āfuī*, —.

B

bad, *malus, -a, -um.*
badge, *īnsigne, -is*, n.
badly, *male.*
bank, *rīpa, -ae*, f.
battle, *proelium, -lī*, n.; **line of battle**, *aciēs, aciēī*, f.
be, *sum, esse, fuī*, —.
beautiful, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum.*
because, *quod.*
because of, abl. of cause.
become acquainted with, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.*
bed, *cubīle, -is*, n.
begin, *coepī, coeptus.*

beseech, *ōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
between, *inter*, with acc.
bitter, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
black, *niger, –gra, –grum.*
boat, *nāvis, –is*, f.
body, *corpus, –oris*, n.
bold, *audāx*, gen. *–ācis.*
book, *liber, –brī*, m.
boy, *puer, puerī*, m.
brave, *fortis, –e.*
bravely, *fortiter.*
bravery, *virtūs, –ūtis*, f.
bread, *pānis, –is*, m.
break up camp, *castra moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus.*
bridge, *pōns, pontis*, m.
bring together, *comparō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
brother, *frāter, –tris*, m.
but, *sed.*
by, *ā* or *ab* (with abl.); abl. case.
by means of, abl. of means.

C

Caesar, *Caesar, –aris*, m.
call, *vocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus;* **call to arms**, *ad arma convocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus;* **call together**, *convocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
calm, *pācō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
camp, *castra, –ōrum*, n. pl.
capital, *caput, –itis*, n.
captive, *captīvus, –ī*, m.
capture, *capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus.*
carry, *vehō, –ere, vexī, vectus.*
Cassius, *Cassius, –sī*, m.
catch, *capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus.*
cause, *causa, –ae*, f.
cautious, *prūdēns*, gen. *–entis.*
cavalryman, *eques, –itis*, m.
celebrated, *celeber, celebris, celebre.*
celerity, *celeritās, –ātis*, f.
certain, *certus, –a, –um.*
certainly, *certē.*
change, *mūtō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
chief, *prīnceps, –cipis*, m.; *dux, –cis*, m.
children, *puerī, –ōrum*, m. pl.; *līberī, līberōrum*, m. pl.
choose, *dēligō, –ere, –lēgī, lēctus.*
Cicero, *Cicerō, –ōnis*, m.
circle, *orbis, –is*, m.
citizen, *cīvis, –is*, m.
city, *urbs, urbis*, f.
combat, *proelium, –lī*, n.
come, *veniō, –īre, vēnī, ventus.*
conquer, *vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus.*
consul, *cōnsul, –ulis*, m.
cottage, *casa, –ae*, f.
country (native country), *patria, –ae*, f.
courage, *virtūs, –ūtis*, f.
courageously, *fortiter.*
cry out, *clāmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*

D

danger, *perīculum, –ī*, n.
dark, *niger, –gra, –grum.*
daughter, *fīlia, –ae*, f.
day, *diēs, diēī*, m.
deal: **a great deal of**, *multus, –a, –um.*
dear, *cārus, –a, –um.*
deed, *factum, –ī*, n.
deep, *altus, –a, –um.*
defeat, *vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus; pellō, –ere, pepulī, pulsus.*

defend, *dēfendō, –ere, –fendī, –fēnsus.*
depart, *discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus.*
depth, *altitūdō, –inis*, f.
deserve, *mereō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.*
destroy, *dēleō, –ēre, –ēvī, –ētus.*
devastate, *vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
different, *dissimilis, –e.*
difficult, *difficilis, –e.*
diligence, *dīligentia, –ae*, f.
diligent, *impiger, –gra, –grum; dīligēns*, gen. *–entis.*
diligently, *dīligenter.*
display, *ostendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus;* **display haughtiness**, *me superbum praebeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.*
disturb, *commoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus; turbō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
do (as an auxiliary, omitted); *gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus; faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus.*
dog, *canis, –is*, m.
draw up, *īnstruō, –ere, –ūxī, –ūctus.*
drive, *pellō, –ere, pepulī, pulsus.*

E

eager, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
ear, *auris, –is*, f.
easily, *facile.*
easy, *facilis, –e.*
either, *aut.*
elect, *dēligō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus.*
end, *fīnis, –is*, f.
enemy, *hostis, –is*, m.
equal, *pār*, gen. *paris.*
escape, *fuga, –ae*, f.
establish, *cōnfirmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
every, *omnis, –e.*
everywhere, *terrā marīque.*
example, *exemplum, –ī*, n.
excel in, *praecēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessus* (with abl.).
excite, *permoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus.*
expect, *exspectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
eye, *oculus, –ī*, m.

F

fact, *factum, –ī*, n.
fair, *aequus, –a, –um.*
faithful, *fīdus, –a, –um.*
fame, *fāma, –ae*, f.
famous, *nōtus, –a, –um; celeber, –bris, –bre.*
far and wide, *longē lātēque.*
farmer, *agricola, –ae*, m.
fast, *celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx*, gen. *–ōcis.*
fear, *timeō, –ēre, –uī*, —.
few or **a few**, *paucī, –ae, –a.*
field, *ager, agrī*, m.
fifty, *quīnquāgintā* (indecl.).
fight, *pugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; contendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus.*
fight, *proelium, –ī*, n.
find, *inveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus.*
finely, adv., *pulchrē.*
first, *prīmus, –a, –um.*
fish, *piscis, –is*, m.
flee, *fugiō, –ere, fūgī*, —.
flight, *fuga, –ae*, f.
fly, *fugiō, –ere, fūgī*, —.

food, *cibus, –ī*, m.
foot, *pēs, pedis*, m.
for, conj., *nam*.
for, prep., *prō* (with abl.); dat. case; (meaning *because of*), abl. case; (expressing duration of time), acc. case.
force, *vīs, vīs*, f.; *vīrēs, vīrium*, f. pl.; **military forces**, *cōpiae, –ārum*, f. pl.
force one's way into, *in* (acc.) *per vim perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus*.
forced: **to hasten by forced marches**, *magnīs itineribus contendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus*.
foresee, *prōvideō, –ēre, –vīdī, –vīsus*.
forest, *silva, –ae*, f.
form an alliance, *amīcitiam cōnfirmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus*.
fortify, *mūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus*.
free, *līberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus*.
freedom, *lībertās, –ātis*, f.
friend, *amīcus, –ī*, m.; *amīca, –ae*, f.
friendship, *amīcitia, –ae*, f.
frighten, *terreō, –ēre, –uī, –itus*.
from, *ē, ex* (with abl.); *ā, ab* (with abl.); abl. case.
fruit, *frūctus, –ūs*, m.

G

Galba, *Galba, –ae*, m.
garden, *hortus, –ī*, m.
garrison, *praesidium, –dī*, n.
gather (bring together), *comparō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus*; (come together), *conveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus*.
Gaul, *Gallia, –ae*, f.
Gauls (the), *Gallī, –ōrum*, m. pl.
general, *dux, –cis*, m.
gentle, *lēnis, –e*.
get, *obtineō, –ēre, –uī, –tentus*.
gift, *dōnum, –ī*, n.
girl, *puella, –ae*, f.
give, *dō, dare, dedī, datus*; **give one's self up to joy**, *sē gaudiō dare*.
glorious, *glōriōsus, –a, –um*.
gloriously, *glōriōsē*.
glory, *glōria, –ae*, f.
god, *deus, –ī*, m.
good, *bonus, –a, –um*; **good people**, *bonī, –ōrum*, m. pl.
grain, *frūmentum, –ī*, n.
great, *magnus, –a, –um*; **great number** (**of**), *magnus numerus*, m.; *multitūdō, –inis*, f.; *multī, –ae, –a*; **a great deal of**, *multus, –a, –um*.
Greece, *Graecia, –ae*, f.
Greek, *Graecus, –a, –um*.
guard, *cūstōdiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus*.
guest, *convīva, –ae*, m.

H

hand, *manus, –ūs*, f.
handsome, *pulcher, –chra, –chrum*.
happy, *laetus, –a, –um*; *fēlīx*, gen. *–īcis*.
harbor, *portus, –ūs*, m.
hard, adv., *graviter*.
hare, *lepus, –oris*, m.
hasten, *properō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus*; *contendō, –ere, –dī, –tentus*.

haughtiness: **display haughtiness**, *mē superbum praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
haughty, *superbus, -a, -um.*
have, *habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
he, *is;* often omitted.
head, *caput, -itis,* n.
hear, *audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
heavily, *graviter.*
heavy, *gravis, -e.*
height, *altitūdō, -inis,* f.
help, *iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus.*
help, *auxilium, -lī,* n.
her, poss. adj., *suus, -a, -um; eius.*
her, pers. pron., *eam.*
here: **to be here**, *adsum, adesse, adfuī,* —.
herself (intensive), *ipsa;* (reflexive), *sē.*
high, *altus, -a, -um.*
himself (intensive), *ipse;* (reflexive), *sē.*
hinder, *impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
his, *suus, -a, -um; eius.*
hold, *teneō, -ēre, -uī,* —; **hold back**, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
hope, *spēs, speī,* f.
Horace, *Horātius, -tī,* m.
horn, *cornū, -ūs,* n.
horse, *equus, -ī,* m.
hostage, *obses, -idis,* m.
house, *casa, -ae,* f.; *domus, -ūs,* or *-ī,* f.
huge, *vāstus, -a, -um.*

I

I, *ego;* often omitted.
if, *sī;* **if not**, *nisi.*
impetuous, *vehemēns,* gen. *-entis.*
impetuously, *vehementer.*
in, *in* (with abl.); abl. case.
industrious, *impiger, -gra, -grum; dīligēns,* gen. *-entis.*
industry, *dīligentia, -ae,* f.
infantryman, *pedes, -itis,* m.
inhabit, *incolō, -ere, -uī,* —.
inhabitant, *incola, -ae,* m.
injury, *iniūria, -ae,* f.
inquire, *quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus.*
into, *in,* with acc.
island, *īnsula, -ae,* f.
it, *is, ea, id;* often omitted.
itself (intensive), *ipsum;* (reflexive), *sē.*
Italy, *Ītalia, -ae,* f.
its, *suus, -a, -um; eius.*

J

javelin, *pīlum, -ī,* n.
journey, *iter, itineris,* n.
joy, *gaudium, -dī,* n.
joyful, *laetus, -a, -um.*
judge, *iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
judge, *iūdex, -icis,* m.
just, *aequus, -a, -um.*

K

keep, *teneō, -ēre, -uī,* —; **keep back**, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus;* **keep intact**, *cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;* **keep off**, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
kill, *interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*
kind, *genus, -eris,* n.

king, *rēx, rēgis*, m.
know, *sciō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus;* (become acquainted with), *cognōscō, –ere, –gnōvī, –gnitus.*
knowledge, *scientia, –ae*, f.

L

Labienus, *Labiēnus, –i*, m.
lack, *inopia, –ae*, f.
lady of the house, *domina, –ae*, f.
lament, *doleō, –ēre, –uī*, —.
land: **on land and sea**, *terrā marīque.*
land, (**native**), *patria, –ae*, f.
language, *lingua, –ae*, f.
large, *magnus, –a, –um.*
laugh, *rīdeō, –ēre, rīsī, rīsus.*
law, *lēx, lēgis*, f.
lay waste, *vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
lazy, *piger, –gra, –grum.*
lead, *dūcō, –ere, dūxī, ductus.*
leader, *prīnceps, –ipis*, m.; *dux, ducis*, m.
learn, *cognōscō, –ere, –gnōvī, –gnitus.*
learned, *doctus, –a, –um.*
left, *sinister, –tra, –trum.*
letter (alphabet), *littera, –ae*, f.; (epistle) *litterae, –ārum*, f. pl.
liberty, *lībertās, –ātis*, f.
lieutenant, *lēgātus, –ī*, m.
life, *vīta, –ae*, f.
like, *amō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
line of battle, *aciēs, aciēī*, f.
lion, *leō, –ōnis*, m.
listen to, *audiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.*
little, *parvus, –a, –um.*
live in, *incolō, –ere, –uī*, —.
long, *longus, –a, –um.*
lord, *dominus, –ī*, m.
love, *amō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
love, *amor, –ōris*, m.

M

make, *faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus;* **make a treaty of alliance**, *amīcitiam cōnfirmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
man (as opposed to woman), *vir, –ī*, m.; (human being), *homō, –inis*, m.
manliness, *virtūs, –ūtis*, f.
many, *multī, –ae, –a.*
map, *tabula, –ae*, f.
march, *iter faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus.*
march, *iter, itineris*, n.
master, *dominus, –ī*, m.
matters: **military matters**, *rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris*, f.
me, *mē;* see **I.**
means: **by means of**, abl. of means.
memory, *memoria, –ae*, f.
messenger, *nūntius, –tī*, m.
middle, *medius, –a, –um.*
military, *mīlitāris, –e.*
mind, *mēns, mentis*, f.
mistress, *domina, –ae*, f.
money, *pecūnia, –ae*, f.
more, *magis*; or the comparative ending, *–ior, –ius.*
most, *maximē;* or the superlative ending.
mountain, *mōns, montis*, m.
move, *moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus;* (alarm), *commoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus;* (excite), *permoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus;*

move back, *removeō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus.*
much, *multus, –a, –um.*
must, *dēbeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.*
my, *meus, –a, –um.*
myself (intensive), *ipse;* (reflexive), *mē.*

N

native land or **country**, *patria, –ae,* f.
navigate, *nāvigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
near, *prope,* with acc.
necessary, *necessārius, –a, –um.*
neighboring, *fīnitimus, –a, –um.*
never, *numquam.*
new, *novus, –a, –um.*
next, (*posterus*), *–a, –um.*
night, *nox, noctis,* f.
noble, *nōbilis, –e.*
not, *nōn;* **if not**, *nisi.*
nothing, *nihil* (indecl.).
now, *nunc.*
number, *numerus, –ī,* m.; **great** or **large number** (**of**), *magnus numerus,* m.; *multitūdō, –inis,* f.; *multī, –ae, –a.*

O

O! *Ō!*
obliged: be obliged, *dēbeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.*
obtain, *obtineō, –ēre, –uī, –tentus.*
occupy, *occupō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
Octavia, *Octāvia,* f.
of (possessive), gen. case; (about), *dē.*
offer, *praebeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.*
often, *saepe.*
oh! *Ō!*
on, *in* (with abl.); abl. case.
one: that one, *ille, illa, illud;* **the slow ones**, *tardī, –ōrum,* m. pl.
one's self, *sē.*
or, *aut.*
order, *iubeō, –ēre, iussī, iussus.*
other, (**the**), pl. *cēterī, –ae, –a.*
ought, *dēbeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.*
our, *noster, –tra, –trum.*
ourselves, *nōs.*
out of, *ē* or *ex,* with abl.
owe, *dēbeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.*
owner, *dominus, –ī,* m.

P

part, *pars, partis,* f.
peace, *pāx, pācis,* f.
penetrate, *perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus.*
peninsula, *pēnīnsula, –ae,* f.
people, *populus, –ī,* m.; **good people**, *bonī, –ōrum,* m. pl.
picture, *pictūra, –ae,* f.
pitch, *pōnō, –ere, –suī, –itus.*
place, *collocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
plain, *campus, –ī,* m.
pleasant, *grātus, –a, –um.*
plunder, *praeda, –ae,* f.
poet, *poēta, –ae,* m.
pointed, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
poor, *pauper,* gen. *–eris.*
port, *portus, –ūs,* m.
powerful, *potēns,* gen. *–entis.*
praise, *laudō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
pray, *ōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
prepare, *parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*

present: **be present**, *adsum, adesse, adfuī*, —.
press, *premō, -ere, pressī, pressus.*
prevent, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
prisoner, *captīvus, -ī*, m.
prompt, *addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
protect, *dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.*
proud, *superbus, -a, -um.*
province, *prōvincia, -ae*, f.
prudence (**with**), *prūdenter.*
prudent, *prūdēns*, gen. *-entis.*
prudently, *prūdenter.*
public, *pūblicus, -a, -um.*
punish, *pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
pupil, *discipulus, -ī*, m.; *discipula, -ae*, f.
put, *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*

Q

queen, *rēgīna, -ae*, f.
quick, *celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx*, gen. *-ōcis.*
quickly, *celeriter;* **very quickly**, *celerrimē;* (*cum*) *magnā celeritāte.*
quickness, *celeritās, -ātis*, f.
quiet, *pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

R

rampart, *vāllum, -ī*, n.
reach, *perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus* (with *ad* or *in* and acc.).
read, *legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus.*
receive, *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
recent, *recēns*, gen. *-entis.*
rejoice, *gaudeō, -ēre, —, gāvīsus.*
relate, *nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
remember, (*in*) *memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī*, —.
republic, *rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae*, f.
rescue, *servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
resist, *resistō, -ere, -stitī*, —.
retain, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
revolution, *rēs novae, rērum novārum*, f. pl.
reward, *praemium, -mī*, n.
right, *rēctus, -a, -um;* (side), *dexter, -tra, -trum;* **all right**, *rēctē.*
river, *flūmen, -inis*, n.
road, *via, -ae*, f.; *iter, itineris*, n.
Roman, *Rōmānus, -a, -um.*
Romans (the), *Rōmānī, -ōrum*, m. pl.
Rome, *Rōma, -ae*, f.
Romulus, *Rōmulus, -ī*, m.
rose, *rosa, -ae*, f.

S

sacred, *sacer, -cra, -crum.*
sad, *trīstis, -e.*
sadness, *trīstitia, -ae*, f.
safe, *tūtus, -a, -um.*
safety, *salūs, -ūtis*, f.
sail, *nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vehor, vehī, vectus, -a, -um, sum.*
sailor, *nauta, -ae*, m.
save, *servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
say, *dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.*
science, *scientia, -ae*, f.
sea, *mare, maris*, n.; **on land and sea**, *terrā marīque.*

see, *videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus.*
seek, *petō, –ere, –īvī, –ītus.*
seize, *capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus.*
–self, *ipse, –a, –um.*
senate, *senātus, –ūs,* m.
send, *mittō, –ere, mīsī, missus.*
set on fire, *incendō, –ere, –cendī, –cēnsus.*
shade, *umbra, –ae,* f.
shall, expressed by the future tense.
shameful, *turpis, –e.*
sharp, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
sharply, *ācriter.*
she, *ea.*
ship, *nāvis, –is,* f.
short, *brevis, –e;* **in a short time**, *brevī,* or *brevī tempore.*
shout, *clāmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
show, *mōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; praebeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus; ostendō, –ere, –tendī, –tentus.*
shy, *timidus, –a, –um.*
sign, *signum, –ī,* n.
signal, *signum, –ī,* n.
similar, *similis, –e.*
sing (of), *cantō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
skillful, *perītus, –a, –um.*
slave, *servus, –ī,* m.; *serva, –ae,* f.
sleep, *dormiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.*
slow, *lentus, –a, –um; tardus, –a, –um.*
slowly, *lentē.*
small, *parvus, –a, –um.*
snatch (away), *ēripiō, –ere, –uī, –reptus.*
soft, *lēnis, –e.*
soldier, *mīles, –itis,* m.
son, *fīlius, –lī,* m.
soothe, *pācō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
sorrow, *trīstitia, –ae,* f.
sorry: be sorry for, *dōleō, –ēre, –uī, —.*
sort, *genus, –eris,* n.
sound, *integer, –gra, –grum.*
speak the truth, *vērum dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus.*
spear, *hasta, –ae,* f.
speed, *celeritās, –ātis,* f.
spur, *calcar, –āris,* n.
stag, *cervus, –ī,* m.
standard, *īnsigne, –is,* n.
star, *stella, –ae,* f.
state, *cīvitās, –ātis,* f.
straight, *rēctus, –a, –um.*
strength, *vīs, vīs,* f.; *vīrēs, vīrium,* f. pl.
story, *fābula, –ae,* f.
summer, *aestās, –ātis,* f.
summon, *convocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
support, *sustineō, –ēre, –uī, –tentus.*
sustain, *sustineō, –ēre, –uī, –tentus.*
swift, *celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx,* gen. *–ōcis.*
swiftness, *celeritās, –ātis,* f.
sword, *gladius, –dī,* m.

T

take, *capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus;* (lead), *dūcō, –ere, dūxī, ductus;* **take out**, *ēripiō, –ere, –uī, –reptus;* **take up**, *capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus.*
teach, *doceō, –ēre, –uī, doctus.*
teacher, *magister, –trī,* m.
tell, *dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus;* **tell a story**, *fābulam nārrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*

temple, *templum*, *–ī*, n.
terrify, *terreō*, *–ēre*, *–uī*, *–itus*.
territory, *fīnes*, *–ium*, f. pl.
than, *quam*.
that, or **that one**, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; *is*, *ea*, *id*.
the, omitted.
their, *suus*, *–a*, *–um*; *eōrum*, *eārum*.
them: see **they**.
themselves (intensive), *ipsī*, *–ae*, *–a*; (reflexive), *sē*.
then, *tum*.
there, *ibi*; **there are**, *sunt*.
these, *hī*, *hae*, *haec*; *eī*, *eae*, *ea*.
they, *ei*, *eae*, *ea*.
thing, *rēs*, *reī*, f.
think, *putō*, *–āre*, *–āvī*, *–ātus*; *exīstimō*, *–āre*, *–āvī*, *–ātus*.
this, or **this one**; *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; *is*, *ea*, *id*.
those, *illī*, *illae*, *illa*; *eī*, *eae*, *ea*.
thought, *mēns*, *mentis*, f.
through, *per*, with acc.
throw (away), *iaciō*, *–ere*, *iēcī*, *iactus*.
thy, *tuus*, *–a*, *–um*.
time, *tempus*, *–oris*, n.; **at that time**, *eō tempore*; **in a short time**, *brevī* (*tempore*).
timid, *timidus*, *–a*, *–um*.
to (indirect object), dat. case; (towards), *ad* (with acc.)
today, *hodiē*.
toga, *toga*, *–ae*, f.
tomorrow, *crās*.
too, *quoque*.
town, *oppidum*, *–ī*, n.; *urbs*, *urbis*, f.
treaty of alliance, *amīcitia*, *–ae*, f.; **make a treaty of alliance**, *amīcitiam cōnfirmō*, *–āre*, *–āvī*, *–ātus*.
tribunal, *tribūnal*, *–ālis*, n.
troops, *cōpiae*, *–ārum*, f. pl.
true, *vērus*, *–a*, *–um*.
trumpet, *tuba*, *–ae*, f.
truth, *vērum*, *–ī*, n.
twenty, *vīgintī* (indecl.).

U

uncertain, *incertus*, *–a*, *–um*.
unhappy, *miser*, *–era*, *–erum*.
unhurt, *integer*, *–gra*, *–grum*.
us: see **we**.
used to, expressed by past indicative.

V

vanquish, *vincō*, *–ere*, *vīcī*, *victus*.
varied, *varius*, *–a*, *–um*.
various, *varius*, *–a*, *–um*.
vast, *vāstus*, *–a*, *–um*.
Vergil, *Vergilius*, *–lī*, m.
very, use the superlative.
victory, *victōria*, *–ae*, f.
violence, *vīs*, *vīs*, f.

W

wage (war), *gerō*, *–ere*, *gessī*, *gestus*.
war, *bellum*, *–ī*, n.
warfare, *rēs mīlitāris*, *reī mīlitāris*, f.
warn, *moneō*, *–ēre*, *–uī*, *–itus*.
watch, *cūstodiō*, *–īre*, *–īvī*, *–ītus*.
way, *via*, *–ae*, f.; *iter*, *itineris*, n.
we, *nōs*.
weapons, *arma*, *–ōrum*, n. pl.

well, *bene;* **well known**, *nōtus, –a, –um; celeber, celebris, celebre.*
what? pron., *quis, quid;* adj., *quī, quae, quod.*
wheat, *frumentum, –ī,* n.
when, *quandō? ; cum.*
which, rel. pron., *quī, quae, quod;* interr. pron., *quis, quid.*
white, *albus, –a, –um.*
who, rel. pron., *quī, quae, quod;* interr. pron., *quis, quid.*
whole, *omnis, –e; tōtus, –a, –um.*
whose ; see **who.**
why, *cūr.*
wicked, *malus, –a, –um.*
wide, *lātus, –a, –um;* **far and wide**, *longē lātēque.*
will, expressed by the future tense.
willingly, *grātē.*
win, *vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus.*
wind, *ventus, –ī,* m.
wing (of an army), *cornū, –ūs,* n.
winter, *hiems, hiemis,* f.
with, *cum* (with abl.) ; (expressing means), abl. of means.
withdraw, *removeō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus.*
within, abl. case.
word, *verbum, –ī,* n.
work, *labōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
world, *mundus, –ī,* m. ; *orbis* (f.) *terrārum.*
wound, *vulnerō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.*
wound, *vulnus, –eris,* n.
wretched, *miser, –era, –erum.*
write, *scrībō, –ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.*
wrong, *iniūria, –ae,* f.

Y

year, *annus, –ī,* m.
yield, *cēdō, –ere, cessī, cessus.*
you (sing.), *tū;* (pl.), *vōs.*
your (sing.), *tuus, –a, –um;* (pl.), *vester, –tra, –trum.*
yourself, *tē;* **yourselves**, *vōs.*

INDEX

(References are to pages)

A

a, pronunciation, xiv.
distinguishing vowel of first declension, 1.
ā, distinguishing vowel of first conjugation 42.
ā, ab, 23 footnote.
ablative of place from which, 153.
ablative of agent, 186.
ablative, xxiv, 22, 340 footnote 2.
formation of, in
first declension, 23, 56.
second declension, 89, 120, 146, 159.
third declension, 229, 243, 252, 260, 279, 286, 294, 300.
fourth declension, 384.
fifth declension, 393.
absolute, 315 footnote 1.
of accompaniment, 23, 56.
of agent, 186.
of cause, 385.
of degree of difference, 340 footnote 1.
of manner, 24 footnote.
of means or instrument, 23, 33 footnote, 56.
of place whence, 153.
of place where, 23, 153, 190 footnote 2.
of separation, 23.
of time, 232 footnote 2, 254 footnote, 385.
accent, xvii, 78.
accompaniment, ablative of, 23, 56.
accusative, of direct object, xxiv, 12, 16.
formation of, in
first declension, 12, 49.
second declension, 83, 115, 139, 152.
third declension, 222 c, 236, 252, 260, 279, 286, 294, 300.
fourth declension, 384.
fifth declension, 393.
of place to which, 153, 190 footnote 2.
of duration of time, 393.
of extent of space, 393.
subject of infinitive, 298 footnote 3, 365.
old forms of, 278 footnote, 286 footnote, 308 footnote.
ad, place to which, 153, 420 footnote 2.
omitted, 324 footnote 1, 407 footnote.

(*References are to pages*)

adjectives
position, 1.
agreement, 72, 165, 166.
first and second declension, 63, 131, 172, 439.
third declension, 319, 328, 329, 440.
comparative, 336, 440.
superlative, 343.
demonstrative, 200, 365, 371.
interrogative, 379.
possessive, 53 footnote, 89, 202 footnote.
predicate, 165, 166.
advantages of Latin, xxii.
adverbs
formation, 166, 167 footnote, 350.
comparison, 350.
irregular, 351 footnote.
***ae*,** pronunciation, xv.
agent, ablative of, 186.
agreement
of subject and verb, 11.
of adjectives, 72.
of predicate adjectives, 165, 166.
of appositives, 72.
of possessive adjectives, 89, 202 footnote.
of relative pronouns, 378.
alphabet, Latin, xiii.
answers, 40 footnote.
antecedent, agreement of pronoun with, 378.
Appendix, 437.
appositives, 72.
***au*,** pronunciation, xv.
***avē*,** 291 footnote 1.

B

base, of nouns, 221.
***bene*,** irregular adverb, 166 note.
***brevī*,** irregular adverb, 351 footnote.

C

***c*,** pronunciation, xiv.
***capiō*,** in composition, 253 footnote.
cardinal numbers, *see* Vocabulary.
cases in Latin, xxiv.
cause, ablative of, 385.
***ch*,** pronunciation, xiv.
characteristic verb endings, 11, 16 note a, 36 note, 42.
characteristic vowels
ā, first conjugation, 42.
ē, second conjugation, 50 note a.
e, third conjugation, 223.
i, fourth conjugation, 280.
Collateral Reading, 5, 9, 15, 21, 26, 33, 41, 47, 54, 61, 70, 75, 82, 87, 93, 101, 107, 114, 119, 124, 129, 137, 144, 150, 158, 163, 170, 183, 191, 198, 205, 212, 220, 227, 234, 241, 249, 257, 266, 273, 277, 284, 292, 299, 305, 316, 326, 333, 341, 347, 354, 364, 370, 376, 382, 390, 398.
comparison
of adjectives, comparative, 336; superlative, 343.
of adverbs, 350.

(*References are to pages*)

conjugation, defined, xxiii.
conjugations, how distinguished, 42, 50, 222, 279.
first, active, 42, 43, 78, 109, 125, 147, 159, 443; passive, 185, 186, 194, 201, 208, 215, 320, 443.
second, active, 50, 84, 116, 125, 153, 159, 444; passive, 185, 186, 194, 201, 208, 215, 320, 444.
third, 222, 229, 236, 244, 268, 320, 445; in *-iō*, 252, 253, 261, 268, 309, 320, 446.
fourth, 279, 280, 287, 294, 300, 309, 321, 448.
esse, 64, 72, 104, 126, 140, 159, 449.
consonant stems, declension of, 221, 229, 243, 252, 260, 267.
consonants, pronunciation, xiii.
cum, ablative of accompaniment, 56.
omitted, 24 footnote.
enclitic use of, 185 b, 193 b, 207 a.

D

dare, irregular, 44 footnote, 147 exceptions.
dative, of indirect object, xxiv, 16.
formation of, in
first declension, 16, 56.
second declension, 89, 120, 146, 159.
third declension, 229, 243, 252, 260, 279, 286, 294, 300.
fourth declension, 384.
fifth declension, 393.
of purpose, 398 footnote 1.
dēbeō, with infinitive, 51 note.
declension, defined, xxiii, 28.
declensions, how distinguished, 1, 71, 221, 384, 393.
first, singular, 1, 7, 12, 16, 22, 28; plural, 36, 42, 49, 56; review of, 63, 172, 437.
second, singular, 71, 77, 83, 89, 95, 139, 146; plural, 103, 109, 115, 120, 152, 159; review of, 131, 172, 437.
third, singular, 221, 229, 252, 279, 294; plural, 236, 243, 260, 286, 300; review of, 267, 308, 438.
fourth, 384, 439.
fifth, 393, 439.
comparatives, 336.
definite article, omitted in Latin, 1.
degree of difference, 340 footnote 1.
demonstratives, *is*, 200.
hic, 365.
ille, 371.
tables of, 441, 442.
dēleō, irregular perfect, 153 exceptions.
derivation, 178, 219 b, 273 b, 313 b, 360 c, 405 d.
descriptive, past, 140 note; *see* past.

(References are to pages)

differences between Latin and English, xiii, xvii, xviii, xxii.
diphthongs, pronunciation, xv.
direct object, xxiv, 12, 16.
distinguishing verb endings, 11, 16 note a, 36 note a, 42.
distinguishing vowels
ā, first conjugation, 42.
ē, second conjugation, 50 note a.
e, third conjugation, 223.
i, fourth conjugation, 280.
diū, used with present tense, 197 footnote.
dō, irregular, 44 footnote, 147 exceptions.
'do,' English auxiliary, omitted, 11 note a.
domus, *ad* omitted before, 324 footnote 1.
gender of, 384.
dum, 212 footnote.
duration of time, accusative of, 393.

E

e, pronunciation, xv.
ē, distinguishing vowel of the second conjugation, 50 note a.
ē, ex, 56 footnote.
place whence, 153.
ego, declension of, 185, 214.
omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.
ei, pronunciation, xvi.
emphasis, xxiii.
enclitics, *-ne,* 40 footnote 1.
-que, 290 footnote, 321 footnote.
-cum, 185 b, 193 b, 207 a.
endings, personal verb, 42, 125, 139, 186, 320.
present participle, 226 footnote 1, 233 footnote, 329 footnote.
adjectives of one, two and three, 319, 328, 329.
es, present or imperative of *esse,* 126.
esse, 64, 72, 104, 126, 140, 159, 449.
eu, pronunciation, xvi.
ex, 56 footnote.
place whence, 153.
expressions of place, 153.
extent of space, accusative of, 393.

F

facile, irregular adverb, 351 footnote 1.
facilis, superlative of, 343 (2).
faciō, in composition, 262 footnote.
imperative of, 320 footnote.
feminine gender, 7, 384, 393.
fifth declension, 393, 439.
filius, genitive of, 78 note.
vocative of, 125 (2).
first conjugation, active, 42, 43, 78, 109, 125, 147, 159, 443; passive, 185, 186, 194, 201, 208, 215, 320, 443.
first declension, singular, 1, 7, 12, 16, 22, 28; plural,

(*References are to pages*)

36, 42, 49, 56 ; review of, 63, 172, 437.
fourth conjugation, 279, 280, 287, 294, 300, 309, 321, 448.
fourth declension, 384, 439.
future
first conjugation, active, 109 ; passive, 201.
second conjugation, active, 116 ; passive, 201.
third conjugation, 236 ; in *-iō,* 261.
fourth conjugation, 294.
esse, 104.

G

g, pronunciation, xiv.
gender
in first declension, 7.
in second declension, 139.
in third declension, 221.
in fourth declension, 384.
in fifth declension, 393.
agreement of adjectives in, 72, 165.
genitive, of possession, xxiv, 7.
position, 16.
formation of, in
first declension, 7, 42.
second declension, 77, 109, 139, 152.
third declension, 222, 236, 252, 260, 279, 286, 294, 300.
fourth declension, 384.
fifth declension, 393.
of words in *-ius,* 78.
of nouns and adjectives in *-er,* 78 footnote.
of Greek proper names in *-ās,* 232 footnote 1.

H

hic, haec, hoc, declension, 365.
homō, distinguished from *vir,* 226 footnote.

I

i, pronunciation, xiv, xv.
***-i* stems,** declension of, 221, 278, 286, 294, 300, 308 footnote 1, 438.
īdem, eadem, idem, 211 footnote.
identical words, xix.
ille, illa, illud, 371.
imperative, 125, 126, 320, 321.
imperfect, 140 note ; *see* past.
in, 153, 190 footnote 2.
indefinite article, omitted in Latin, 1.
indirect discourse, 298 footnote 3, 365.
indirect object, xxiv, 16.
infinitive, present
first conjugation, active, 42 ; passive, 185.
second conjugation, active, 50 ; passive, 185.
third conjugation, 222.
fourth conjugation, 279.
in indirect discourse, 365.
inflection, xxiii.
instrument, ablative of means or, 23, 33 footnote, 56.

(*References are to pages*)

intensive pronoun *ipse*, 371.
interrogatives, particle *-ne*, 40 footnote 1.
pronoun *quis*, 207, 214, 442.
adjective *quī*, 379.
***-iō* verbs of third conjugation**, 252, 253, 261, 268, 309, 320, 446.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 371.
irregular perfects, 147 exceptions, 153 exceptions.
irregular superlatives, 343.
is, ea, id, declension of, 200, 214.
iuvō, irregular, 147 exceptions.

L

Latin alphabet, xiii.
Latin and English compared, xiii, xvii, xviii, xix, xxii.
Latin words, phrases and proverbs, 180, 408.
lentē and ***lente***, distinguished, 166 note.
līberī, distinguished from *puerī*, 276 footnote.

M

magis, used in comparison, 336 exception.
male, irregular, 167 footnote.
manner, ablative of, 24 footnote.
masculine gender, 7, 139, 221, 384, 393.
maximē, used in comparison, 344 note.
means, ablative of, 23, 33 footnote, 56.
meus, vocative of, 125 (3).
miser, genitive of, 78 footnote.
months, names of, 257.
moveō, irregular perfect, 153 exceptions.

N

names of months, 257.
-ne, enclitic, 40 footnote.
neuter gender, 139, 221, 384, 393.
nominative, as subject, xxiv.
first declension, 1, 36.
second declension, 71, 103, 139, 152.
third declension, 221, 236, 252, 260, 279, 286, 294, 300.
fourth declension, 384.
fifth declension, 393.
nōn, position of, 11 note b.
nōs, declension, 193, 214.
omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.
nouns, in *-er*, 78 footnote.
in *-ius*, genitive, 78; vocative, 125 (2).

O

o, pronunciation, xv.
object, direct, xxiv, 12, 16.
indirect, xxiv, 16.
objective, *see* accusative.
oe, pronunciation, xvi.
order, word, 1, 11 b, 16, 58 footnote, 127.

(*References are to pages*)

P

participial stems, 207, 244, 301 note.
participles, past, 207; irregular, 147 exceptions, 153 exceptions.
present, 226 footnote 1, 233 footnote, 329 footnote.
passive voice
infinitive, 185, 222, 279.
personal endings, 186, 320.
present, 186, 222, 253, 280.
past, 194, 229, 261, 287.
future, 201, 237, 261, 294.
perfect, 208, 244, 261, 301.
past perfect, 208, 244, 262, 301.
tenses of first and second conjugations, 215.
past, 140 note.
first conjugation, active, 78; passive, 193.
second conjugation, active, 83; passive, 193.
third conjugation, 229; in *-iō*, 261.
fourth conjugation, 287.
esse, 72.
past descriptive, 140 note; *see* past.
past perfect
first and second conjugations, active, 159; passive, 208.
third conjugation, 244; in *-iō*, 262.
fourth conjugation, 301.
esse, 159.
***pauper*,** declension of, 344 footnote.
perfect, distinguished from past, 140 note.
stems, 147, 301.
formation of, in
first conjugation, active, 147; passive, 208.
second conjugation, active, 153; passive, 208.
third conjugation, 244; in *-iō*, 261.
fourth conjugation, 301.
esse, 140.
verbs with irregular, 147 exceptions, 153 exceptions.
personal endings of verb, 42, 125, 139, 186, 320.
personal pronouns, declensions of, 214, 441.
ego and *tū*, 185.
nōs and *vōs*, 193.
is, ea, id, 200.
omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.
phrases, list of Latin, 180, 408.
place from which, 153.
place to which, 153, 190 footnote 2, 324 footnote, 407 footnote.
place where, 23, 153, 190 footnote 2.
possessive, case, xxiv; *see* genitive.
adjective, *suus, -a, -um*, 89, 202 footnote; omitted, 53 footnote.
predicate adjectives, agreement of, 1, 165.
predicate noun, 1.

(*References are to pages*)

present indicative
formation of, in
first conjugation, active, 43; passive, 186.
second conjugation, active, 50; passive, 186.
third conjugation, 222; in *-iō*, 253.
fourth conjugation, 280.
esse, 36.
present infinitive
active, 42, 50, 222, 279.
passive, 185, 222, 279.
in indirect discourse, 365.
present participles, 226 footnote, 233 footnote, 329 footnote.
present stems, 42.
prīmō, prīmum, irregular adverbs, 351 footnote.
principal parts, 147 exceptions.
pronouns
demonstrative, 200, 365, 371, 441, 442.
intensive, 371.
interrogative, 207, 214, 442.
personal, 185, 193, 214, 441; omitted, 16, 36.
possessive, 53 footnote, 89, 202 footnote.
reflexive, 185 a, 193 a, 200, 441.
relative, 378, 442.
pronunciation, of consonants, xiii.
of vowels, xiv.
of diphthongs, xv.
proper nouns in *-ius*, genitive of, 78.
vocative of, 125 (2).
proverbs, list of Latin, 180, 408.
puerī, distinguished from *līberī*, 276 footnote.
purpose, dative of, 398 footnote 1.

Q

-que, enclitic, 290 footnote, 321, footnote.
questions, 40 footnote 1.
answers to, 40 footnote 2.
qui, quae, quod, relative pronoun, 378, 442.
interrogative adjective, 379.
quis, quid, interrogative pronoun, 207, 442.
quotation, direct and indirect, 298 footnote 3, 365.

R

rapiō, in composition, 262 footnote.
reflexive pronouns, 185 a, 193 a, 200, 441.
relative pronouns, 378, 442.
resemblances of English and Latin, xix, xx, xxi.
rīdeō, irregular, 153 exceptions.
Roman calendar, 257.

S

s, pronunciation, xiv.
second conjugation, active, 50, 84, 116, 125, 153, 159, 444; passive, 185, 186, 194, 201, 208, 215, 320, 444.

(*References are to pages*)

second declension; singular, 71, 77, 83, 89, 95, 139, 146; plural, 103, 109, 115, 120, 152, 159; review of, 131, 172, 437.
separation, ablative of, 23.
similar words in Latin and English, xxi.
simplicity of Latin, xiii.
space, accusative of extent of, 393.
stems, of nouns, 221, 278.
of verbs
present, 42.
perfect, 147, 301.
participial, 207, 244, 301 note.
subject, personal pronoun, 16 note b, 36 note a.
agreement of, with verb, 11.
of infinitive, 365.
suī, declension of, 200, 214, 441.
sum, 64, 72, 104, 126, 140, 159, 449.
superlative, of adjectives, 343.
of adverbs, 350.
suus, -a, -um, 89, 202, footnote.
omitted, 53 footnote.
syllables, length of, xvii.
syllabication, xviii.

T

teneō, in derivatives, 194 footnote.
tense-sign, of the past, 78.
of the future, 109, 116, 236, 294.
th, pronunciation, xiv.
'there is,' 'there are,' 47 footnote.
third conjugation, 222, 229, 236, 244, 268, 320, 445; in ***-iō,*** 252, 253, 261, 268, 309, 320, 446.
third declension, singular, 221, 229, 252, 279, 294; plural, 236, 243, 260, 286, 300; review of, 267, 308, 438.
Tiberis, declension of, 278 footnote.
time, when, 232, footnote 2, 254, 385.
duration of, 393.
towns, omission of *ad* before, 407 footnote.
tū, 37 note b.
declension of, 185.
omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.

U

u, pronunciation, xv.

V

v, pronunciation, xix.
veniō, irregular, 301 note.
verbs, conjugation of, xxiii.
agreement with subject, 11.
personal endings of, 42, 125, 239, 186, 320.
principal parts, 147 exceptions.
See conjugations.
verb stems
present, 42.
perfect, 147, 301.
participial, 207, 244, 301 note.

(*References are to pages*)

videō, irregular, 153 exceptions.
vir, declension of, 103 note, 104.
distinguished from *homō*, 226 footnote 2.
vīs, declension of, 286.
vocative, 125, 127 footnote.
voice, active and passive
see passive voice, present, past, future, perfect, past perfect, imperative, and infinitive.
vōs, declension of, 193, 214.
omitted, 16 note b, 36 note a.
vowels, pronunciation of Latin, xiv.

W

word formation, 178.
word order, 1, 11 b, 16, 58 footnote, 127.
words, identical, xix; similar, xxi.
words, list of Latin phrases and, 180, 408.

X

x, pronunciation, xiv.